

英语句法新编

● 刘国善 编著 单其昌 审订

对外贸易教育出版社



英 语 句 法 新 编

刘国善 编著

单其昌 审订

对外贸易教育出版社

(京)新登字182号

英 语 句 法 新 编

刘国善 编著

单其昌 审订

对外贸易教育出版社出版

(北京和平街北口北土城 邮政编码 100029)

新华书店北京发行所发行 大厂兴源印刷厂印刷

开本850×1168 1/32·印张10.625 ·字数 276千字

1992年1月 第1版·1992年1月 第1次印刷

印数1—11000册·定价4.90元

ISBN 7-81000-447-6 / H·083

前 言

英语各类句子，用法纷纭，实用或考试中常易弄错。

本书把句法千百条最繁难规矩归结在五大关键问题之下，即第二章至第六章这五章所讲的五个中心问题：

- 一、名词从句关联词性质的分化与虚化；
- 二、定语从句关系代词的选择与“省略”；
- 三、分裂句与一般带定语从句复合句的异同；
- 四、多种对应、因果状语从句的连词(as, that等)的用法；
- 五、用于从句、主句及独立句中的虚拟语气。

在第一章及后四章，本书着重讨论了英语句法各个方面的微妙关联，包括简单、并列、主从句和复合结构的内外关系，还论述了主谓深层结构的一致、省略以及否定诸问题。

国内外各家的新成果使我们能对极庞杂的英语句法作出初步的全面阐述。希望这是抛砖引玉，得到读者和专家的批评指正，引出这方面及语法各方面更广更深的、系统的论著，以提高我们的英语教学。

编著者

1991年3月

目 录

第一章 从句的特点; 分清从句、分句或其它 (1)

- 1.1 for与because 等之相同与不同.....(1)
- 1.2 so与so that 之相通与各异.....(4)
- 1.3 for 等引导的不定式复合结构与从句.....(5)
- 1.4 with引导的分词复合结构与从句.....(8)
- 1.5 独立结构与从句.....(10)
- 1.6 不定式、分词短语与从句并非总能互换.....(12)
- 1.7 分词、形容词定语不仅后位者相当定语从句.....(14)
- 1.8 形容词及其短语作状语并非皆为省略的从句.....(16)

第二章 名词从句的多种关联词 (19)

- 2.1 名词能担任的成分, 名词从句都能担任.....(19)
- 2.2 作定语、状语的名词的性质与相应的定语、状语从句.....(20)
- 2.3 引导从句的what, where 等可保留或失去疑问意义.....(24)
- 2.4 疑问代词what 等都能引导特殊问题从句.....(25)
- 2.5 疑问副词 where 等都能引导特殊问题从句.....(28)
- 2.6 连词whether 与 if 的相通与不同.....(29)
- 2.7 连词whether/if 引导一般问题从句.....(31)
- 2.8 what/which/WH-ever 可相当“先行词+关系代词”.....(32)
- 2.9 what/which/WH-ever 引导名词性关系从句.....(34)
- 2.10 when/where/why/how 引导名词性关系从句.....(36)
- 2.11 介词的省略形成 WH- 方面状语从句.....(38)
- 2.12 WH- 形式引导名词从句、其它从句综述.....(40)
- 2.13 虚化that 引导主语/表语/宾语/介词宾语/同位语从句.....(44)
- 2.14 复合宾语/主语可相当宾语/主语从句.....(47)
- 2.15 介词的省略形成 that 方面/原因状语从句.....(53)

- 2.16 that 名词从句的语气, 用或不用 should.....(55)
 2.17 引导名词从句的 that 的“省略”.....(58)

第三章 定语从句中选用或者不用关系代词、关系副

词的规律.....(66)

- 3.1 非限制性定语从句所以不用 that 引导.....(66)
 3.2 关系代词 that, which, as 的不同用法.....(69)
 3.3 as 由连词转作关系代词.....(74)
 3.4 but 由介词转作关系代词.....(78)
 3.5 一般要用 who/whom/whose 的情况.....(80)
 3.6 一般只用 which 的情况.....(84)
 3.7 一般只用或多用 that 的情况.....(88)
 3.8 先行词为某些代词、形容词限定的名词时.....(92)
 3.9 time when 与 time that 的不同用途.....(98)
 3.10 关系代词的“省略”.....(101)

第四章 分裂句.....(106)

- 4.1 分裂句所含定语从句的先行词是 it.....(106)
 4.2 分裂句与一般含定语从句复合句的不同.....(108)
 4.3 分裂句所强调的相应简单句各种成分.....(111)
 4.4 强调原状语一般不用 when/where/why 引导从句.....(115)
 4.5 It was in 1918 that ... 句型的性质.....(118)
 4.6 主语代词、谓语时态与主语语序的变换.....(121)
 4.7 分裂句中关系代词 that, who 的“省略”.....(125)
 4.8 所谓“拟分裂句” What he's done is.....(128)

第五章 while, as, that, if 等引导对应或

因果状语从句.....(132)

- 5.1 时间从句 while/as... 并不是回答“What time?”.....(132)
 5.2 It's...since/from... 与 It/I was...before... 等.....(139)
 5.3 as 引导表示“对应”等关系的多种状语从句.....(144)
 5.4 as/than 从句与 as/than 短语.....(152)

- 5.5 比较从句中可以或惯于省略的种种情况……………(158)
- 5.6 用连词 **as** 与不同连词引导的比例从句……………(163)
- 5.7 表示因果关系的各类从句性质相通……………(169)
- 5.8 **that** 引导表示“因果”等关系的多种状语从句及其省略……………(174)
- 5.9 复合连词“…**that**”引导十余种状语从句及其中 **that** 的省略……………(180)
- 5.10 **so/such that**或**so/such…that**引导的三种从句并不以有情态动词相区别……………(186)

第六章 从句、主句与独立句中的虚拟语气……………(191)

- 6.1 直陈条件/让步从句与虚拟条件/让步从句……………(191)
- 6.2 虚拟语气的三种基本类型在从句及主句中的四种基本用法……………(196)
- 6.3 **should be/have been**型表示的“意向”、“假想”与假想之引申，“意外、意料中”……………(202)
- 6.4 **should be/have been**型表示的“假设”(从句)与“推测”(主句)……………(207)
- 6.5 逆推条件句，松散条件句……………(210)
- 6.6 “含蓄结果”与“含蓄条件”(should be/have been型虚拟独立句三用法)……………(213)

第七章 多功能词that, it, as, while, when, where 的用法……………(219)

- 7.1 **that** 与 **it** 从实词到虚词……………(219)
- 7.2 **as**从副词到连词、关系代词，从连词到介词……………(225)
- 7.3 **as** 引导宾语补语和主语补语……………(229)
- 7.4 **while, when, where** 各有十来种句法功能……………(232)

第八章 从句语序、从句时态的简化以及词语的省略……………(237)

- 8.1 从句位置与主、从句中的倒装……………(237)
- 8.2 间接引语中动词“错向过去”与否的含义差别，情态动词“错向过去”与否……………(242)

- 8.3 从句指将来动词常用较简便现在/现在进行/现在完成形式……(247)
- 8.4 从句略去与主句词语重复或可以理解的词语……(254)

第九章 选用从句与选用相应结构的比较……(258)

- 9.1 简单句、并列复合句与主从复合句的语体差别……(258)
- 9.2 选用从句或选用非限定形式短语的语体因素……(259)
- 9.3 选用从句或选用非限定形式短语的语义因素……(264)
- 9.4 “无依着修饰语”多应改为从句或以其他方法改正……(268)
- 9.5 只能使用从句与只能使用动词非限定形式短语、复合结构作状语、作定语的情况……(272)
- 9.6 只能使用从句与只能使用动词非限定形式短语、复合结构作宾语的情况……(275)
- 9.7 语气从句及短句、短语等形式的语气状语……(282)

第十章 主谓深层的一致，省略与否定……(292)

- 10.1 名词主语“形复实单”或“似单实复”的情况……(292)
- 10.2 集合名词做主语的情况……(295)
- 10.3 谓语同主语的“实意一致”和“近邻一致”……(297)
- 10.4 主语句、祈使句及惯用不完整句……(300)
- 10.5 情景省略句……(302)
- 10.6 “主语+be”句型中的省略……(306)
- 10.7 以to代表作为补足成分的不定式……(308)
- 10.8 表否定的代词、副词、连词的用法……(310)
- 10.9 关系微妙的否定中心、否定转移、否定范围和部分否定……(314)
- 10.10 情态复合谓语…否定中心的位置……(318)
- 10.11 非肯定句中用非肯定词语……(322)

本书例句出处略语表……(327)

第一章 从句的特点； 分清从句、分句或其它

1.1 for与because等之相同与不同

下面三种句子都是主从复合句 (complex sentences) 吗？

As/Since it was late September, the evenings were getting chilly. 九月下旬了，晚上越来越凉了。〔as、since与because三者间的不同见5.3,7〕

The evenings were getting chilly, because it was late September. 晚上越来越凉，(这是) 因为已是九月下旬了。(because前的逗号可以没有，它引述的部分与前关系较密切)

The evenings were getting chilly, for it was late september (Wood) 晚上越来越凉——(说起来) 那是九月下旬了。(for前的逗号即停顿，总是有的，for…是事后说明)

for用在陈述过某种情况后，再过渡到陈述另一种情况，这后一情况可能是说话人补充的“原因”，也可能是他追加的“理由”：*It's going to rain, for the barometer is falling.* 天要下雨，(我这样说的理由是) 因为气压计指示气压在下降。*They've lit a fire, for/because I can see the smoke rising. (GCE)* (较少用because表示理由，仅见于不算规范的口语中) 他们点火了，(我这样判断的理由是) 因为我看见烟冒起来了。

前述情况与for所引述另一种情况之间的关系比较松散，书面上常见二者中间用冒号或破折号：*We must start early, for we have a long way to go. (LDCE)* 我们必须早点出发，(因为) 我们要走的路很远。*I decided to stop and have*

lunch—*for* I was feeling quite hungry. (Swan) 我决定停下来吃午饭——(因为)我已经很饿了。

*for*象*and*、*but*等其它并列连词一样也可以引导独立句：“I’ll give you five pounds.”—“*But that is not enough.*” (LDCE) “我给你五镑。”——“可是，这不够用啊！”*The men’s and the women’s shops are indistinguishable from each other. For the girls’ shop windows display masculine shirts, while the men’s windows are full of scarlet mini-underpants.* (GCE) 男人用品商店和妇女用品商店都区分不开了。因为妇女商店橱窗展示着男衬衣，而男子商店橱窗里满是绯红色三角裤衩。*because*、*as*等从属连词则不能引导独立句(省略句是另一回事)。

作为并列连词的*for*(象其他并列连词一样)，不可以和另外一个并列连词——如*and*——连用，而主从连词*because*却可以和并列连词*and*连用：*He wouldn’t do it—and (all) because I didn’t ask him in person.* (GCE) 这事他不肯办——(全都)因为我没有亲自请求他办理。

*for*所引导的后一并列分句(*coordinate clause*)不能移到该并列复合句(*compound sentence*)前半部，而*because*、*as*、*since*所引导的从句却可以任意置于主从复合句前部或后部——只是因为句子陈述的重点多放在句末，所以着重指明听话人未知原因的*because*从句才多居后面，而语气较轻、仅提及听话人已知原因的*as/since*从句才多居前面：*We must go now, for it’s getting dark.* (中间总有停顿，书面加逗号) 我们得走了，因为天要黑了。*As/Since you’re not ready, we must go without you.* (或 *We must go without you as/since you…*从句在后，中间可无停顿、无逗号；*since*为较正式用语) 既然你没准备好，我们得走了，不能等你了。*Just because I don’t complain, you mustn’t suppose that I’m satisfied.* (ALD) 你不可只因我不发怨言，就以为我满意了。(just

because... 是句中次重点,不可改作 just as/since...。you mustn't suppose...是句子重点,一般重点在后)

回答why? 既不能用as/since,也不能用“随后补充”的for: “Why can't you do it now?” —“(I can't) Because I'm too busy.” (LDCE) (此处为省略句)

有些语法书讲for “介于并列连词与从属连词之间”;多数语法学家还是讲它是并列连词,所引述的是并列分句;只有少数人认为for是从属连词,所引导的是从句。

我们认为,for在历史上虽然也曾被用作从属连词: *For the time shall not seem tedious, I'll tell thee what befell me.* (Shakespeare) (为了这段时间不会觉得烦闷,我来对你讲讲我碰到的事。)但在现代英语中,由于它与because等用法大不相同,最好确认它为并列连词:

	从属连词引导从句		并列连词引导 并列从句
	as/since...	because...	for...
主要意义	语气较轻地提及原因(多属已知原因)	着重指明原因(多属听话人未知原因);口语中可指理由	事后补充原因或追述理由。
在复合句中的位置	或在主从复合句前部,或在后部 (because在非规范口语中,指理由时,要在主句后)		只能在并列复合句后部
与主句或另一分句的联系	联系紧密(在主句后时,中间可无停顿、不加逗号)		联系松散,中间有停顿(加逗号,或冒号、破折号)
能否分出去成为独立句	不 能		能
能否与(另一)并列连词连用	能		不 能

注,在非规范口语中指理由的 because... 不可放在主从复合句前部,如: *He wasn't in the office, because I didn't see him.*不可改作 *Because I didn't see him, he wasn't in the office.*

1.2 so与so that的异同

从属连词so that与可起连接作用的语气副词so之间可作与以上比较相似的对比:

	从属连词引导从句	连接性语气副词引导并列分句
	so that...	so...
主要意义	表示目的或结果(目的即希望达到的可能的结果)	引述相随发生的另一情况包括目的、结果及其他相随情况
在复合句中的位置	或在主从复合句前部, 或在后部(so that...指结果时要在主句后)	只能在并列复合句后部
与主句或另一分句的联系	联系紧密(表目的从句在主句后时, 中间多不加逗号; 主句与表结果从句间多加逗号, 但语义联系紧密, 句子重点常在从句所述的结果)	联系松散, 中间一般加逗号
能否分出去成为独立句	不能	能
能否与并列连词连用	表目的从句可与并列连词连用; 表结果从句不能与并列连词连用	能

so that...与so...表示目的时, 前者是主从复合句的重点, 后者可能是补充说明, I packed him a little food so that he wouldn't/ shouldn't get hungry.(目的从句多有表示可能的情态动词may/might/should等) 我给他包上些吃的, 为的是他不会挨饿。I packed him a little food so he wouldn't get hungry. (LDCE) 我给他包上些吃的, 这样他就不会挨饿。Speak clearly, so they may understand you. (新英

汉词典) 说清楚, (这样) 他们就会听懂你的话了。(用so…表目的, 并列二分句间可加逗号)

so that…表示结果亦为主从复合句的重点, 而so…表示的结果可为补充陈述: He injured his foot, so that/so he was unable to play in the match. (Wood) 他把脚碰伤了, 碰得不能参加比赛了。/他碰伤了脚, 于是不能参加比赛了。

(虽然用so 比较普遍, 但这个so, 既可看作是so that之略, 又可看作是and so之略: GCE, pp. 754, 795)。

歧义句应该避免: We turned the radio up so that everyone could hear the announcement. (Close) [目的?]: 我们把收音机声音调得很大, 好让大家都能听见这个通告(句中could应改为might, 或将so改为in order)。[结果?]: 我们把收音机声音调得很大, 大家都听得见这个通告(句中could可改为was able to)。

so…不只能表示目的、结果, 还常表示相随发生的各种情况: I'm busy today, so can you come tomorrow? (LDCE) 我今天很忙, (这种情况下)你明天来可以吗? They cost a lot of money, so use them carefully. (ALD)这些东西很贵, (这样就)要小心使用。

仅表目的的So that…可放在主句前: So that everyone could/should/would hear the announcement, we turned the radio up to the maximum volume. (Close) 为了让大家都听见这一通告, 我们把收音机调到最大音量。So that he could buy a car, he saved a lot of money. (GCE) 为了买一辆小汽车, 他存了很多钱。

表目的的so that…可与并列连词and连用: He saved money so that he could buy a house and so that he would have enough for his old age. (GCE) 他存下钱以便买一所房子, 以便年老时钱能够用。

so…不仅可和and连用, 而且可分出去成为独立句: The

bank broke, and so the creditors were all ruined. 那银行倒闭了, 于是债权人全都垮了。It was wet, (and) so we decided to stay at home. 那天下雨, 我们就决定呆在家里。They don't often use it over the weekend. So you can borrow it if you want to. 这东西他们周末不常用, 所以你要想借可以借去用。She went and asked for some apples. So he said to her, "Which kind do you want?" (GCE) 她去要几个苹果, 于是(并非指结果), 他问她: "你要哪种的?" So you're not coming! (ALD) 那么你不来了?

仅用 *that* 表示目的或结果的用法见 5.8, 7.1; *so* + 形容词/副词 + *that* 表示结果的用法见 5.10。

1.3 *for* 等引导的不定式复合结构与从句

下面二句中, 第一句里的 *so that* 为连词, 第二句里的 *for* 为介词:

I stood aside *so that* she might enter.

I stood aside *for* her to enter. (Hornby) 我站到一旁以便她能进来。

her to enter 是 *for* 的介词宾语 (复合宾语), 因此代词 *her* 采取宾格形式。应该说, *for her to enter* 不是一个句子, 不是从句, 也不是并列分句; 一般语法书讲这种在逻辑上具备主谓关系的结构叫做 "复合结构" (complex construction), 其中 *her* 是逻辑主语或 "准主语" (logical subject/quasi-subject), *to enter* 是其 "准谓语"。

但也有些语法学家称这种结构为 *non-finite clauses* ("非限定分句"), 因为这种结构中的准谓语是动词非限定形式。而 *subordinate clauses* 在我们说叫从句, 他们称之为 "从属分句" (英语相同而汉译不同)。如在 GCE (A Grammar of Contemporary English, R. Quirk et al) 及大体沿用该书讲法的一些著作中: *In order for the police to catch the*

culprits, elaborate plans were made. (GCE) (逗号前In order for the police to catch...为复合结构作状语, 他们称之为非限定分句, 状语分句) 为了警察能捉到罪犯, 官方制定了周密计划。

The best thing would be for you to tell everybody. (CGE, G. Leech et al) (for...作表语) 你最好把事情告诉大家。

Here is a book for you to read. (Close) (for...作定语) 这儿有一本你可以看的书。

He hoped/arranged/planned for John to come. (GCE) (for...作宾语) 他希望/安排了/计划让约翰来。

It is important for there to be a fire-escape. (Swan) (引词 *there* 因居准主语地位, 习惯上作了 *for* 的介词宾语; 句中 *for*...作主语, 全句相当带主语从句的 *It's important that there should be a fire-escape.*) 要设一个火警安全出口, 这一点很重要。

GCE说上列这类有“主语”(指逻辑主语)的不定式“分句”前的*for* “*is perhaps acting more as a conjunction, or clause introducer, than a preposition.*” (p. 739) (“可能更大程度上是作为连词或分句连接语, 而不是作为介词”), 实际上未能确认*for*不是介词。

该书讲*with*也引导“不定式分句”(p.763), 又说*with*引导的是“类似分句的补语”(p.328, *quasi-clausal complements*), 不同于介词短语, 可看作“非限定分句”(未提*with*不是介词); *With so many essays to write, I doubt if I shall have time to visit you. (p.328)* (我们讲句中 *With*...为复合结构, 作状语) 因有那么多文章要写, 我怀疑我是否还有时间去看望你。

对也能引导所谓“非限定分句”的*of*, 他们也没提到它不是介词。比较: *The idea is for us to meet on Thursday.*

(GCE) 计划我们星期四见面。 *For Roberts to say such a thing is nonsense. It is foolish/wicked/clever/kind/sensible of him to meet her again.* (Close) 如果罗伯茨说这种话，那真是一派胡言。他还要和她见面，这样太蠢了/太坏了/很聪明/很好/很合适。 *It is splendid of him to wait* (He is splendid to wait). (GCE) 他能等着，这太好了。

“形容词 + of + 人 + 不定式”结构用于评价人的主动行为（出于本意或由于其性能已做出或要做出者）是否合适、使人满意等。超出此范围仍用“for + 人或事物 + 不定式”结构，见9.3：
Is it easy for a rich widow to find a handsome husband? (Hornby) (不属对行为适宜与否的评价) 一个有钱的寡妇找个漂亮的丈夫就很容易吗？*It's difficult for anyone to be angry with her.* 任何人都很难对她生气。*It would be best for the secretary to write to him.* (Wood) (不是指出其本意所做的主动行为) 最好由秘书给他写信。(相当： *It would be best if the secretary were to write to him.*)

所有上述“for/of/with + 逻辑主语 + 不定式”结构，我们都称之为介词引导的不定式复合结构。复合结构有时可与从句互换使用，但更多情况下，二者各有各的用途（见9.2, 9.3）。

1.4 with引导的分词复合结构与从句

上节所述能引导不定式复合结构的 with 还能引导分词复合结构。在下列句中 with 不是连词引导从句，而是介词引导复合结构；而 spread 一词不是从句谓语（不是动词过去式、不是限定形式），而是复合结构准谓语——动词非限定形式，过去分词：

Gideon, enjoying the fine sea breeze, stood on the Battery and watched the ships cross the bay with sails spread. (with...为分词复合结构，作状语，修饰cross)
吉迪安让柔和的海风吹拂着，站在炮台上，望着那些船只扬帆驶

过海湾。

with 不仅能引导以现在分词、过去分词为准谓语的分词复合结构，而且能引导以名词、形容词、副词、介词短语为准表语的复合结构：

With the tree growing/grown tall, we get more shade. 这棵树长大起来/已经长高了，我们的荫凉也大了。

He died *with his daughter yet a schoolgirl.* (名词为准表语) 他的女儿还是个小学生，他就去世了。*With the tree now tall, we get more shade.* (GCE) (形容词为准表语) 这棵树现在长高了，我们这片荫凉也大了。*With John away, we've got more room.* (LDCE) (副词为准表语) 约翰不在这，我们的地方大点了。*With three people away ill, we'll have to close the office this afternoon.* (Swan) 三个人因病不来，下午我们只好关门不办公了。*With the whole meeting in uproar, the chairman abandoned the attempt to take a vote.* (GCE) (介词短语为准表语) 整个会场一片喧嚣，主席打消了表决的意图。

with 引导的复合结构多作状语，有时也作定语：*We came in view of a factory with its chimney smoking.* 我们望见一座烟囱在冒烟的工厂。

without 也能引导复合结构：*I wouldn't dare go home without the job finished.* 活没干完，我不敢回家。*Without a tear on her face, the girl watched him led away.* 姑娘脸上没有一滴眼泪，望着他被人带走了。

with 引导的复合结构以分词为准谓语者，在 GCE 等书中，也属于“非限定分句”（所谓非限定分句包括“不定式分句”与“分词分句”）；而 with 引导的复合结构以名词、形容词、副词、介词短语为准表语者，在那些著作中被称之为“无动词分句”（*verbless clauses*）。

多数语法书讲的分句只是并列复合句中相互并列的较小句子

中的一个。我们说，分句、从句与复合结构由于结构上不大相同，主要用途也因而各异，仅仅有时候一个复合结构会在意义上相当一个分句或一个从句：

Three days later they started off, *without another word exchanged on the subject.* (复合结构)

Three days later they started off, *but no other word was exchanged on the subject.* (并列分句) 三天后他出发了，(但)就这个问题再没交换过意见。

We started on our way, *with the dog bounding in front of us.*

We started on our way, *and the dog kept bounding in front of us.* 我们出发了，那狗跳跳钻钻地跑在前面。

A small boy, *with his satchel trailing behind him,* ran past. (复合结构，状语)

A small boy, *who had his satchel trailing behind him,* ran past. (GCE) (定语从句) 一个小男孩，书包拖在身后，跑了过去。

1.5 独立结构与从句

没有介词引导的分词复合结构一般称为分词独立结构 (participial absolute constructions) (GCE称之为absolute clauses, “独立分句”)。比较上节最后两组例句的第一句与下列二句：

We started on our way, *the dog bounding in front of us.*

A small boy, *his satchel trailing behind,* ran past.

分词独立结构都担任状语，有时意义上相当状语从句。分词独立结构中的准谓语可为现在分词、过去分词或分词的完成形

式、被动形式:

The matter having been settled so amicably, I felt quite satisfied with the results. (CGE) (Since the matter had been...) 事情这么友好地解决了,我对此结果非常满意。

The job finished/This done, we went home straight away. (ib) (as soon as the job had been...) 这工作一结束,我们马上就回家了。

The question being settled, we went home. (As the question had been settled, ...) 问题解决了,我们就回家了。

既不用with引导,又不用联系动词being时,就形成没有动词的“独立结构”(absolute constructions) (GCE称之为verbless absolute clauses:“无动词独立分句”),其中的“准表语”可为名词、形容词、副词、介词短语等:

Seventy-three people had been drowned in the area, many of them (being) children. (GCE) (准表语为名词) 七十三人淹死在这一地区,其中好多是孩子。

Suddenly the creature reared up on its hind legs behind the bars, (with its) teeth bared, jaws wide open, and started to scratch. (准表语为过去分词、形容词) 忽然在栏杆后,那动物用后腿高高站起身来,露出牙齿,张大嘴巴,开始抓挠起来。

The lecture (being) over, we left the hall. (准表语为副词) 演讲结束了,我们就离开了礼堂。

She marched briskly up the slope, (with) the blanket across her shoulder. (准表语为介词短语) 毯子搭在肩上,她轻快地登上山坡。

Everybody at home, we sat down to dinner. (准表语为介词短语) 大家都在家,我们坐下来吃晚饭。

不用with时,语句更紧凑,有对应意味;而加用with时,

则是强调复合结构对句子谓语的从属修饰关系，如上节中间一例句。可去掉其with: (With) *The whole meeting in uproar, the chairman abandoned the attempt to take a vote.* (GCE)

用with而无being者，可去掉with另用being，亦在明确修饰关系: *With John away/John being away, we've got more room.* 约翰不在这，我们的地方大点了。

在1.3中我们曾讨论with引导的不定式复合结构，用这种“with + 逻辑主语 + 不定式”结构时，如去掉with而修饰关系自明，则可以把with略去，比较下列三句中的复合结构状语：

Without a thing to worry about, she's often heard singing away over her work. 她无牵无挂，常听见她一面工作一面唱歌。

With so much to do within a week, I don't know if I'll have time to go out. I don't know if I'll have time to go out—(with) so much to do within a week.

(不用with，成为不定式独立结构) 我不知道是否有时间出去——一个星期里要干那么多活。

The plan was that the two parties should first reach an agreement on the basic principle, (with) the details to be worked out later. 计划是让双方先就基本原则达成协议，细节留待以后再行研究。

下面句中的不定式独立结构作同位语，不带with: *I was quite prepared to see something tremendous happen, the sun to dance or the earth to heave.* (Schibsbbye) 我满心预料着要发生非常事件——太阳会跳起舞来，地面会起伏震荡。

1.6 不定式、分词短语与从句并非总能互换

比较下列二句前部状语，复合结构状语和分词短语状语：

With so many essays to be written/to write, I doubt if I shall have time to visit you. (可相当主从复合句 *As there are so many essays to be written/ write, I doubt if I...*) 由于有那么多篇文章要写,我怀疑我是否还有时间去看望你。

Having so many essays to write, I doubt if I shall have time to visit you. (可相当于主从复合句 *As I have so many essays to write, I doubt if I...*) (GCE)

以句子主语为施动者而不带逻辑主语的不定式、分词及其短语,在换用从句表达相当意义时,主从句中的主语即是同一个人或同一事物:

Lorraine put on her glasses to see better.
Lorraine put on her glasses so that she could see better. 洛伦戴上眼镜,以便(她自己)看得清楚些。

The royal prisoner, allowed unusual privileges, seemed to enjoy his captivity.
The royal prisoner, since he was allowed unusual privileges, seemed to enjoy his captivity. (GCE)
这王室的囚徒,由于(他)得到特许而享有种种异乎寻常的优待,看来很喜欢他被监禁的生活。

但并非所有使用不定式、分词短语的句子都能与使用从句的主从复合句互相替换。例如上面第一组例句是不定式短语目的状语换成了目的从句,而与其结构相仿的不定式结果状语却不好换成相仿的结果从句:

Thelma looked up suddenly to find a cat on the chair. (Liles) 希尔玛猛然抬头一看,发现椅子上有一只猫。
不宜说 *Thelma looked up suddenly so that she found...*

He stopped smoking *only to start again*. (ib)
他戒烟了，戒的结果只是重新开始抽烟。
不能说 He stopped smoking so that he only
started again.

又如前面第二组互换例句是及物动词过去分词短语 *allowed unusual privilege* 换成了使用该动词的被动从句 *since he was allowed...*，而不及物动词过去分词（如 *arrived*）却不能用来替换使用该动词的主动从句（如 *which has arrived/who have arrived* 等）：

The train *which has arrived at platform one* is from York. (GCE, p. 878) 停到一号站台的列车是从约克来的——却不可说 *The train arrived at platform one is from York.*

Go and show the guests in *who have arrived already*. 去把已经到了的客人带进来。——却不可说 *Go and show the arrived guests in.*（但 *arrived* 带副词可用于：*The train recently arrived at platform one is from York. Go and show the newly arrived guests in.*）

不及物动词过去分词可单独作定语的为数不多：*a fallen tree, the risen sun, a retired colonel, the departed guests, the escaped prisoner, faded colors, vanished civilizations* 等。但有些已是转作形容词，甚至可用作名词：*the deceased partner*，已故同伙；*the deceased* 死者（一人或多人）；*the fallen* 阵亡者（多人）

1.7 分词、形容词定语不仅后位者相当定语从句

除前位分词定语（如 *a working/married man* 中的 *working* 或 *married*）外，所有不带逻辑主语的不定式、分词及其短语担任状语和担任后位定语的，在GCE等书中都称为“没有主语的”“非限定分句”，以区别于有主语的“非限定分句”（我

们所说的复合结构)。即使是单一的不定式, GCE 等也说它是非限定分句, 理由是它能相当一个从句:

The next train to arrive (= that arrived) was from York. (p.878) 随后到达的那趟列车是从约克来的。

单一的分词作状语, GCE 等也称之为“非限定分句”:

Defeated, he slunk from the room. (= Since/When he was defeated, he...) (pp.723, 724) 因为输了, 他悄悄溜出这个房间。/ 当他输了的时候, 他总是悄悄溜出这个房间。

The manager approached us(,) smiling. (p.763) (= ...as/and he was smiling.) 经理微笑着走近我们。

单个的分词后位定语(与形容词后位定语)在 GCE 等书中也被纳入“非限定分句”之列, 其理由也是该分词可相当一个从句(定语从句); 只有分词前位定语(与普通形容词前位定语用法相仿)没有被算作“非限定分句”。但我们认为, 单个的分词或形容词做定语时, 无论它位于中心词之前或是之后, 一般都应视为限定性定语。只有作补充性说明的从句叫非限制性定语从句。

Will the students concerned (= who are concerned) please write their names on this piece of paper? (Close, p.96) 请有关的同学在这张纸上写下你的名字。

The men present (= who were present) were his supporters. (GCE, p.249) 在场的人都是他的支持者。

比较分词前位定语: **The beginning student should be given every encouragement.** (GCE) 对初学者应该尽量给予鼓励。

再比较: **The wanted man was last seen in Cambridge.** (ib) 被通缉的犯人最后一次有人看到是在剑桥。

如果总是套用相当从句的都叫从句(“或分句”)的分析法, 分词、形容词前位定语也会等于定语从句。我们认为, 不定式、分词及其短语毕竟不同于从句, 有时虽可互换, 有时却不可互换。似乎不必绕个弯, 把非限定形式及其短语说成“没有主语

的”“非限定分句”。

1.8 形容词及其短语作状语并非皆为省略的从句

与分词作状语的用法相似，形容词也可以作状语，这种作状语的形容词有时是构成短语，有时只是单个形容词，而在GCE等书，该形容词短语或形容词被称为“无动词分句”；作状语的介词短语也被归为此种“无动词分句”：

Of humble parentage, he began his working life in a shoe factory. (p. 726) (由于)他出身卑微，他开始工作是在一家鞋厂。——这里所谓的“无动词分句”*Of humble parentage, ...*相当该书所说的“非限定分句”*Born of humhle parents, ...*；我们讲这是介词短语状语，相当分词短语状语。

The manager approached us full of apologies./Full of apologies, the manager approached us. (pp. 763, 764) (被称为“无动词分句”的形容词短语状语)

John welcomed Margaret, glad of her company. 约翰很高兴玛格列特和他来到一起，对玛格列特表示欢迎。

Lawson, (though) implacable, contented himself with a glare of defiance. (p. 761) 劳森，虽然是愤愤不平，却只是瞪了一眼，以示对抗。

His gaze travelled round, irresolute. (p. 726) (单个形容词作状语) 他直盯盯的目光，犹豫不决地调转过来。

We can drink it hot. 我们可以趁热喝吧！

Nervous(ly), the man opened the letter./The man, nervous, opened the letter. (pp. 254, 255) 那人忐忑不安地拆开来信。——虽说形容词 *Nervous* 是表示那人本人当时的属性，而副词 *Nervously* 是表示那人拆信时动作的特征，但同是作状语，二者语义上差别无几 (GCE: with little change of semantic force)。两种说法的意思都应是：*The man was nervous when he opened the letter.*

因为: *Sadly, he roamed the streets.* 意为 *He was sad when he roamed the streets.* (GCE, p. 466)

GCE未把这种用法中的副词 *sadly, nervously* 归为“无动词分句”(只讲它们是联系主语的状态语), 却把相似用法的形容词 *nervous* 等归为“无动词分句”了。

我们认为, 形容词、介词及其短语这种状态语用法既然很普遍, 还是简单地说该词、该短语可作状态语为好, 不必说成是什么分句。虽然有时分词、形容词、介词短语前可加用连词, 可看成是一个有所省略的状态从句, 表示时间、条件等, 但上面所举多数分词、形容词、介词短语状态语都是不可加用连词, 特别是那些表示原因、结果、行为方式的分词、形容词、介词短语状态语。

下列句中分词、形容词、介词短语状态语限于表示时间、条件、让步:

(If) Cleared, this site would be very valuable.

(If it were to be cleared, ...) 这片地方清理出来会很有价值的。

(When) Enthusiastic, they make good students.

(When they are ...) 他们热情高涨时, 都是好学生。

(While) At college, he was a prominent member of the dramatic society. (While he was at college, ...) 他上大学时, 是个很优秀的戏剧社成员。

(Whether) Right or wrong, he always comes worst in an argument because of his inability to speak coherently. 无论他是对或不对, 只因说不清楚, 和人争辩时总是一败涂地。

The two accidents, (though) unnecessarily tragic, seemed natural enough. 这两次事件, 虽然本来不一定这样悲惨, 看来却是发生得十分自然。

下列句中分词、形容词、介词短语状态语表示原因、结果、方式或伴随情况, 不可使用连词,

Angry at the girl for oversleeping, he went down to wake her up. (原因) 姑娘睡过点了, 他很生气, 就下去叫她。

He sat down beside Christina, *propping* his feet up on the railing, *feeling* the warmth of the sun against his face, *able* to relax for the first time in days. (方式, 结果) 他坐在克利斯蒂娜身边, 脚搭在栏杆上, 感受着阳光照在脸上的温暖, 多少天来这才得以松一口气。

Never at a loss for a word, he was an excellent speaker. (Close) (伴随情况) 他总不会找不到适当词句, 是个杰出的演说家。

第二章 名词从句的多种关联词

2.1 名词能担任的成分，名词从句都能担任

从句可按所任成分分为主语/表语/宾语从句、定语从句、状语从句等。除定语从句修饰名词/代词、状语从句修饰动词/形容词等外，主语/表语/宾语等多种从句因相当名词功能，统称名词从句 (nominal/noun clauses)。

名词从句具有名词所有的基本句法功能，可担任主语、表语、直接宾语、间接宾语、宾语补语、介词宾语、同位语、呼语。比较担任这些成分的名词性词语 (名/代词，不定式/动名词短语) 和名词从句：

主语：*The news/That is certainly a consolation. That she is still alive is a consolation. (It is a consolation that she is still alive.)* 她还活着，这是一个安慰。*The woman was lying. Whoever told you that was lying.* 不管是谁对你说的，他都是在说假话。

表语：*The problem is this. The problem is that I've caught my hand in a jar.* 问题是我的手卡在坛子里了。*You are not the right person. You are not who I thought you were,* (不如...is what...接名词从句普通；GCE, p.739) 你不是我原来想的那个人。

宾语：*She knows the answer. She knows that you are the guilty one.* 她知道有罪的是你。*I want to see the person in charge of the investigation.* 我要见负责调查工作的人。*I want to see whoever deals with complaints.* 我要见任何一位处理申诉事件的人。

间接宾语: *She will send me a prize. She will send whoever answers the question a prize.* 不论是谁回答问题, 她都要给他一份奖品。 *She threw me a radiant smile.* 她容光焕发地向我微微一笑。 *He gave whoever came to the door a winning smile.* (GCE) 无论是谁来到门口, 他都给人家一个可亲的笑脸。

宾语补语: *How could you do such a nasty thing and still call yourself my friend?* 你干着这种下流勾当, 怎能还说自己是我的朋友呢? *You can call me what (ever) you like.* 你随便称我是什么都可以。

同位语: *The idea of spending the night on the mountain came as a shock to the two old ladies. The idea that they would spend the night on the mountain came as a shock to the two old ladies.* 他们将在山上过夜, 一想到这一点, 就使两位老太太大为震惊。

呼语: *You with the red hair, come out here.* 那个红头发的, 出来。 *Whoever said that, come out here.* 说这话的人, 不管你是谁, 出来。

2.2 作定语、状语的名词的性质与相应的定语、状语从句

但是, 名词除担任主语、表语、宾语等名词性成分外, 还有两种扩展用法——用作定语和状语, 这两种功能却是名词从句所没有的 (该二功能可分别由定语从句、状语从句担任)。

名词作定语时, 实际已失去名词种种基本性质, 如失去数、格形式, 及转取比较级形式或可由副词修饰 (取得形容词性质):

an apple tree (不说 *an apples' tree*) 苹果树, *a course of four years/a four-year course/a four years' course* (NDEC) 四年的课程

We objected on purely business ground. 我们反对此

事，是单纯基于公事上的原因。

He told the story in *choice phrases*. 他以精选的词句讲述了这个故事。She swore at him angrily, but he used even *choicer phrases* in reply. (LDCE) 她忿怒地骂他，但他回敬的词句更妙。

比较定语从句：He borrowed a phrase (*that*) the *first speaker had just used*. 他借用了头一位发言人刚刚用过的话。

名词作状语，本应都带介词，由该介词短语作为状语，因介词常常惯于略去不用，才形成了名词或名词词组担任的状语。

不略介词的时间状语：We met *on the morning of 1st June/in the early morning of 15th September*. (GCE) 我们是六月一日上午/九月十五日大清早见面的。(分别用on, in) I left *before the strike*. 我是在罢工前离开的。

比较状语从句：I left *before the votes were counted*. 我是在选票计数前离开的。

可略介词的时间状语：We met (*on*) *that day/the following day*. 我们就是在那一天/是第二天见面的。We met (*in*) *the January before last/the previous spring*. 我们是在前年一月/那以前的那个春天见面的。

紧挨或直属现在的日期惯于不带介词：We met *yesterday morning/last Sunday/last week/last month/last spring/last year*. We'll meet *tomorrow morning*. We'll meet *next Sunday/month/year*. We haven't met *this morning/week/month/spring/year*. I shall be seeing him *this day week* (=in a week's time). 下星期的今天，我将要见到他。*This day week* (=a week ago) we were in Wales.

(Hornby) 上星期的今天，我们还在威尔士。I go there *every (other) day*. (兼属时间状语和频度状语) 我每天都到那儿去 (每隔一天去那儿一次)。

惯于不带介词的常用时间状语还有下列句中的斜体部分：
I saw her *one day last week/the other day/the day before yesterday/the day after her birthday*. (GCE) I went there *one sunny June morning* (但 *on a sunny June morning*). (Hornby) I'll go there *one day/some day/the day after tomorrow*. 但不带定语的周日（指本周某日）一般还带介词：I suggest that we see him tomorrow night or at the very latest *on Sunday*. 我建议咱们明天晚上或最迟星期日去看他。仅在非正式说法（特别是美国口语）中可以说 I'll see you *Sunday*. *Sundays* we go into the country.

不可以省略介词的持续状语：I haven't spoken to him *for three months*. (修饰否定句非持续动词) *For 600 years*, the cross lay unnoticed. (For居句首，强调持续之久) 长达六百年期间，这十字架躺在那里，无人理会。He has been ill *since the end of May*. I'll be staying *until summer*. 我将一直呆在这里，呆到夏天。

可略介词的持续状语：(For) *How long* are you staying? (How long前加for时一般表示强调) I'm going to stay (for) *a long time/three months/the whole time* you are here. We stayed there/have been here (for) *six weeks*. He has been ill/was away from school (for) *four or five days*. Wait here *a moment*. I guess I'll stop in the bar *a minute* before going up. (小西) 我想，在往上去以前我要去酒吧间坐上一会儿。

前有all或后有round的名词持续状语惯于不带介词：The sun shines in our country *all the year (round)/the whole year round*. 在我国，一年到头都有太阳照耀空中。

表示距离的for…只在紧接动词之后时可略介词：They ran fast *for a mile or two*. (LDCE) Charles ran (for)

a mile in four minutes. The play ran (*for*) more than two years. (Hornby) 这出话剧连续演了两年多。(三句皆一般过去时)

指全程多不用 *for*: Walter ran *the entire distance*. 指部分长度要用 *for*: He ran/walked *for three miles*, then took a bus *for the rest of the trip*. (Schibsbye)

在完成时态句中多不用 *for*, 指已完成全程; 在进行时态句中多半用 *for*, 指所经为一定长度、部分长度(时、空间长度, 即持续、距离等)。

完成体句紧接或靠近动词的 *for* 多略去(已尽全程): I have waited *ages*. 我已等了太久了。They had come/gone a long way. (Hornby) So you've been here (*three*) hours/days/weeks. (EGS)

进行意义句中多不略 *for* (过程未必完结, 可能仍在延续): We were kept waiting *for over half an hour*. (Hornby) I've been coming to see you *for ages*. 好久了, 我总想来看你。We'd been going to Paris *for years*. (but never went) (Palmer) 多年来我们总要去巴黎(总没去成)。This show has been running *for six weeks*. 这出戏一直演了六个星期了。

一般现在时句也多不略 *for* (过程在延续): The story runs *for eight pages*. Her land frontiers run *for 15,000 miles*. 其陆地边界长一万五千英里。

其他介词用于表示各种长度的状语皆不可略: The term runs *from April till July*. 学期是从四月到七月。The book runs *to nearly 120 pages*. Nothing did he see but the sand running *to a rim* against the sky. 除了连绵不断、直到天边的沙漠外, 他什么也看不见。He ran *as far as* the railway station. (*as far as* 可看作复合介词, 不必说其后为有省略的从句)

2.3 引导从句的 *what*, *where* 等可保留或失去疑问意义

从2.1前面的主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句等例句中已可看出，那样分类的各种名词从句有着类似的结构，正如下列两组例句中的主语/表语/宾语从句所示：

It may safely be assumed *that things will improve*. (NDEC) 情况将会好转，对此可以满有把握地设想。

The assumption is *that things will improve*. (CGE)
大家的设想是情况将会好转。

We can safely assume *that things will improve*.

It is a complete mystery *what caused the accident*. (Close) 事故是由什么造成的，这一点全是神秘莫测。

The question is *what caused the accident*.

No one knows *what caused the accident*.

但在同是含有主语从句而结构相同的以下二句中：两个 *What* 的意义和性质却截然不同：(1) *What caused the accident is a complete mystery*. (将上组第一句中的主语从句改置句前) (2) *What caused the accident is a broken bottle*. 前一句中的 *What* 仍是疑问意义 (为疑问代词)：“什么”造成了这一事故是神秘莫测的；后一句中的 *What* 却失去了疑问意义 (为连接代词)，这里 *what = the thing which/that* 或 *that which* (接定语从句)，“…的东西”：造成这一事故的东西原是一个破玻璃瓶子。

再比较下面前三句中的 *where* 与第四句中的 *where* 所具不同意义 (分别为疑问副词、连接副词)：

It's quite clear *where you are mistaken*. 你错在哪里，这是十分清楚的。

The point is not *where you aren't clear enough*,

but *where you are mistaken*. 关键问题不是你哪里不够清楚, 而是你错在哪里了。

But I don't know *where I am mistaken*. 但是我不知道我错在哪里。

That's where you are mistaken. (ALD) 这就是你的错误所在。(where = the place where..., 也是“名词+定语从句”)

正是 what, where 等关联词所具有的不同性质使这些名词从句有着不同的意义与用法。

2.4 疑问代词 what 等都能引导特殊问题从句

英语所有疑问词都以 WH-开头或包含该二字母 (How), 因而被称为 WH-forms。其中有名词、形容词功能的为疑问代词: who(m), whose, what, which; 有副词功能的为疑问副词: when, where, how, why; 另外属于 WH-forms 的还有一个现已失去原疑问代词功能、只具连接功能的连词 (虚词) whether: “是否”。

如果把一般问句和特殊问句作为从句, 分别构成主从复合句, 则两种主从复合句中可分别形成间接一般问句、间接特殊问句: He asked me *whether I had heard of it*. (从句助动词不再置主语前) Tell me *what's the matter*. (此从句词序惯与问句相同) I wonder *whose/which car it was*. (从句主语、系词不再倒装) We don't know *what you have done*. (从句助动词不再前置)

间接问句仍在提出疑问, 属名词性问题从句 (nominal question-clauses) 的一种。名词性问题从句有的仅指已解决的问题: You know *who she is and what she is*. 你知道她是谁, 她是干什么的。We know *who you are writing about*. (非正式说法) We know *about whom you are writing*. (正式说法; 介词 about 属从句)

所有疑问代词都能引导名词性问题从句，这些从句在主从复合句中能担任除间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语以外的各种主要名词性成分：

主语从句：It doesn't matter *who's coming/what you think*. 谁来/你是什么想法都没关系。

表语从句：The problem is not *who will go but who will stay*. 问题不是谁要去，而是谁要留下。

宾语从句：Their hair is long for a boy and short for a girl, so I don't know *which is which*. 比男孩子他们头发过长，比女孩头发过短，分不清是男是女。He couldn't remember *on which shelf he kept it/couldn't remember which shelf he kept it on*. He didn't know *to whom he should turn for help/didn't know who he should turn to for help*. (who 实为 to 的介词宾语) I don't know *who she is with now*. I can imagine *what it is like/what it is for/what you do it for*. (习惯上不用 like/for what ... 的说法, GCE)

保留宾语从句：We were asked *about whom you were writing/were asked who you were writing about*. (本句中的介词属于本句中的从句)

带补语宾语从句：Have you made it clear *what the book is about?* (it 为宾语从句引词, clear 为其补语)

介词宾语从句：We talked about *who would grade the papers*. 我们谈论着谁将要评阅试卷。No one was consulted *on who should have the prize*. 关于谁应得奖，没有和任何人商量过。

同位语从句：We have not yet solved the problem (of) *who was at fault*. 我们还没有解决是谁的过错的问题。My original question, *whose fault it was*, has not been answered. (后句所含为非限制性同位语, 前后有停顿)

因名词性问题从句只能是抽象问题，所以它们不能成为指具体人、具体事物的间接宾语从句、宾语补语从句和呼语从句。而2.9所述名词性关系从句则既能表示抽象事物，又能表示具体人或事物；名词性关系从句具有名词的所有基本句法功能，包括担任间接宾语、宾语补语和呼语的功能。

上面包含问题从句的主从复合句多属陈述句。如主从复合句为疑问句而包含问题从句为其宾语时，多数是主句位于整个宾语从句之前，如上面包含带补语宾语从句的 *Have you made it clear what the book is about?* 及可以另举的 *Do you know who(m) I mean?* (*Schibsbye*) 等例，其所问焦点是 *Have/Do you...* 之类，而回答是 *yes/No, ...*。

但当主句动词是 *think, say* 等时，主句常插在被分成两半的问题从句中间：

Who does he think will wash the car? (*Who* 为从句主语) 他认为谁将要擦洗汽车呢? *Who(m)/What/Which did you say you saw?* (*Whom* 为从句宾语，口语中可用 *Who*) *Who(m) do you think I met in the park this morning?* *To whom do they believe we sent the money?* *Who do they believe we sent the money to?* *Who will she assume opened the bottle?* 她将设想是谁开的这个瓶子呢? *Which English composer did he think had succeeded in finding a national style?* 他认为哪个英国作曲家找到了一种民族风格呢? 这些问句所问焦点是 *Who/Whom/What/Which...* 之类，就不能只回答 *Yes/No*，而要求回答出特殊的人、事物等等。

比较 *Do you know what is there?* 与 *What do you know is there?* 二句译成汉语“你知道那里有什么东西吗?”时，重读处应不同——前句着重“知道”(或不知道)，后句着重“(告诉我到底是)什么东西”。

2.5 疑问副词 *where* 等都能引导特殊问题从句

所有的疑问副词 *when, where, how, why* 也都能引导名词性问题从句, 这些从句在主从复合句中也是担任除间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语以外的各种主要名词性成分。

主语从句: *How the book will sell depends largely on its author.* 书的销路如何主要取决于它的作者。*Why he did it remains a mystery. It remains a mystery why he did it.* 他为什么这么干, 仍是神秘莫测。*When you get up doesn't matter. It doesn't matter when you get up.*

表语从句: *What we want to know/The question is how much it will cost.* 我们所要了解的/问题是这东西要花多少钱。

宾语从句: *Someone has hidden my notebook, and I don't know why and where (he has hidden it).*

保留宾语从句: *She was asked how long the work would take.* 有人问她, 这工作要用多长时间。

带补语宾语从句: *Have you made it known why the meeting has to be put off?* 你说明会议为何要延期了吗?

介词宾语从句: *It all depends (on) when and where you meet.* 这完全取决于你们是在何时何地会面。*They were praised or scolded according to how they had done their work.* 根据他们的工作做得怎么样, 他们分别受到表扬或指责。

同位语从句: *You have no idea how worried I was!*

(LDCE) 你一点也不知道我是多么发愁! *My original question, why he did it at all, hasn't yet been answered.* (后句所含为非限制性同位语, 书面上前后有逗号)

疑问副词本身是从句状语, 而所引导问题从句则是整个主从

复合句中的各种名词性成分。

2.6 连词 *whether* 与 *if* 的异同

whether 在古英语中原属疑问代词，意思本是 *which of the two*，现只用作连词，而保留疑问意义。*whether* 兼及两个方面，常和 *or not* 连用（紧接或不紧接）。在宾语从句，特别是口语中，常用 *if* 代替 *whether*，*if* 着重一个方面，因而句中即使加 *or not*，也不能紧接 *if*。

whether 已兼及正反两面，故从句为否定句时，一般不用 *whether*；*I don't care if it doesn't rain.* 天如果不下雨，我也不在意。仅在否定句实属“肯定意向”时可用 *whether*；*I wonder whether he doesn't think too much of himself.*

(GCE) 我不知道他是不是把自己看得太了不起了（不应如此却很可能如此）。

不用 *if*，而只能用 *whether* 的情况较多：

1) 句首：*Whether your car breaks down or not doesn't concern me./Whether your car breaks down or not, I don't care.* 你的车坏不坏，与我无关/我并不在意。（比较：*I don't care if/whether your car breaks down.*）

2) 紧接 *or not*：*I don't care whether or not your car breaks down.*（特别加强语气）

3) 名词后：*The question whether he should make a clean breast of his guilt troubled him.* 他是否应该坦白交代他的罪行，这个问题苦恼着他。

4) 介词后：*It all depends on whether he's coming or not. I haven't settled the question (of) whether I'll go back home.* (Swan)

5) 不定式前：*The decision whether to see her was mine alone.* (LDCE) 是否去看她，当时完全由我自己决定。*She doesn't know whether to get married now or*

wait.

6) 表选择主句后: *I didn't know whether I should laugh or not. We discussed whether we should close the shop.* (Swan) 二句意思是: 自己要在“是否应该笑”、“是否应关店门”的正反两者中选择其一。比较不由自己选择的事可以用 *if*; *He wants to know/He asked if/whether he should carry my bag.* (Swan, 535)

在上述六种情况下, 从句(或不定式短语)都是指“一件事”的正反两面。而当从句(或不定式短语)指出“两件事”时——不是说“是否……”, 而是说“或是……或是……”, 显然不能用 *if*;

I didn't know whether I should laugh or cry/whether to laugh or to cry. (*whether...or...* 被称为复合连词)

We discussed the question (as to) whether China will gain or lose by the war. 我们讨论了中国由于这次战争的得失问题。

I wonder whether we shall be in time for the last bus or whether we shall have to walk home. (ALD)

(*shall be...shall have to walk...* 并列二宾语从句、重复 *whether* 及主语 *we* 时, 特别强调区分; 亦可略去后面此二词, 见《新英汉词典》)

whether 与 *if* 引导让步状语从句时, 区别较为明显; *whether* 与 *or* 连用, 指“即使会有这样、那样两种情况”, 而 *if* 仅指“即使会有某一情况”;

Whether we beat them or they beat us, the match will be enjoyable. (比较 *If we beat them, or even if they beat us, ...*) (CGE) 不管是我们打败他们, 还是他们打败我们, 这场比赛都会是很有意思的。

If he's poor, at least he's honest. 虽然他穷, 但至

少他是诚实的。

Whether it be that he is unwilling to work, or that he has no need of working, he is, at all events, the most lazy dog I ever set eyes on. (综合英汉大辞典) 无论是他不愿意工作, 或者是他不需要工作, 无论如何, 他是我见过的最懒的懒虫。

2.7 连词 *whether/if* 引导一般问题从句

whether/if 引导的名词性问题从句是一般问题从句, 即引述可由 *Yes/No* 回答的问题。一般问题从句在主从复合句中, 也是担任除间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语以外的各种主要名词性成分。其中 *if* 主要是引导宾语从句 (多用于口语中), 表示不了解的情况, 而不是所临选择作法; *if* 引导主语从句、表语从句者较为少见。

主语从句: *Whether he's coming (or not) is still uncertain. It's still uncertain whether/if he's coming.*

(EGS) *Whether we can stay with my mother is another matter.* 我们是否能和我母亲暂住一起是另一回事。It doesn't matter *whether I go or not.* 我去不去没关系。

表语从句: *What I'm anxious to know is whether/if the shops are open now.* 我急于知道的是商店是否现在开门。The question is *whether or not the figures are accurate.* 问题是这些数字是否确切。

宾语从句 (在口语中, *ask, doubt, know, learn, say, see, tell, understand, wonder* 等动词和可接 *if* 宾语从句, 指情况不明) *Do you know if/whether the shops are open now? I doubt/can't tell if/whether it is him/he or not. I wonder if/whether she isn't mistaken.* (LDCE) 我想她错了。(半否定表“肯定意向”, 实肯定其错误) *I'll see if he wants to talk to you.* (see *if* 属惯用) *I'll see if I can't*

get the job done today. (Harper) (see if I can't 亦属惯用) 我来试试看, 今天能不能把这件工作干完。

保留宾语从句: *I wasn't asked whether my wife was coming.* 没有人问我我的妻子来不来。

带补语宾语从句: *You haven't made it clear whether financial help will be forthcoming.* (ib) 你还没有讲清, 财政援助是否将及时提供。

介词宾语从句: *I worry about whether I hurt her feelings.* (LDCE) 我很担心是否是我伤了她的感情。 *I'm not interested in whether you like the plan or not.* 我不管你是不是喜欢这个计划。 *Everything depends on whether we have enough money.* 一切取决于我们的钱够不够。

同位语从句: *The question whether it is right or wrong depends.* 这是对是错, 要根据具体情况。 *If someone can do his or her job really well, then the question (of) whether they are male or female is not important.* 如果有人能真正做好工作, 那他们是男是女就无关紧要。 *I'm in doubt whether I ought to give this plan my approval.* (ALD) 我犹豫不决, 不知该不该同意这个计划。

2.8 what/which/WH—ever可相当“先行词+关系代词”

在名词性关系从句中, *what* 意为 *the thing which/that* (接定语从句) 或 *that which*。 *what* 一身二任, 相当“主句中未提明的先行词 (antecedent) + 定语从句中的关系代词”。因而这一 *what* 称为连接代词, 所引从句称为名词性关系从句。如 *Quality is what counts most.* = *Quality is that which counts most.* (GCE) 质量是至关重要的问题。

连接代词 *which* + 名词相当于“*that/those* + 名词 + *which/that/who* (接定语从句)”: *You should vote for which/whichever candidate you think best.* = *You should vote*

for that candidate whom you think best.

但连接代词 *what/which* 并非突然、无端失去疑问意义的。在某些关系从句中，其疑问意义可以保留，同时又在减弱，甚至可以趋于消失：*It is not yet known what they did.* —— *What did they do? We don't know that yet.* —— *We don't know the thing which/that they did.* *He often told me what he had learned at school.* —— 他常常告诉我，他在学校学的是什么。——他常常对我讲他在学校里学的东西。

保留疑问意义的疑问代词用法与失去疑问意义的连接代词用法并存，有时会使从句中的 *what* 产生歧义。如 *They asked me what I didn't know.* 可理解为：1) *They asked me, "What don't you know?"* 2) *They asked me things which/that I didn't know.* 歧义句应该避免。

what 作为从句主语时多接用单数动词谓语，但当它指复数事物时（特别是从句内者）可接复数谓语：*What is needed is books. What is needed are books. What are needed are books.* (EGS) (但不说 *What are needed is books.*) *Colonel Aref went about the country saying what are always understood to be hair-raising things.* (Schibsbye) 阿列夫上校在国内各处走动，讲些总是被认为令人毛骨悚然的事情。

名词性关系从句中 *which* 所修饰的名词如果不提，*which* 即成为名词性成分。而主要担任名词性关系从句中各种名词性成分的 *what* 有时又用作关系从句中的定语：

The squirrels are feasting on what walnuts the jays have left. 松鼠把桤鸟剩下的胡桃当美餐，正在享用。*He visits what few friends he has.* (LDCE) 他常去访问他仅有的几个朋友。*I'll give you what (little)/whatever help I can.* (EGS) 我将尽我所能，给你些帮助。

单独的who在现代英语中不用作连接代词来引导关系从句(不用来表示the person who), 仅在谚语与个别作家文字中还保留它旧有的连接代词用法。而WH-ever诸代词whoever, whatever, whichever都可作为连接代词引导名词性关系从句。

但不连写的what ever等是疑问代词(非连接代词), 可引导问题从句(而非关系从句)。下列二句所含从句分属问题从句与关系从句:

I asked him *what ever/what on earth* he was up to. 我问他, 他究竟是想达到什么目的。

You may ask him *whatever* (anything that) you don't understand. 任何你不懂的东西, 你都可以问他。——句中的whatever也相当“先行词+关系代词that(其后接定语从句)”。whatever引导的从句在意义上包含了先行词, 性质上相当名词, 故称名词性关系从句(nominal relative clauses)。

2.9 what/which/WH-ever引导名词性关系从句

除who仅在旧用法中可引导名词性关系从句外, what, which与WH-ever诸连接代词都可引导名词性关系从句、所引导从句在主从复合句中担任包括间接宾语、宾语补语、呼语在内的所有名词性成分。

主语从句: *What/Whatever you did* has been forgiven. 你所做的(一切)事(都)已得到宽恕。*What is true of Korean sculpture* is even more true of Korean painting. 对于朝鲜雕刻是适宜的这种评价, 对于朝鲜绘画尤为适宜。*Whichever you want* is yours. *Whoever comes late* can't be admitted. 任何迟到者都不得入场。

谚语中who/whom引导主语从句(旧用法): *Who chatters to you*, will chatter of you. 对你议论人的, 也会对人议论你。*Who fears to suffer*, suffers from fear. 害怕吃苦的, 苦就苦在害怕。*Who goes aborrowing*, goes asorrowing.

总是借帐，总是够呛。*Who shows mercy to an enemy denies it (mercy) to himself.* 对敌温情就是对己无情。*Whom the gods love die young.* 天赋奇才常短命。(当代作家偶借此旧用法：*It crowded the small room, so that who came and went must circle and press about it.* (Pearl Buck) 那东西占了大半个小屋，来去之人必须绕着挤过。)

表语从句：*He was what Adam was when first made.* 亚当刚出世是什么样子，他就是那个样子。*Laputa is to Lilliput what Alice in Wonderland is to surrealism.*

(格列佛游记中的) 空中飞鸟之于小人国，正如梦游仙境的爱丽斯之于超现实主义，(都是不大相同的)。*You're not who I thought you were.* (旧用法)

宾词从句：*Do what(ever) you like.* 你愿意怎么办就怎么办吧！*Take whichever one(s) you want.* (EGS) 你想拿哪个(些)就拿哪个(些)。*Ask whoever you meet.* (Schibsbye, 正式说法 *Ask whomever you meet.*) *Whom God would ruin, he first deprives of reason* (谚语；比较 *God first deprives the person whom he would ruin of reason.*) 上帝要把谁毁掉，先让他丧失理性，神魂颠倒。

保留宾语从句：*You'll be given whatever you need.* 无论你需要什么，都将给你。

间接宾语从句：*I gave whoever it was a drink.* (CGE) 不管谁来，我都给他一杯酒喝。*He told whoever would listen his adventure story.* (He told his adventure story to whoever would listen.) 不论是谁愿意听，他都对人家讲述他的冒险故事。

带补语宾语从句：*Choose whoever is the wisest (as) your leader.* 谁英明就选谁为你们的领袖。*We shouldn't regard as impossible what is really possible.* 我们不应该把实际可能的事当作是不可能的。

宾语补语从句: *I don't know what it is. Call it what you will.* 我不知道这是什么。你想叫它什么就叫它什么吧。
It's Andrew who made the group what it is. 正是安德鲁使这个团体发展到今天这样。
You may consider our deeds whatever (crime) you can imagine. 你可以随便设想, 我们的所作所为是何种行径(罪行)。

介词宾语从句: *The actual sum is no greater than what Mr Eisenhower asked for.* (从句中 *what* 为 *for* 的介词宾语, 而整个复合句中 *what* 所引导从句为介词 *than* 的宾语) 实际数量正如艾森豪威尔先生所要求的, 一点也不多。
He won more immediate support in the conference than (what 一般略) might have been expected. (Schibsbys) 在会议上, 他赢得了超出意料的、更多人当场的支持。
We can assign the work to whoever is reliable/to whomever we can trust. 我们可以把这项工作交给任何可靠的人/我们信任的任何人。
Return the parcel to whosever address is on it. 这邮包上写着谁的地址, 就把邮包退到那里去。
She will sit beside whom she chooses. (Liles) 她总是要坐在她自己挑选的人旁边。

同位语从句: *I gave the girl a big doll, exactly what she longed to have.* 我给了那女孩一个大洋娃娃, 这正是她盼望得到的。
Only his wife knew his secret, what he was up to staying up all night. 只有他的妻子知道他的秘密: 他为什么整夜不睡。

呼语从句: *Whoever wants to stay here a little longer, please stand up.* 谁想在这里再呆一会儿, 请站起来。

2.10 when/where/why/how 引导名词性关系从句

连接副词 *when, where, why, how* 引导名词性关系从句时, 其意义分别是: *the time when...*, *the place where...*,

the reason why...与the way that/in which...。所引关系从句一般不能担任主从复合句中的间接宾语、宾语补语或呼语，因为这些从句一般不指具体人或具体事物。仅 *where* 所指较为具体，偶见所引名词性关系从句为复合句中的间接宾语，*He gave where the island had disappeared into the sea a last, parting look.* 他向那海岛消失在海面的地方投以最后的、告别的一瞥。

四个连接副词所引导名词性关系从句可在主从复合句中担任各种主要名词性成分。(连写于*ever*的三个连接副词*whenever*, *wherever* 与 *however* 却不象*whatever*等连接代词那样用于引导名词性关系从句，而仅用于引导状语从句、表示时间、处所、方式及让步，见下节)

主语从句：*Why (The reason why) he shot her isn't important.* (LDCE) 他为什么开枪打死她/他开枪打死她的原因并不重要。*It is a mystery how (the way in which) you are going to do it.* 你即将做这件事所采取的办法，是神秘莫测的。

表语从句：*Before breakfast is when (the time when) I do my best work.* (CGE) 早饭前我干工作精力最充沛。*Home is where your family and friends are. That's where the shoe pinches.* 毛病就在这里。*Is that why (the reason why/for which) you did it? This is how (the way that/in which) you start the engine.* 你这样来启动发动机。*Tomorrow is when it would be most convenient.* (GCE) 明天是最合适的时间。

宾语从句：*I remember when (the time when) it happened. Show me where (the place where) Shakespeare lived.* 领我看看莎士比亚住的地方。*I'll never forget how you sang and danced that night.* 我将永远忘不了那天晚上你唱歌、跳舞的情景。

保留宾语从句: *I was told when (the time when) they were to leave.* 有人告诉我他们出发的时间了。They were shown *how (the way in which) it was done.* 有人指点给他们那工作的作法。

带补语宾语从句: *He has never made public when and where they meet regularly.* 他从未公开说明他们经常会面的时间、地点。Have you made it known *how you obviated a threatening danger to them all?* 你排除了威胁他们所有的人的危险, 这事你告诉大家了吗?

介词宾语从句: *I'll wait till when we meet again.* He lives ten miles from *where I'm living.* 他住在离我现在住的地方十英里处。

同位语从句: Let us know your college address, *where you live during the term/in term time.* 告诉我们你在学院的地址, 学期当中你住的地方。At last I got to know her secret, *how she had won him back and why she had to.* 我终于知道了她的秘密: 她是怎样重新赢得他的欢心的, 以及她为什么必须这样做。

2.11 介词的省略与状语从句的关系

担任状语不是名词的基本功能, 作状语的名词及名词词组原是省略了所带的介词(见2.2)。同样, 名词从句本来也没有担任状语的功能, 当我们读到语法所讲或见到复合句实例中“名词从句作状语”或“名词性状语从句”的时候, 应理解这也是省略了介词的结果:

She was not aware (of) how much her husband earned. (Hornby) 她不知道她丈夫挣多少钱。(状语从句修饰形容词)

介词宾语从句属名词从句, 当它在形容词后略去介词时, 就成为修饰形容词的状语从句; 当它在“及物动词+宾语”后略去

介词时，就成为修饰该动宾短语的状语：

I can't make up my mind (about) who(m) we should ask to speak first. (EGS) 我下不了决心，不知应该首先请谁讲话。

介词宾语从句略去介词最常见的是在形容词后面，这就使原名词从句取得了超出名词性质的状语功能，因其表示形容词属性的相关方面，可称方面状语从句 (abverbial clause of respect)：

I wasn't certain(of) whose house I was in. (GCE) 我弄不清我是在谁家里。

Do you feel sure about it? I'm not sure whether I have a copy/where I left my copy/when I lost it/why he wants it. (ALD) 你觉得确实没错吗？我弄不清我有一份（本）没有/我那份（本）丢哪儿了/什么时候丢的/他为什么要。

I was not aware (of) how deeply he had felt the death of his mother. (ib) 我不知道，他为他母亲的死感到多么悲痛。

Be careful (about) what you do/where you go/how you carry it. 你所作的事/到什么地方去/怎么拿它，要加小心。

He's very fussy (about) how his meals are cooked. (Hornby) 他对于他的饭菜做得怎么样，很挑剔。

He's doubtful (about) whether he can afford it. (ib) 他怀疑自己能否办得到。

略去介词的WH-状语从句一般为名词性问题从句，有的亦可理解为名词性关系从句：

I'm quite aware how you must feel. (LDCE) (I'm quite aware of the way that...) 我完全理解你现在的心情。

但显然只属于名词性关系从句的what (the thing which/that) …前的aware of/certain of等却不能略去介词: It was several minutes before I was aware of what was happening. (Wood) 过了几分钟, 我才理解正在发生的事。He was not aware of what was going on around him. (ib) Are you certain of what (the things that) you say? (ib) 对于你所说的情况, 你确实了解吗?

WH-介词宾语从句前介词的省略属于习惯搭配, 很多情况下不能省略: I'm worried about where she is. (Swan) was very upset about what you did to me. (ib) (二句中过去分词转成的形容词后介词宾语从句前不略介词) 你对我干下的勾当使我很烦恼。

The police questioned me about where I'd been. (ib) (“及物动词+宾语”后) 警察们盘问我曾到什么地方去。

I often think about when (the time when) I was young. (ib) (及物动词后) 我常常回想我年轻的时候。

2.12 WH-形式引导名词从句、其他从句综述

本节归纳一下上述WH-形式引导名词从句的用法, 并大略提及哪些WH-形式还能引导定语从句、状语从句, 以便联系、比较。

根据本章以上各节, 先把WH-名词从句所用关联词与从句的句法功能综合如下:

		引导WH-名词 从句所用的关联词	从句在复合句中所 担任指具体事物或 抽象事物的成分	从句在复合句中 所任指具体事物 (包括人)的成分
名词性问题从句	特殊 问题从句	所有疑问代词、疑问副词	主语、表语、宾语、 介词宾语、同位语 (介词宾语从句前 略介词形成状语从 句)	(不能担任间接 宾语, 宾语补语、 呼语)
	一般 问题从句	连 词 whether(if)		(不能担任间接 宾语, 宾语补语、 呼语)
名词性关系从句	连接代词 引导的关 系从句	除who 以外的连接代 词 (what, which) 及 whoever, whatever, whichever	主语、表语、宾语、 介词宾语、同位语 (介词宾语从句前 略介词形成状语从 句)	间接宾语、 宾语补语、 呼 语
	连接副词 引导的关 系从句	when等所有连接副词 (而whenever, wherever, however, 不能引导关系从句)	主语、表语、宾语、 介词宾语、同位语 (介词宾语从句前 略介词形成状语从 句)	(一般不能担任间 接宾语、宾语补 语、呼语)

WH-形式除引导名词从句外, 其中很多还分别能引导定语从句及状语从句。

其中能引导让步状语从句的WH-形式最多, 包括 whether (...or...) 与所有WH-形式加-ever 构成的复合连接代词和复合连接副词:

Whether they arrive tonight, tomorrow or whenever, they'll be welcome. 不论他们今天晚上来、明天来或者任何时候来, 我们总是欢迎。

We'll go out whatever the weather (is like). (EGS) 不管天气怎么样, 我们也要出去。

I won't let him in, whoever he is. 无论他是谁, 我也不让进。

You must leave your membership card here,

whichever book you borrow. 无论你借哪本书，都得把会员证留在这儿。

Whenever it happened, it was certainly not yesterday. 不管事情是什么时候发生的，肯定不是昨天。

Wherever you met her, it was not in my house. 你是在哪儿碰见她的都有可能，但肯定不是在我家里。

However experienced you may be, driving fast is always dangerous. 无论你多么有经验，开快车总是很危险的。

*whenever, wherever*与*however* 还能象*when, where, how*那样分别引导时间状语从句、处所状语从句、方式状语从句：

When/Whenever (I am) in doubt, I consult the dictionary. 我有疑问时/无论何时一有疑问，我就查字典。

You may park your car *where there is a parking sign/wherever you like.* 有停车标志的地方/你愿意在哪儿停车，你就可以在那儿停车。

Some people drive *how they like* (in the way they like). 有些人愿意怎么开车就怎么开车。

They drive *however they like* (in any way that they like).

WH 形式中有五种能引导定语从句：*who* (以及*whom, whose*), *which, when, where, why* (用法见第三章)。

代词性的WH-形式能引导的从句归纳如下：

	作为疑问/连接代词引导名词从句	作为关系代词引导定语从句	作为连接代词引导状语从句
what	问题从句 关系从句	_____	_____
who(包括 whom, whose)	问题从句 (一般不用于引导关系从句)	定语从句 the man/those who the man whom/whose...	_____
which	问题从句 关系从句	定语从句 the book which...	_____
whatever, whoever(包括 whomever, whosever), whichever	关系从句 (不用于引导问题从句)	_____	让步状语从句

副词性的WH-形式能引导的从句归纳如下:

	作为疑问/连接副词引导名词从句	作为关系副词引导定语从句	作为连接副词、连词、引导状语从句
when	问题从句 关系从句	定语从句 the time when...	趋于虚化,成连词,引导时间状语从句
where	问题从句 关系从句	定语从句 the place where...	趋于虚化,成连词,引导处所状语从句
how	问题从句 关系从句	(不说the way how... 而说the way that/in which...)	趋于虚化,成连词,引导方式状语从句
why	问题从句 关系从句	定语从句 the reason why...	_____
whenever, wherever, however	_____	_____	分别引导时间/处所/方式状语从句,都能引导让步状语从句

2.13 虚化that引导主语/表语/宾语/介词宾语/同位语从句

下列句中this为指示代词，而that已虚化为连词，所引导从句作this的同位语：

Both Gospels have this in common *that* they neither describe nor exhibit Him as other than man. 圣经新约这两部福音书这一点是共同的：都是既不把他（耶苏）描绘，也不把他表现为异于常人之人。

比较：He got it into his head *that* the doctors were taking his case too indifferently. 他心里想到，这些医生对他的病太漠不关心了。

it因常用于指后随的that名词从句而虚化为引导词 (introductory word)。除象此处这样引导带补语 (into his head) 的that宾语从句外，更常见引导that主语从句，使较长的主语结构位于句子后边，而句子不致头重脚轻：

It seems doubtful that he will be on time. 他会按时来到，这一点看来是大有疑问的。

但是，如果要强调表语，也可以不用引导词it，而把that主语从句直接放在复合句前头；表语与句末重点：

That he will be on time seems doubtful. (Liles)
That you will win the medal seems unlikely. (ib) 说你会赢得这一奖章，这看来不大可能。

That she was chosen made a tremendous stir in her village. (此句谓语加上状语比主语从句要长，主语从句在前，句子较平衡；如前用引导词it而把较短主语从句置于句末，反而会头重脚轻) 她被选中这件事，在她那个村子里激起了轩然大波。

但带that主语从句的复合句为疑问句者，却只能由it引导 (引导词it作形式主语“formal subject”)，使主谓倒装或部分倒装 (系词、助动词或情态动词前置) 只涉及简短的it，疑问形式明确，而较长的从句主语总是位于复合句后边：

How is it *that you wish to resign*? 你想要辞职, 这是怎么回事?

How did/could it happen *that he forgot to fill up*? 他怎么会忘了加油的呢?

Is/Isn't it obvious *that he doesn't want to see us*? 他不想见我们, 这很明显吗/这不是很明显的吗?

Does it surprise you *that we have run out now*? 现在我们的汽油就用完了, 这使你感到惊讶吗?

虚词性质的连词*that* 引导的名词性从句总是指一种抽象情况, 不能象*who (ever)* 等所引导名词从句那样可能指具体的人物, 因而, *that* 名词从句不能担任间接宾语、宾语补语或呼语, 而是担任其他主要名词性成分:

主语从句: *That he forgot to fill up (is what) amazes/puzzles me.* (EGS) 他忘了加油, 这使我很惊讶/迷惑不解。(强调说法; 一般说: *It amazes/puzzles me that he forgot to fill up.*)

表语从句: *What amazes me is that he forgot to fill up before we left.* 使我惊讶的是, 我们出发前他忘了加油。*The fact is (that) we've run out (of petrol).* 事实是我们的汽油用完了。

宾语从句: *The passengers don't believe (that) he forgot to fill up.* 乘客们不信他忘了加油。

保留宾语从句: *They have been told that he forgot to fill up.* 有人已告诉他们, 他忘了加油。

带补语宾语从句: *I made sure that he would be there (Schibsbye)* 我弄清楚了, 他一定要到那里去。*I heard it said that he had gone abroad.* (带补语宾语从句多以*it* 引导, 该*it* 为形式宾语, "formal object") 我听说他出国了。*The passengers took it for granted that they would have to spend the night on the mountain side.* 乘客们认为他们

将在山腰上过夜，这是理所当然的。

介词宾语从句 (that名词从句只能作except, in, save三个介词的宾语): She knew nothing except that he was there. 她只知道他在那里, 此外她什么事都不知道。I agree with you, save that you have got 1 or 2 facts wrong.

(LDCE) 除了一两件事你弄错了以外, 我同意你的说法。The modern English verb is more complicated than the old English verb, in that it has a highly developed analytic tense system. 现代英语动词比古英语动词复杂, 因它有高度发展的分析形式时态体系。

同位语从句: The breakdown was due to the fact that the driver had forgotten to fill up with petrol. 汽车抛锚是由于司机发车前忘了加油。The story goes that they've been secretly married for months. 据说他俩秘密结婚已数月之久。Fears have arisen that Nigeria's freedom of action might be impaired. 人们开始担心, 恐怕尼日利亚的行动自由会受到限制。

下列两组例句中的that名词从句应为this 或it的同位语。如果it可看作虚词性的引导词, 则该it所引导的that名词从句可看作宾语从句(第一组各句中)或介词宾语从句(第二组各句中); 但各动词与从句间惯用的it不可省去, 介词与it连用者有时可一起省去(参见2.17,3):

I take it (that) you are unable to throw any light upon the matter. 我认为你根本不能帮助我们理解此事。Legend has it that Fiji arose in a night. 传说富士山是一夜之间耸立起来的。I don't like it that he should be alone with my girl. 我不愿意他单独和我的女朋友呆在一起。I owe it to him that I am still alive. 我还能活着, 我要感谢他。He resents it so terribly that he's ill and I'm well. 他有病, 而我身体很好, 他为这事气得不得了。This you know/

You know this, *that I am with you always*. 我永远和你在一起, 这一点你知道。

It has come to this, *that he can't support his family*. 事情到了这个地步, 他连养家都养不起了。I took his word for it *that he would try hard*. 我想他的意思说, 他要努力干。You may rely upon it *that he will be early*.

(ALD) 你可以放心, 他会早来的。You may depend upon it *that I shall support you*, 你可以相信, 我一定支持你。I must insist (upon it) *that everyone leaves the room*. 我一定要坚持所有的人离开这间屋。Look to it *that this does not happen again*. (ALD), 注意不要再发生这种事。Please see (to it) *that these letters are sent to the post*. (ib) 注意这些信件要妥为付邮。I saw/can swear (to it) *that he never left my sight*. (Close) 我特别注意/能断定他一直没有离开过我的监视。

2.14 复合宾语/主语可相当宾语/主语从句

下列各组第一(二)句中的复合宾语显然相当于相邻复合句中的宾语从句, 在这些带复合宾语的句中或复合句的主句中, 谓语(如believed, declared)都表示思想或言谈:

{ We believed *the president to be dead*.

{ We believed (*that*) *the president was dead*.

{ 我们相信总统已死。

{ They declared *him (to be) an honest man*. 他们宣称他是个诚实人。

{ They declared/said (*that*) *he was an honest man*.

{ (习惯上不说 They said him to be...)

{ We know *him to be a rich man*.

{ We know (*that*) *he's a rich man*. 我们知道他是个有钱的人。

We could hardly expect *Ruth to be on time.*

We could hardly expect *that Ruth would be on time.*

我们难以指望露斯会准时来到。

They reported *thousands to be starving.*

They reported *that thousands were starving.*

他们报告说，成千上万的人没有饭吃。

The captain ordered *his men to fire a salute.*

The captain ordered *a salute to be fired.*

The captain ordered *that the men (should) fire a salute/a salute(should) be fired.* 舰长令水兵/下令放礼炮。

可以看出，复合宾语中带补语的宾语（逻辑主语、准主语）相当宾语从句中的主语，而复合宾语中的宾语补语（准表语：名词、形容词；准谓语：分词、不定式）则分别相当宾语从句的表语或谓语。

以上带复合宾语的句子如改为被动句，原复合宾语就会形成复合主语，而复合主语相当主从复合句中的主语从句。带复合主语的句子和带主语从句的复合句中，谓语除可表示“思想、言谈”（*was believed/reported*）外，还可以表示“发生、表明”（*happened/turned out*）、“确定性、可能性”（*seemed, was certain/likely*）等。

1) 谓语表示思想、言谈：

The president was reported/believed to be dead.

It was reported/believed by the UPI that the president was dead. 合众国际社报导/相信总统已死。

也可以说：*That the president was dead was reported by the UPI.* (小西) *That the president was dead was generally believed.* (ib)

上组例句最后两句以*that*开头，主语从句在前，谓语带状语

在句子末尾，作为“句末重点” (end-focus) 传达听者未知的情况。而带主语从句复合句中并非传达听者未知情况的简短谓语一般不放在句子末尾，以免头重脚轻。如常说 *A salute was ordered to be fired. It was ordered that a salute (should) be fired. He is said to be a miser. It was said that he is a miser.* 一般不说 *That a salute (should) be fired was ordered.* 或 *That he is a miser is said.*

He is known to be a rich man.

It's known that he is a rich man.

或说 *That he's a rich man is known to everyone here.*

Ruth could hardly be expected to be on time.

It could hardly be expected (that) Ruth would be on time.

也可以说 *That Ruth would be on time could hardly be expected.* (Quirk) 露斯很少准时来到，大家都难以指望她会准时。

It dawned on/occurred to sb. 也表示思想活动，但该二动词（表示“明白”/“想到”）只能用引导词 *it* 引导主语从句的一种句型，既没有用 *that* 开头的主从复合句形式，也没有对应的复合主语形式：

Has it ever dawned on you that his story may be a fabrication? (Wood) 你明白了吗，他所说的可能全是编造？
It dawned on Fred that he would fail the course if he did not study harder. (DAI) 弗莱德理解到，如果他再不努一把力用功学习，这门课他将不能及格。

It occurred to me that we should go there more often. (LDCE) 我想到，我们应该更加经常地到那里去。

2) 谓语表示“发生”、“表明”等：

I happened to see him yesterday.

It (so) happened that I saw him yesterday.

(LDCE)

不说 That I saw him yesterday happened.

I chanced to be out when he called.

It chanced that I was out when he called. (ALD)

他来访时赶上我不在家。

不说 That I was out...chanced.

His country cottage turned out to be an enormous bungalow.

It turned out that his country cottage was an enormous bungalow. 他的农舍原来是一座非常高大的有游廊的平房。

不说 That his country cottage was...turned out.

It comes about 也表示“发生”，但只能用引导词it引导主语从句的一种句型，既没有用that开头的主从复合句形式，也没有对应的复合主语形式：

How does it come about that you did not report the theft until two days after it occurred? (ODCIE)

你怎么直到盗案发生两天后才报案的呢？Thus it came about that the year 1849 saw a great war in Hungary. 就这样，一八四九年在匈牙利发生了一场大战。

3) 谓语表示可能性、确定性：

You seem to have made a mistake.

It seems that you have made a mistake. 看来你犯了一个错误。

不说 That you have made a mistake seems.

He appears to have been ill.

It appears that he has been ill. 看样子他曾闹病。

不说 That he has been ill appears.

There appears to have been a mistake. /So it appears/It appears not. (ALD)好象原来有个错误。
/好象有/好象没错。

It appears (to me) that there has been a mistake.
不说 *That there has been a mistake appears.*

有的语法书把这类句中 *seem*、*appear* 后的 *that* 名词从句解释成表语从句（或称主语补语从句），理由是 *seem* *appear* 等为联系动词，而且把本节 2）所述 *It happened* 后面的 *that* 从句也归为表语从句，似乎 *happen* 也成了联系动词，这是说不通的。

实际上，*seem* 与 *appear* 既可为不及物动词（实意动词的一种），又可为联系动词。在以上三组例句中，*seem*、*appear* 与本节 2）所述 *happen*、*turn out* 同为不及物动词，同为复合主语或主语从句的谓语，*seem* 表示“显示”（对观察、理解来说），*appear* 表示“呈现”（对较单纯的直观来说），都是表示事物的运动。

而下面两组例句中 *seem* 与 *appear* 才是作为联系动词，接有表语，表示事物与属性的联系。注意，与这两个联系动词连用的主语从句可以前置，整个复合句以连词 *that* 开头：

It seemed strange to my mother that I liked arithmetic.

That I liked arithmetic seemed strange to my mother.

我喜欢算术，在我母亲看来，这很奇怪。

It appears true that she will win.

That she will win appears true. (LDCE) 看样子是真的，她会取胜的。

而对 *It appears*（不及物动词）*that she will win* 来说，却没有相应的 *That she will win appears*。那种说法。（可以说 *She appears to be winning/going to win.*）

但再观察后面三组例句，各组分别以is likely/unlikely/certain为表语性谓语，就可用主语从句前置，以that开头的句型（尽管远不如用引导词it开头的复合句句型那么常用）：

The weather is likely enough to be fine.
It's likely enough/probable that the weather will be fine.
That the weather will be fine is likely enough.
天气会好的，这很有希望。

He is unlikely to refuse the offer.
It's unlikely that he will refuse the offer.
That he will refuse the offer is unlikely.
(Eckersley)
他不大可能拒绝这个提议（给他的价钱、工作机会等）。

Prices are certain to go up. Prices are sure to go up.
It's certain that prices will go up.
That prices will go up is certain. (Thomson)
物价要上涨，这是确定不移的。

三种句型中，sure只用于带复合主语的句型，如When they come together, *there is sure to be trouble.* (Jespersen)（他们到一起时就一定会闹乱子。）却不说：...It is sure that there is/will be trouble. 也不说：It's sure that prices will go up. (sure应改certain, LDCE)

另外二形容词probable, possible却不用于复合主语句，常接主语从句说It is possible but not probable that I shall go there next week. (LDCE)（下周我有能可去那儿，但可能性不大。）而不说I am possible/probable to go. 也不说The weather is possible/probable to be fine. (Hornby) 比较用作状语的语气副词possibly, probably; He's possibly/perhaps the most selfish man in town. 他可能是城里最

自私的人。The weather will *probably* be fine. 天气大概会很好的。

2.15 介词的省略形成that方面/原因状语从句

1) 形容词、分词 + 原介词宾语从句——形容词、分词 + 表示方面、原因等的状语从句

Are you aware of the difficulty? Are you aware *that there is a difficulty*? (LDCE) 你知道这种困难吗? 你知道有一种困难吗? I'm afraid of fire. I'm afraid (*that*) *the house will catch fire*. 我怕火灾。我怕房子会着火。

2) 及物动词 + 宾语 + 原介词宾语从句——及物动词 + 宾语 + 方面状语从句

Take care of the baby. Take care (*that*) *nothing happens to the baby*. 注意照看孩子。注意让孩子平安无事。

3) 不及物动词 + 原介词宾语从句——不及物动词 + 宾语从句

She complained to me of his rudeness. She complained to me *that he had been rude to her*. (ALD) 她对我诉说他的粗暴。她对我诉说, 他曾很粗暴地对待她。

I wonder at the fact that he wasn't killed. I wonder *that he wasn't killed*. (ib) 我很奇怪, 他没被弄死 (比较that 主语从句与被动的to be wondered at连用: *That the criminal was caught was not to be wondered at*. It was not to be wondered at *that the criminal was caught*. 见LDCE)

I agree (to the plan (对……表示同意) (*that*) *we ought to try again*. We agreed (on the plan (就……取得一致意见)) (*that*) *we should start early*. The entire

family agreed (with each other about the fact) *that by her actions she had seemed to be mothering him.*

(Fast)全家一致认为,从她的所作所为看来,她曾象母亲一样照看着她。

*that*名词从句前原有介词现已不用的上述三种情况中最常见的还是第一种——在形容词、分词后,这就使得名词从句取得了超出名词性质的状语功能,表示形容词、分词所表属性或状态的关系方面或造成原因。

如下列句中的方面状语从句:

We are anxious that everything should go smoothly 我们很关心,希望一切顺利。

The Government was clear that it had the right to legislate for the secession of a territory. 政府方面很清楚,他们有权通过立法把一块领土划分出去。

I'm certain/sure (that) I'll get there in time. 我有把握及时到达那里。(比较可说*It's certain that I ...*不说*It's sure that I...*, 见2.14, 3))

She is confident/convinced that he is honest. 她确信他是诚实的。(此句及下句中可见从句修饰分词)

He is determined that nothing shall prevent him from going. 他已下定决心,什么也不能阻止他前往。

请看下列句中的原因状语从句:

I'm very sorry (that) I was rude to you. 我曾对你无礼,我很抱歉。

I'm so glad (that) you won the prize. 你得奖,我很高兴。

They are proud that they belong to such a fine regiment. 他们为自己属于这样优秀的一团而自豪。

Many of us will be bitterly regretful that we did not economize in the use of these necessities. 我们许多

人将痛切悔恨过去没有节约使用这些必需品。

You should be thankful *that you have escaped with minor injuries.* (ALD) 你受点轻伤就逃了出来, 你应该感到欣慰。

I am flattered *that you wished to see me.* 得知你想见我, 我感到非常高兴。(由此往下三句中从句修饰分词)

She was appalled *that Bess had to do such work.* 贝斯不得不干这种活, 这使她大吃一惊。

Satisfied *that her eldest grandson was present and that the world was still at meridian,* she'd returned to her cooking or prayer. 她看到大孙子在那里, 而且时间还是中午, 就很满意地回屋去做饭, 也许是回去祷告去了。

2.16 *that* 名词从句的语气, 用或不用 *should*

大量 *that* 名词从句中可以使用情态动词(语气动词) *should*, 这一 *should* 本属虚拟语气, 是由情态动词 *shall* (“必须”) 的过去形式构成的。在英语的历史发展中, *should* 先取得了“应该”的语气意义(约897年, 见OED), 后又取得了“竟然”的语气意义(约1330年)。比较下列二句:

We think/believe (*that*) *somebody neutral should take the chair.* 我们认为/相信, 应该由一位中立人士担任会议主席。(这一句中 *should* 不可去掉不用, 如把 *should* 换成别的情态动词 *would/will, might/may* 等或助动词 *is (taking), has (taken)* 等, 意思也会大不一样)

It's impossible that he should be working. 他竟然还在工作, 这是不可能的。(这一句中 *should* 也不可去掉不用, 但使用虚拟语气情态动词的 *should be* 可换成直陈语气助动词 *is*, 句子基本意义不变, 不过...*that he is working* 没有那种虚拟的设想他“竟然在……”的语气意义。)

再比较 *It's not impossible/It's just possible that*

he will/may/would/might be working when you come again. 其中will/may直陈其“将会/可能”，而would/might虚拟其“或许将会/或许可能”。

从条件从句中should与were to的同类用法也可看出二过去形式同表虚拟：If he should/were to ask you, …如果他竟然会向你/如果假设他会向你……（皆不大可能实现的条件）。条件从句中表示可实现的条件现用直陈语气，旧用法用虚拟语气be型（原形动词型）：If music be/is the food of love, play on. 如果音乐是爱情的粮食，那就演奏下去吧！

名词从句中常常使用should be型虚拟语气，should be型虚拟语气有时可以换成be型虚拟语气，有时又不可以。should be型虚拟语气还有时可以、有时不可以换成直陈语气。这三种语气形式的区别是：

直陈语气（按其时态、变位形式变化）——直接陈述现实的情况；

be型虚拟语气（用动词原形）——单纯虚拟意想中未然的情况；

should be型虚拟语气(should + 动词原形)——评论意想中（未然）或感受到（已然）“应该”、“竟会”发生的情况。（参见6.2）

下列1) 中各组例句可用这三种语气形式，而2), 3), 4) 各组例句仅可用其中两种语气形式：

1) 未然：直陈现实、单纯意想、评论“应该”；

主语从句：It is absolutely essential that all the facts are examined first.（把未然情况看作是必然的、既定的现实）It is absolutly essential that all the facts be examined first.（美国英语及英国正式用语说法）It is absolutely essential that all the facts should be examined first.（英国英语一般说法）首先(应)把全部事实查明，这极为重要。It's important that he has/have/should

have all the facts. (EGS) 他要掌握全部事实, 这一点很要紧。

表语从句: *The decision was that he lectures/lecture/should lecture on changing English.* 决定他(应该)讲变化中的英语。

宾语从句: *We propose that somebody neutral take/should take the chair.* 我们提议(应)由一位中立人士担任会议主席。(如用 *shall take...*, “必须由...”)

2) 未然(不能看作是必然, 既定现实的未然情况不用直陈语气表示); 单纯意想、评论“应该”;

主语从句: *It is requested that a vote (should) be taken.* 有人请求表决。 *It was suggested that we (should) divide ourselves into two groups.* (suggest 比 propose 语气弱, 不直接直陈语气从句) 有人建议我们分成两组。

表语从句: *The idea is that the railway (should) be improved first.* 我们的想法是先把铁路改进。

宾语从句: *We requested that he (should) use his influence on our behalf.* 我们请求他运用他的影响, 给我们一些支持。 *I urged that he (should) be a good father.* (GCE) 我极力劝他, 要做一位好父亲。

3) 已然(不用只表示意想中未然情况的虚拟be型); 直陈现实、评论“应该”;

主语从句: *It's a good thing that he recognizes his fault.* *It's a good thing that he should recognize his fault.* (It's a good thing that he recognize his fault. 中用虚拟be型, 为古旧用法, Leech, p.108) 他(应该)认识自己的错误, 这是好事。

宾语从句: *We thought it right that he was/had been punished.* *We thought it right that he should have been punished.*

他(应该)受到惩罚,我们认为这样是对的。

4) 已然(不用只表示意想中未然情况的虚拟be型): 直陈现实、评论“竟然、竟会”:

主语从句: *It's laughable that Septimus is in love.*
It's laughable that Septimus should be in love. 塞普提摩斯(竟然)落入情网,这事真好笑。*It worries me that you are/should be looking so tired.* 你看样子(竟是)这么疲劳,这使我很担心。

表语从句: *What worries me is that men are able/should be able to threaten ordinary peaceful citizens with bombs and bullets.* 使我不安的是,有人(竟)能用炸弹和子弹威胁安安稳稳的平民。*What surprised me was that Al married/should have married her.* 使我惊讶的是,亚尔(竟)和她结了婚(Albert简称Al)

宾语从句: *We regret that you feel/should feel obliged to resign.* 我们感到很遗憾,你(竟然)觉得你必须辞职。

状语从句: *I'm surprised that your wife objects/should object.* (be surprised at something, 本用at...表示原因,但在that名词从句前略去介词,原介词宾语从句成为原因状语从句) 你的妻子(竟然)反对,这使我惊讶。

2.17 引导名词从句的that的“省略”

说引导名词从句的that可以“省略”,并非严格科学的说法。追溯英语的历史发展,现属从句的连词that原属主句一代词, OED论述了that读音弱化转为连词的过程: *He once lived here; we all know that... We all know that/this* (重读): *he once lived here. ... We all know that* (非重读) *he once lived here.*

但表达同样的意思,还有另一种说法——根本不用that:

We all know; he once lived here. ...We all know he once lived here.

两种说法比较起来，用that的说法中，有that指示主、从句间的关系，使从属关系更为明确。讲求明晰的书面语、正式用语或者说“标准”说法（特别在较复杂、较长的句中），就经常使用that来引导名词从句。大家就把只讲求简便、不用that的口语说法，说成是省略了that。

在口语惯用法影响下，至今连书面语中，*would rather*（其中*would*为实意动词，“希望”）等的宾语从句也不用that引导，*wish*的宾语从句一般不用that引导，*hope*的宾语从句也很少用that引导：

I would rather you came tomorrow than today.

(ALD) (从句虚拟语气，过去形式指将来) 我希望你明天、而不是今天来。

I'd sooner we stopped now. (Close) (从句虚拟语气，过去形式指现在) 我宁愿我们现在就停下来。

I wish I were a bird. (LDCE) (从句虚拟语气) 我愿我是一只飞鸟。

I hope (不可用wish) you will work harder. (从句直陈语气) 我希望你多下点功夫。

H. W. Fowler在*A Dictionary of Modern English Usage*中提出，其宾语从句一般不用that的有*believe*, *suppose*等四个动词，一般要用that的有*agree*, *suggest*等十二个动词，可用可不用that的若干。但我们常见不合他“一般”规律的实例：

They believed that he was insane. (ALD) 他们相信他神经错乱了。*All her neighbours supposed that she was a widow. (ib)* 她的邻居们都认为她是个寡妇。

Do you agree this is the best way? (Bolinger) 你同意这是最好的办法吗？*We've all agreed it's unjust.*

(Cronin) 我们都认为这是不公正的。I suggest (that) we should go home. (Swan, 598) 我建议咱们回家。

倒是M. Swan的概括说法比较合适: 常用表述动词 (reporting verbs) say, suggest等(应加上常用认识动词know, think等)的宾语从句可不用that, 而只用于书面语、正式用语的不常用动词(如reply, object等)的宾语从句则要用that引导: He replied that he disagreed. 他答复说他不同意。

1) 复合句中可略	复合句开头或略去主句的从句开头不略
It seemed only natural <u>this should happen.</u> (主语从句)	<u>That this should happen</u> seemed only natural to most of us.
I don't believe <u>he's guilty.</u> (宾语从句)	<u>That he is guilty</u> I feel some difficulty in believing. (Jespersen)
Everyone assumed/could see <u>he was frightened.</u>	<u>That he's afraid,</u> I can't believe.
但 He was really frightened, I believe/think/'m afraid. 并非主从复合句倒装(I believe, I think或I'm afraid为短句形式语气状语, 见9.7)	<u>That George was frightened,</u> I agree. (Close) (强调宾语从句, 倒装) "What did you assume from his attitude?"--" <u>That he was frightened.</u> "
I wish <u>it were so.</u>	(略去主句的宾语从句, 简略回答)
Would/I would it were otherwise. (ALD)	O (How I wish) <u>that he would/could be here!</u>
It's a pity <u>he should vanish from public life.</u>	O <u>that it were so!</u> 但愿那样!
Who would have thought <u>he should betray me!</u> 谁会想到他竟然出卖我!	O <u>that it might be the last!</u> 但愿这是最后一次!
	Alas, <u>that Spring should vanish with the Rose!</u> (Eckersley)
	<u>That he should betray me!</u>
	<u>That it should ever come to this!</u> 事情竟会闹到这个地步!

这里, 我们从三方面归纳一下, 引导名词从句的that可以“略去”不用与不可略去不用的主要规则: 1) 复合句中可略去——复合句开头或略去主句的从句开头不可略, 见上表; 2) 特别是口语简短句中多被略去——书面正式语、特别是较复杂句

中不略,见下; 3) 除某些限制性同位语从句外,引导同位语从句者不可略去,见下。

2) 口语简短句中多略——书面复杂句中不略

简短句中多略去引导名词从句的that:

主语从句: *It occurred to me there was no time to lose.* 我想到,时间刻不容缓。稍长但还简明的从句 (*It Seems like every time I turn around, you're spinning a different story.*)

表语从句: *The truth/trouble is we're short of money.* 真实情况/问题是我们缺钱。逗号后的从句: *The fact/reason was he was laid up with pneumonia.* 事实/原因是他患肺炎,卧床不起了。

宾语从句: *I don't believe/think/suppose he cares.* 我相信/认为/觉得他没把这当一回事。(但 *He doesn't care a bit, I suppose.* 中。I suppose为插入语,全句非复合句) 逗号后的从句: *You don't consider, we have got no answer from our fellow-traveller.* (Jespersen) 你不认为,我们从旅伴口里没有得到任何答案。

原介词宾语从句转成的状语从句: *He feels confident of passing/confident (that) he'll pass the examination.* 他觉得有信心通过这次考试。

较复杂句中不略去引导名词从句的that:

带补语宾语从句: *I consider it common knowledge that they did it.* (Bolinger) 我认为这一点大家都知道,这是他们做的。 *I think it a scandal that there is so much racial prejudice still about.* (Hornby) 我觉得现在各地还有这么大的种族偏见是一种耻辱。 *Susan believes it likely that no one will show up.* 苏珊心想很可能没有一个人会露面的。仅见“it+某些惯用短宾语补语”后略that: *We consider it true the inquiry is now in progress.* 我们认为调查在

进行是真的。I think it a pity *he can't come*. 我觉得他不能来很遗憾。We took it for granted *you would be coming*. (Wood) 我们认为你当然要来。

前带to be 宾语补语从句 (that名词从句仅偶见担任这种宾语补语): I thought his argument to be *that we should pay*. (GCE, p.735) 我想他的说法就是我们应当付钱。

较长从句: We wish *that anyone interested in the opening and seriously intending to compete for it would apply at our central office*. 我们希望, 对此职位空缺感到兴趣而极欲参与争取此职位者, 向我总局提出申请。

前有插入语的从句: It was a good thing, in the circumstances, *that the weather was comparatively mild*. (插入语in the circumstances属主句) 在这种情况下, 天气比较暖和是件好事。We decided *that, in the circumstances, the best thing to do was to wait for help*.

(插入语属从句) 我们决定, 在这种情况下, 最好的办法就是等待援助。

与前并列的第二、三个及以下从句: Three girls repeatedly declared they had never heard of Christ, and two (declared) *that they had never heard of God*. (Jespersen) 三位姑娘反复声称她们从来没听说过基督, 两位姑娘声称她们从未听说过上帝。He said *I'd destroyed his faith in women, you know, and that I'd led him on, and that I was—well, he was very rude indeed*. 他说, 我毁掉了他对女人的信任, 你可知道, 他还说我引诱他, 说我是——唉, 他真是太粗暴了。Everyone could see what was happening and *that he was really scared*. 大家都看到了当时发生的事, 看到他真是吓坏了。

使用that可避免歧义的从句: He told us yesterday *that he had seen a glorious sight*. 昨天他告诉我们, 他看到一个

壮丽的场面。He told us *that yesterday he had seen a glorious sight*. 他告诉我们，他昨天看到一个壮丽的场面。I noticed while she was present *that he would never say a word*. 她在场时，我已注意到他一言不发。I noticed *that while she was present he would never say a word*. 我注意到，当她在场时他就一言不发。

3) 同位语从句较少略that——非限制性同位语从句that不略，it的同位语从句that多不略：

feeling, idea, impression, notion等意念名词及fact一词的同位语从句可略that: He had a feeling (*that*) *he was being got at*. (ODCIE) 他觉得他在挨批评。I had no idea *it was late*. (NDEC) 我一点儿也不知道时间已晚。I got the impression (*that*) *they'd just had an agreement*.

(LDCE) 我觉得他们好象刚达成一项协议。I have a notion *he'll succeed*. (Jespersen) 我觉得他会成功的。The fact remains (*that*) *there is no filling station here*. (EGS) 事实总是事实，这里没有加油站。

转为连词或构成复合连词的seeing (that) (鉴于), provided/on condition(that) (只要), supposing/in case/in the event (that) (如果), for fear (that) (以免) 中that常略去，所引导的是各种状语从句: I'll give it to you *on condition you don't break it*. (LDCE)

非限制性同位语从句不略that: The obvious explanation, *that they had run out of petrol*, had not occurred to him at first. 他起初没想到这明显的原因——他们的汽油用完了。The hard truth/The proven fact, *that Maria was killed in the car accident*, was a great shock to her parents. (两个停顿(逗号)中间的同位语从句对前边名词是修饰而非限定，句中所述truth/fact原已是确定的、已知的) 玛丽亚死于这次车祸，这残酷的事实/这已被证实的情况，对她的

父母是个沉重的打击。

一般限制性同位语从句不略that: They acted on the ground *that severe trouble was to be feared*. 他们是以这样的根据行事的: 严重问题恐怕即将发生。News has reached us/ (A) Rumour is in the air *that he's going to resign*. 传来消息/谣言说他要辞职。

少数惯用“动词(+介词)+it”后, it的同位语从句可略that: Am I to take it *you want to find out all you can?* (Bennett) 我可以认为你想尽量了解一切吗? They saw to it *I was not disturbed while I was working*.

(Schibsbye)他们负责在我工作时让我不受干扰。I'll answer for it *the next shall be as good*. (Jespersen) 我担保, 下一个质量还是这么好。You may depend on it *he will say "Why not?"* (ib) 你可以肯定, 他一定会问“怎么不行呢?” (倒装的*That I shall support you* you may depend. 句中depend后省略了on it)

一般“动词(+介词)+it”后, it的同位语从句不略that: Rumour has it *that he's going to resign*. 谣传他要辞职。Plato has it *that the soul is immortal*. 柏拉图说, 灵魂是不死的。The family will count it against you *that you weren't at the funeral*. 你没有参加葬礼, 全家都将为此对你不满。He owes it to his doctor's care *that he is quite well again*. 他完全康复, 说是多亏医生的照顾。He

laid it down *that no subject had a right to petition the king*. 他规定任何臣民无权向国王请愿。I took his word (for it) *that he would try hard*. 我想他意思说他要努力干。I'm counting on it *that you will come*. 我指望你一定会来。

下列句中所略that引导的不是同位语从句, 也不是任何别种名词从句,

I've/There is no doubt (that) you'll understand.

(*I've no doubt about it.*) (连词引导方面状语从句) 我毫不怀疑/毫无疑问, 你一定会理解的。

She had so many children (that) she didn't know what to do. (结果状语从句) 她孩子太多了, 都不知怎么办好了。

They hurried so (that) they wouldn't miss the train. (结果/目的状语从句) 他们快走了(好)不会误车。比较: *They hurried (so) that they might not miss...* (只表目的)

It's high time (that) we went. (关系代词引导定语从句) 咱们真该走了。*That was the day (that/on which)/the place (that/at which)/the way (that/in which)/the reason (that/why) I tried out the new car.* (GCE) 那就是我试验新车的那一天/地方/方法/原因。

下列句中, *that* 引导的也不是名词从句(见第四章, 第五章有关各节):

What have I done that he should cut me? (OED) (推论状语从句) 我怎么了, 他为什么要和我绝交?

I played all the principal parts myself— (it was) not that I was a finer actor than the other boys (that I did so), but that I owned the establishment. (分裂句强调的部分, 在此为原因从句) 所有剧目的主角都是我演的——这并不是因为我比别的孩子演技都好, 而是因为我是戏院的主人。

第三章 定语从句的选用或者不用 关系代词、关系副词的规律

3.1 非限制性定语从句之所以不用that引导

由指示代词演化为连词的that引导名词从句和状语从句时，本身作为虚词，不担任从句的句子成分：

This shut off all hope that they would be reconciled. (同位语从句) 这断绝了促使他们和解的一切希望。

Thus they gave their patient high hopes of cure that he willingly underwent the painful operation. (结果状语从句) 于是就这样，他们使病人满怀希望把病治好，病人自愿接受了那痛苦的手术。

再比较下列四句中的...fact that...:

It was an amazing fact that she used to be a pickpocket. (It为虚词、引导词，引出主语从句) 她一直是个扒手，这真是惊人的事。

It/This was such an amazing fact that everyone was struck dumb. (It, 实词, 主句主语; that引导结果状语从句, 该that可换作and或逗号) 这件事是如此惊人，大家都惊得目瞪口呆。

She wanted to conceal the fact that she used to be a pickpocket. (引导同位语从句的that也因并非句子成分，可换作一个冒号: ...conceal the fact; she used to be...) 她想隐瞒自己是个扒手的实情 (她想隐瞒实情: 自己是个扒手,)

He unearthed an amazing fact that/which threw

much light upon the problem. (that或which为定语从句中的主语) 他揭露了一件惊人的事实, 这一事实使大家对问题的了解清楚多了。

引导定语从句的that, who, which等有先行词, 不同于引导名词性关系从句的连接代词what(ever), whoever, whichever, 这些连接代词在从句虽也担任名词性成分, 却没有先行词:

Say *what(ever) you will.* 你想说什么就说什么吧!

Whichever (of you) comes in first will receive a prize. (不说*which comes in first will...*) (你们) 谁先进来, 谁就得奖。

Whoever does handsomely is handsome. (岩波) (说得漂亮没有用处,) 办得漂亮才算漂亮。(改用定语从句可说: *He who does handsomely is handsome.*)

使用没有先行词的关系代词that, which属于一种古旧用法, 仅残存于谚语、仿古说法中:

Handsome is that handsome does. (谚语)

Be killed or kill; choose *which you will.* (Butler)
不是被人杀掉就要杀人, 随你挑一样。

that的多种功能表现在国外语法家编造的两个古怪句子中:

I said that that "*that*" that that man wrote in the sentence was wrong. (H. E. Palmer, 五个that依次为连词、指示代词、所引原文中该词、关系代词、指示代词) 我说, 那个人在那句里所用的那个that是用错了。

My Lords! with humble submission, that *that I say is this; that that that that gentleman has advanced, is not that, that he should have proved to your Lordships.* (Addison) (三个that引导的定语从句各限定其前指示代词that, 句中另有一连词that) 各位大人, 请容我敬进一言, 我要说的是: 那位先生所提出来的, 并非他本应向各位大人证明之

事。

实际语言中，两个that连用倒是较常见的：Anything *that that lady does* looks pretty. (第一个that为关系代词，作从句宾语可略) 那位女士不论做什么都很好看。Sing us a song, *that that was sung by you and your daughter, when I last passed*. (第二个that为关系代词，作从句主语不可略) 给我们唱个歌吧，就唱上次我经过时你和你女儿唱的那个歌。

代替“指示代词that + 关系代词that”，更常用的是the one *that/which*，或者*that which*；...the one *that was sung*...
...*that which was sung*...

关系代词that与关系代词which的根本区别是：that是最早的关系代词，因而口语中一直更为常用，既可指物又可指人；而which较晚转作关系代词，多用于书面语、较正式说法，专用来指事物，另用关系代词who指人，以相区别。

在限制性定语从句中that与which各有专用、但不可互换的情况不多，大多数情况下可以通用，可随各人愿用口语或书面语体而任选其一。因而据统计，爱用口语体写诗的桂冠诗人Tennyson一段诗歌中关系代词that与which之比是48:7；而偏爱正式文体的史学家Macaulay一段文字中关系代词that与which之比却是1:51。

正因为which, who 等是讲究“明确”的书面语惯用的关系代词，非限制性定语从句（仅书面常用的附加修饰句，才只用which, who等引导，而不用that引导。讲求简便的口语中对无须限定的词、句，一般不附加累赘的修饰语句。需要时，口语中会另起一句联系于前句某名词或整个前句。比较下列书面语、口语说法：

Thank you for your letter, in answer to *which* I sent you the following telegram. — Thank you for your letter. I sent you the following telegram in

answer to it. (Close)

He said he had lost the book, *which* was untrue.
—He said he had lost the book, but *this* was untrue.

She borrowed a history book. (句号后亦可另起一非限制性定语“从句”) *Which* suggests that her teacher was having some influence on her. —She borrowed a history book. (And) *That* suggests... (*that*为指示代词) 她借了本历史书, 这表明她的老师对她已有所影响。

He admires Mrs Brown, *which* I find strange/*which* (或*as*) is natural. —He admires Mrs Brown, *and this* I find strange/*and this* is natural. 他很欣赏布朗夫人, 我觉得这很奇怪/这是很自然的。

不过, 非限制性定语从句不用*that*引导, 并非全都遵从的规律, 爱用*that*的Tennyson就以其引导非限制性定语从句: *Is it kind to have made me a grave so rough? Me, that was never a quiet sleeper?* 给我造这样粗陋的坟能说是尽了心? 给我, 我这人睡觉从来睡得沉!

3.2 关系代词*that*, *which*, *as*的不同用法

在前节末尾一组例句中有 He admires Mrs Brown, *which* (或*as*) is natural. 一句。其中的*as*可以说由连词转作了关系代词 (详见3.3)。对关系代词*that*, *which*与*as*的区别, 可按其修饰或限定的词、句, 分三种情况加以讨论: 1) 在限制性定语从句中限定主句一名词时; 2) 在非限制性定语从句中修饰主句一名词或形容词时; 3) 在非限制性定语从句中修饰主句一部分或主句全句时。

1) 限定主句一名词 (或代词) 时:

that, which 可作限制性定语从句的主语、宾语、介词宾语——指事物

He likes to say things that/which sound big.

(主语) 他爱说大话。

That's just the thing (that/which) we want. (宾语) 这正是我们所需要的东西。

that 与 which 作介词宾语用法不同 (见 3.6)

that 可作限制性定语从句的表语 (which 一般不用于此) 指事物或指人:

Michael will fall, like the dog (that) he is. (Hope) 迈克尔将象一只狗那样死于沟壑, 他就是那样一只狗。

Nothing about her to betray the woman that he had long since known her to be. (从句复合宾语中的表语) 她身上没有任何东西能使人认出, 她就是他认识已久的那个女人。

(与度量副词 as, so, 确定代词 such, 形容词 same 连用) 关系代词 as 可作限制性定语从句的主语、表语、宾语、介词宾语——指事物或指人:

You may take such things as could be loaded on your waggon. (主语) 你车上能装的都可以弄走。

She has as many things to attend to as any of you (have). (宾语) 和你们当中任何一个一样, 她有好多事要照管。

This is the same thing as we are in need of. (介词宾语) 这正是我们所需要的那种东西。

TV today is not the same thing as it was ten years ago. (表语) 今天的电视已不是十年前那个样子了。

She fought like a brave woman as/that she was. (表语; 也常与 like 连用) 她英勇战斗, 表明她确实是个勇敢的女性。

So much of the sky as could be seen between the buildings was serene. (主语) 楼房之间可以看到的部分天空是晴朗的。

关系代词 as 指人时同样可以作以上右边所列各种名词性成分:

Neither did I know any artist so nice and exact as would undertake to make me another. (主语) 我也不认识任何一位能再给我画一幅画像的好心而技艺精湛的画家。

Such women as knew Tom thought he was charming. (ALD) (主语) 认识汤姆的女人都觉得他很招人喜欢。

Such women as Tom knew thought he was charming. (ib) (宾语) 汤姆认识的女人都觉得他很招人喜欢。

He would perhaps after tonight never be the same

man *as* he was before. (表语)今夜过后,他可能再也不是以前那样一个人了。

He will marry *as* pretty a girl *as* he can find. (宾语)他将尽可能找个美貌的姑娘,和她结婚。

...child *as* beautiful *as* ever clung around a mother's neck, or *as* a father fondly gazed upon with pride. (最后一个*as*为介词宾语)在所有紧搂着母亲的肩头的孩子中,在所有让父亲骄傲地含情凝望着的孩子中,最俊美的一个……

2) 修饰主句中一个名词、形容词或分词时:

*which*可作非限制性定语从句名词性成分,指事物;特别是作表语,可指事物,亦可指人(*that*一般不用于非限制性定语从句)

The book, *which* (主语) was on the table by the way/*which* (宾语) I bought secondhand, is a valuable one. 那书很有价值,顺便说那书当时就在桌上/那是我买的一本旧书。

The tomboy in her, *which* was big, seemed loth to be put away for ever in skirts. (*which*为从句主语,指人的性质、种类)看来她心灵中那种顽皮男孩子的性格,使她不愿穿上裙子,永远受其拘束——那顽皮男孩性格还很强烈。

She treated him like a tame cat, *which* is what he was. (表语)她待他象只温顺的猫,那时他就是这样一只猫。

He is a gentleman, *which* his brother is not. (表语)他称得上绅士,他弟弟却说不上是绅士。

This amount, above *which* I can't go, is my last offer. (介词宾语)这个数是我最后一次出的最高价钱了。

He was not sick, *which/as* some

非限制性定语从句中,关系代词*as*修饰主句一名词、形容词或分词时,主要作非限制性定语从句表语指事物或指人

He seemed a foreigner, *as/which* in fact he was. 他看来是外国人,实际真是外国人。(He was an Englishman, *as* they perceived by his accent. 句中*as*为从句宾语,但所修饰的不是主句一名词,而是整个主句,指主句所述情况)

He is a brave man, *as* are all of his house. (Hope) 他是个勇士,他们家所有的人都是勇士。

Spiders are not insects, *as* many people think (they are/them to be). (*as*为从句表语或宾语补语即复合宾语中的表语)蜘蛛不属昆虫类,很多人以为它们是昆虫。

Police officers — *as* we took them to be — came along. (*as*为宾语补语、复合宾语中的表语)警官——我们以为他们是警官——过来了。

He is unusually tall, *as* are

表续

<p>of the other passengers were. (表语; <u>which</u> 修饰形容词 sick) 他并没有象某些其他乘客那样呕吐。</p>	<p>his brothers. (as 修饰形容词) 他象他的哥哥们一样, 身量也特别高。</p>
<p>He is very particular about wording, <u>which</u> I am not. (which 指 particular...; 从句否定前述, 不宜用 as) 他很爱挑字眼, 我却不是这样。</p>	<p>He thinks her answer incorrect, <u>as/which</u> it probably is. (as/which 代表 incorrect) 他认为她的答案不对, 很可能真是不对。</p>
<p>She was fond of her boy, <u>which</u> Theobald never was. (which 代表 fond...) 她很喜欢她的小儿子, 西奥保尔德却从不喜欢。</p>	<p>He seemed very much astonished at it, <u>as indeed</u> he was. (代主分词) 看样子他为此大吃一惊, 实际真是这样。</p>

主句中一个名词还可用“which + 名词”来代表, 该 which 在非限制性定语从句中为定语:

It stormed all day, during which time the ship broke up. 暴风雨整天没停, 这期间船破裂了。

They were on holiday from Lancashire, to which county he belonged. 他们是从兰开夏来这里度假的, 而他就是兰开夏郡的人。

3) 修饰主句一部分或整个主句时

<p><u>which</u> 代表主句一部分或其全句时, 多作非限制性定语从句的主语、宾语 (that 一般不用于非限制性定语从句); <u>which</u> 所引导该从句一般在主句后</p>	<p>除在表示“惯常”、“已知”等的某些惯用简短从句中作从句主语外, 关系代词 <u>as</u> 多为非限制性定语从句的宾语、表语或被动句主语; <u>as</u> 所引导该从句可在主句前、后或中间</p>
<p>He married her, <u>which/as</u> was natural. (as was/is natural, 惯用短句) He married her, <u>which</u> was disgraceful. (不说 as was disgraceful) (which, 主语) 他娶了她, 这很自然/很不光彩。</p>	<p>To shut your eyes to facts, <u>as</u> many of you do, <u>is</u> foolish. (as 从句宾语, 修饰主句中不定式短语 To shut...) 闭着眼不看事实, 你们好多人都是这样, 这很愚蠢。</p>
<p>He arrived late, <u>which/as</u> was usual with him. He arrived late, <u>which</u> was unusual. (不说 as was unusual) 他来晚了, 这是常事/这很异乎</p>	<p>He seemed a foreigner, <u>as</u> they perceived by his accent. (宾语) 他看来是个外国人, 他们从他的口音中注意到这一点。</p>

续表

平常。

The woman told her that her husband would be a stranger from Caernarvonshire, which, in fact, came to pass. (which, 主语, 代表主句中的宾语从句) 那女人对她说, 她的丈夫将是来自卡纳芬郡的一个原先素不相识之人, 实际上, 这样的事真的发生了。

He saw the girl, which delighted him. (主语) (不说 as delighted him) 他见到了这个姑娘, 使他很高兴。 which (这事) …, 从句情况不必与主句相合, 时间不限; 而 as (正象) …, 从句情况要与主句相合, 在先或同时发生。

He saw the girl, which/as he hoped. (宾语) 他见到了这个姑娘, 这是他所希望的。

David writes novels, which/as you know. (宾语) (比较 As you know, David writes novels.) 大卫写小说, 这你是知道的。

I asked him to show me the new equipment, which he did. (宾语, which 指不定式短语 to show …) 我请他让我看看新设备, 他让我看了。

You can stay and dance at your own coming-of-age. Which you can't at your wedding. (Schibsbye) (Which 可另起一句, 该 which 可说是 can't do 的宾语, 或说其代表不定式 stay and dance, 上句谓语的一部分) 满二十一岁成年之夜, 你可以很晚不睡、跳舞庆贺, 但你举行婚礼时不可以这样。

下列二句中 which 从句置主句前, which 指其后整个主句所述情况, 这是语序变异用法, 较少见:

Moreover which/what you may

As he hoped, he saw the girl. (宾语) 正如他所希望的那样, 他见到了这个姑娘。

The helicopter needs no airport, as is the case with other aircraft. (表语) 直升飞机不象其他飞机都样, 它不需要飞机场。(as 代表主句(上文)一部分; needs airport, 不包括否定代词 no)

He must be an African, as may be seen from the color of his skin. (被动句主语) 他一定是个非洲人, 这一点可以从他皮肤的颜色上看得出来。

He is a teacher, as, became clear from his manner. (LDCE) (主语) 他是位教师, 从他的举止中这一点表现得很显然。

She did not, as her friend had feared, open the case. (宾语), as 指主句(下文)一部分; open …, 不包括否定副词 not 等) 她的朋友担心她会打开盒子, 她却没有打开。

Why had not she gone to her own room, as she felt to be the safest? (带补语宾语, as 指主句(上文)一部分; had gone to …, 不包括否定副词 not) 她觉得回到自己的房间去最安全, 却为什么没有回去呢?

Sophia was not unconscious, as could be judged from hereyes. (被动句主语; 句中的 as 还可指整个主句, 包括 not) 索菲雅并不是没有意识到, 从她的目光中可以判明这一点。

as 从句如不是如前所示在表否定的主句中间或主句后, 而在表否定的主句前时, 该 as 指整个主句, 包括其否定意义;

续表

<p>hardly believe, the examiners had decided in advance to fail half the candidates! (ALD) (which 为宾语) 而且, 这你可能难以相信, 主持考试的人们先已决定半数应试者不能及格!</p> <p>He also decided, which was more to his purpose, that Eleanor did not care a straw for him. (which 主语, 指其后 that 名词从句, 该 that 从句实为 which 从句所修饰的主句) 他肯定, 艾莉诺对他毫不在意, 这更合乎他的愿望。</p>	<p>Alas! <u>as</u> the philosophers often affirm, there is no nook under heaven in which trouble cannot enter. (as 为宾语) 啊! 正如哲学家们所常断言的那样, 普天之下没有一个角落, 苦恼不会渗入的。</p> <p><u>As</u> has been said before, grammar is not a set of dead rules. (as 为被动句主语) 如前所述, 语法并非一套死板的规则。</p> <p><u>As</u> is very natural, man cannot live without air. 没有空气, 人就不能生活, 这是很自然的。(as 作主动句主语(非限制性定语从句中) 限于惯用简短从句, 见 3.3)</p>
--	---

整个主句或其一部分还可由“which + 名词”来修饰, 该 **which** 在非限制性定语从句中为定语:

I said nothing, *which fact* made him angry. 我什么话也没说, 这种情况使他生气。

It was necessary that he should go; for *which purpose* he decided to pass the night on the premises. (which purpose 修饰主句中的 he should go) 他必须去, 为此他决定在这个房子里过夜。

3.3 as 由连词转作关系代词

在 He is as diligent a man as ever lived. 句中后一个 **as** 可以说是关系代词, 它相当从句中 ever lived 的主语, 全句意思相当 He is one of the most diligent men *that* ever lived. (井上)

但从根本上说, 该句应为下面一句的省略: He is as diligent a man as anyone that ever lived (is diligent). 在这没有省略的句中, 后一个 **as** 显然是连词 (非句子成分)。比

较另一句中后一个as亦为连词：He is as diligent a man as any of you (are diligent). (前一个as为度量副词，功能与so相仿)

在He is reading the same book as she is. 句中，as原亦为连词，说它是关系代词也可以，因它可看作是is (reading) 的宾语，全句结构同于：He is reading the same book that she is reading. 只是，前者the same...as指“同种的”或“同名的(书等)”，而后者the same...that指“同一个”或“同一本(书等)”。后者即one and the same...that之意。

He was a Catholic, as were most of his friends.

(Swan) 可译作“正如他的大多数朋友一样，他也是个天主教徒。” I am no orator, as Brutus is. (Shakespeare) 可译作“我根本不是象勃鲁塔斯那样的雄辩家。” 以上二句中的as也可以说是关系代词，作定语从句中的表语，但多译作“正如(象)……那样”，就因为它原为连词——Swan(73条)就仍然认为二句中as为连词，所引导从句表示“比较”(一般所说比较状语从句)。

David works hard, as do my brothers. (LDCE) 该词典讲句中as为代词，即关系代词，所任成分应为定语从句动词do的宾语，do就应是及物动词。而结构相同的He believed, as did all his family... 句中的as, Swan (73条)仍认为是连词，did就是不及物动词。另一相仿句中as只能是连词：He ran away from home, as his brother had (run away) the year before. (ib) (不能说as是had的宾语) 象一年前他的哥哥离家出走一样，他也离家出走了。

如上节所述，As he hoped, he saw the girl. 句中可以说关系代词as是hoped的宾语，但在把原被省略的成分加进去后，又可看出as本来是连词：(Just) as he hoped he would (see the girl), he saw the girl. (GCE) 正如他所希望

的那样，他真的见到了这个姑娘。

因此我们说：由于as从句中与主句词语重复的部分经常省略，当略去名词性成分时，往往使as处于名词性成分的地位，从而使它取得关系代词的功能——既联系于主句词语，又作为从句主语、表语、宾语、介词宾语等成分。as转作关系代词的这种讲法，可以更简便的概括惯于有所省略的大量as从句几种句型的用法。

因不必与主句的一部或全句重复，as从句中的表语、宾语、介词宾语较常省略，而更为关键的从句主语则较少省略（除与so, such, same等连用时as从句主语亦常略去外），故as指主句一部分或全句而代替从句主语的情况就比较少见。下列惯用简短从句实为古英语无人称动词句的残余（参见前节3.2, 3有关例句）：

as (is/was) usual (with somebody)

as is/was natural/clear

as is/was often/always the case

as often happens/happened

as is well known

as is/was expected/required

as has been said before/pointed out

as will be shown in...（被动形式的不同短句还较常见）

原无人称动词句本无主语，因而至今as后不可加it，也不可把单数第三人称动词改为复数形式：

She put her long and elegant hands on his shoulders, as was her wont each evening, and kissed him on both cheeks in her French fashion.（《英语写作》，p.216）这是她每晚的习惯，她总是把修长秀美的双手放在他两肩上，再按她们法国人的方式，吻他的左右两颊。

There were not so many casualties as was (不用 were) feared. (Wood) 伤亡人数不是象原来担心的那么多。

Objections were raised by a number of Opposition members, *as was* (不用 *were*) to be expected. (ib) 正如应该预料的那样, 反对派一些成员提出了不同意见。

as follows, *as regards* 与 *as seems best* 都是连词 *as* 引导古无人称 (方式/方面) 状语从句的遗迹, 中间都不能插入 *it*:

The chief points are *as follows*. (Wood) 诸要点如下。

I don't believe you *as regards* that. (岩波) 关于那件事, 我不能相信你的话。

As regards wheat, prices are rising. (ib) 至于小麦, 价格看涨。

I shall act *as seems best*. (ALD) 我看情况尽量办好。

无人称动词句表示客观情况, 没有主语, 却可把有关该情况之人以人称代词宾格形式连用于动词, 如古英语留下的 *methinks*, *meseems* (参见 *Onions*, p.125; 现代德语、俄语等有同种说法):

Methinks (*It seems to me*) (*that*) I have heard them echo back. (岩波) 我觉得好象听到这些声音有回声传来。

此外, 补上重要的一点: *as* 象 *that* 一样, 可指主句中一个表时间、处所或方式的名词, 以其为先行词, 而在定语从句中担任时间/处所/方式状语 (不再是名词性成分)。不同于 *that* 的只是该 *as* 仅用在 “*so/such/same* + 此类先行词” 之后。有些语法书说这里的 *as* 为关系副词, 我们认为不必再给它另一关系副词之名, 关系代词 *that* 有相同的功能, 一般不说 *that* 还是个关系副词:

He went away/baek the same way (*as*) he came/had come. (*as* 为从句状语) 他从他来的原路走了。

I went out the same way (as/that) I'd got in.
(Swan) (as为状语, in为副词, 修饰got) 我从我进来的原路出去了。(比较We drove out of the town by the same road as we had entered by. (ALD) 句中as为介词by的宾语, 可见应为名词性成分的关系代词as作状语也因略去了介词)

Shall we meet at the same place as/that we last met? (以上三句中as为处所状语) 咱们还在上次见面的老地方见面好吗?

Our eggs are sold the same day as/that they come in. (as为时间状语) 我们的鸡蛋进货当天就卖出去。

We will support the struggle of the colonial peoples until such time as they win their complete independence. (as为时间状语) 我们要支持各殖民地人民的斗争, 直到他们取得完全独立的时候。

She dances in so graceful a manner as her sister does. (as为方式状语) 她跳舞跳得象她姐姐一样好。

Old people do not feel the same about these things as the younger generation (does/feels). (as为方式状语) 对于这些事, 老年人的想法和年轻的一代不同。

I shall not be surprised if he does this the same way as I do. (as, 方式状语) 如果他办这件事和我的做法一样, 我是不会感到奇怪的。

He answered with the same absolute simplicity as he was questioned. (Jespersen; as, 方式状语) 他的回答也象对方的问题那样极其简单。

注意: 主句中the same way前多略介词, 而在in the same manner, with the same simplicity等则要使用介词。

3.4 but由介词转作关系代词

but 在古英语时期就是连词(“但是”)兼介词(“除了

……”)。后来在“否定句+but+代词……”的句型中,代词被略去, but就成了具有“否定之否定”意义的关系代词:

There is no rule *but it/that* has exceptions.——
There is no rule *but* has exceptions. (= There is no rule *that* does not have exceptions.) 没有无例外之规则,所有的规则都有例外情况。

There is nothing else about me *but what* is intolerable. (Jespersen)——There is nothing about me *but* is intolerable. (= There is nothing about me *that* is not intolerable.) 我周围没有一事物不是不可容忍的(一切都不可容忍)。

I see around me none *but* are shipwrecked too.
(= …none *except those who* are shipwrecked too.) 我看见自己周围也都是乘船遇难的人们。

Not a tree, not a bush, scarce a wild flower in their path, *but* revived in Rosamund some recollection.
(*but*为从句主语)在他们走过的小路上,没有一棵树、没有一处树丛,几乎没有一朵野花不引起罗萨蒙某些回忆。

There's not a pond within five miles of the place *but* they can tell the taste of. (*but*为介词of的宾语)所有离这个地方五英里范围内的池塘水是什么味道的,他们无不清楚。

Few of the men who were there *but* judged me a happy man. (There were few of the men…主句有省略;属否定意义)那里几乎没有人不认为我是个幸福的人。

关系代词*but*也用于疑问句:

Who (is there) *but* knows it? (= Who is there that doesn't know it?) 谁不知道这事呢?(谁都知道啊!)

3.5 一般要用who/whom/whose的情况

限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句形式可能相似，而意义大不相同：

There were very few passengers *who/that* escaped without serious injury. 没受重伤的乘客寥寥无几。

There were very few passengers, *who* escaped without serious injury. 乘客本来很少，他们都侥幸没有受重伤。

He had four sons *who/that* became lawyers. (And two *who/that* became clergymen.) 他有四个当律师的儿子。(还有两个当牧师的儿子。)

He had four sons, *who* became lawyers. 他有四个儿子，都当了律师。

在限制性定语从句中，指人关系代词要按所任从句成分，分别使用*who/whom/whose*或*that*等。

主语——一般用*who*，在非正式语而且不大注意礼貌、尊重或文雅时，可用*that*；但当该关系代词不是指特定的个别人、人们，而是指人的性质、种类时，要用*which*(较正式)或*that*(非正式语、口语)：

He had gone over to meet a friend *who* was staying there. 他到那边去会见一位当时住在那里的朋友。

Any other woman would have done something—all except myself *who* am not a woman, but a peevish, ill-tempered, dried-up old maid. (*myself who am...*从句谓语动词按先行词的数、人称变位)任何别的女人都会有些办法的——只是除我在外，我算不上是个女人，而是一个暴躁、易怒的、干瘪的老处女。

There is the driver *who/that* overtook us five

minutes ago. 五分钟以前超我们的车的那个司机就在那里。

The country village and the urban housing estate both needed the very best men *which/that* can be found for them. (Schibsbye) (指性质、类属) 农村与城市住宅区都需要我们为之寻求可能找到的最优秀的人才。

表语——限制性定语从句中，作表语的关系代词不仅指事物用 *which/that*，而且指人也用 *which/that*，不用 *who*。表示性质、类属时，可按正式或非正式语体用 *which* 或 *that*；指特定的个别人时要用 *that*，或“省略”、不用关系代词：

Shaw is commonly regarded as a Funny Man than as the revolutionary *which/that*, at bottom, he is. (Schibsbye) (指 *the revolutionary*，类属) 一般都把萧看作滑稽人，不看作革命者，而骨子里他却是个革命者。

He would have revealed himself as the man (*that*) he really was. (Jespersen) (指 *the man*，特定个人) 他本来会透露出来，他实际是谁的。

宾语——限制性定语从句中，作宾语的指人关系代词，在正式语要用 *whom*，不予省略；在非正式语用 *who* 或 *that*，或“省略”不用关系代词：

Where is the man *whom/ (who)/ (that)* I saw this morning? (Close) 我今天早晨看见的那人现在在哪儿？

The man *whom* we feared we had injured proved to be unharmed. 我们害怕我们碰伤了的那个人结果是没碰着。(比较: The man *who* we thought was guilty proved to be innocent. = The man *who* was guilty, we thought, proved to be innocent. 我们以为有罪的那人结果证明是无辜的。)

介词宾语——限制性定语从句中，作介词宾语的指人关系代词用 *whom* 或下列代用形式：

正式语： 从句前置介词 + *whom*

较正式: *whom*…后置介词

非正式语: (*who*)…后置介词

非正式、口语: (*that*)…后置介词

Do you know the boy *to whom* your daughter writes? Do you know the boy *whom/ (who)/ (that)* your daughter writes *to*? (CGE) 你认识你的女儿常给他写信的那个男孩子吗?

Swan提出 I think you should stay faithful to the person *whom* you're married *to*. (525) 一句是错误的, 应说 I think you should stay faithful to the person (*who/that*) you're married *to*. 或…*to the person to whom* you are married. 但更多例证说明“*whom*…后置介词”是可用的:

The boy *whom/ (who)/(that)* the dog ran *towards* ... (GCE)

Is that the man *whom/ (who)/(that)* you gave your tickets *to*? (Close) The boys *whom/ (that)* I went to school *with* have all grown up. (EGS) He is one person *whom* I would never confide *in*. (Schidsbye) 他是我根本不会信任的一个人。

只是这种说法既不是真正正式用语, 又不是最常用的非正式语、口语的说法。

所属关系定语——限制性定语从句中, 表示所属关系的定语, 指属于人时用 *whose*; 指属于事物时用 *of which*。但 *of which* 用起来常觉不简便, 于是指属于事物的所属关系也常用 *whose* 表示 (在非限制性定语从句中也是这样):

He mentioned a book the title *of which* has slipped my memory. He mentioned a book *whose* title has slipped my memory. (Close) 他提到一本书, 书名我现已忘记。

He stood looking through some trees the shadows of whose trunks were spilled out along the ground.

(不说the shadows of the trunks of which)他站在那里从树木中间望去，那些树干的影子洒落在地上。

The blend of liberal and national idealism is now reaching the shores of Africa and Asia in tidal waves, whose speed and intensity are making nonsense of slower, more considered policies. (非限制性定语从句)
这种自由主义理想与民族主义理想的混合思想，现已随着大海的浪潮传到亚、非海岸，这浪潮的速度与力量使各种动作迟慢、审慎从事的政策都失去了意义。

另外，英语惯于把某些名词看作既可属于“指人”，又可属于“指事物”的名词，如表示国家、民族的名词、指婴幼儿的名词、指家禽或者家畜的名词，以及船只的名称等。定语从句以这些名词为先行词时，关系代词就既可以用 who 等，又可以用 which。

国家、民族: Japan, who but yesterday emerged from the medieval rule, is today showing what wisdom she has acquired. 日本，她昨天刚刚从中世纪的封建统治下解脱出来，今天已在显示她所取得的智慧。
Italy, which entered the war in May, 1915, attacked Austria from the south. 一九一五年五月参战的意大利从南边攻打奥地利。
Britain also gave enormous sums to her allies who were struggling against Napoleon. 英国也向其正同拿破仑作斗争的盟国提供了大量资助。
We are happy to receive him not merely because he represents an ally to which we are bound by warm friendship and respect. 我们很高兴接待他，不仅因为他代表着一个与我们有热诚友好关系、并为我们所尊敬的盟国。

婴幼儿: Any boy who wants to can learn to swim.

(boy指稍大儿童) 任何想学游泳的男孩子都能学会。Livia had just been delivered of twin boys; of *which*, by the way, Sejanus seems to have been the father. (指婴儿) 莉维雅刚生了一对孪生男孩, 说起来, 色占纳好象是孩子的父亲。

家禽、家畜等: Leautaud had a cat of his own *whom/which* both he and Blanche doted on. 柳陶自己有一只猫, 他和勃兰奇都很喜爱这只猫。They must be swallows *who* have come back from the south. (RHD) 那一定是从南方回来的燕子吧!

船只等: "Yankee" has won four matches over "Rainbow", *who* has not won any races. "扬基号" 胜过 "彩虹号", 四次比赛获胜, "彩虹号" 一次也没获胜。London heard the enemy destroying the fine ships *which* Charles II had laid up. 在伦敦, 人们听到敌人在炸毁查理二世停泊在那里的精良的船只。

3.6 一般只用*which*的情况

在非限制性定语从句中, 指事物关系代词一般只用 *which*。非限制性定语从句前有停顿, 书面上有逗号或分号 (偶见句号)。但并非所有前有停顿 (逗号等) 的定语从句都属非限制性, 下列二句中定语从句是限制性的 (可从意义上看出), 前有逗号为的是把插入语隔开:

A civilization, today common to the whole world, *that* allows such crime to proceed unchecked deserves to perish, and inevitably will. 一种对这样的罪行不予制止、任其泛滥的社会——这样的社会今天在全世界还很普遍——是应该灭亡, 也必定要灭亡的。

It was just the sort of place, he reflected whimsically, *which* his aunt had loved to write about

in her books. 他很古怪地回想起来：这正是他的姑姑爱在书里描写的那种地方。

但也偶见有人非限制性定语从句前使用关系代词*that*: I looked at Mary's sad face, (a face) *that* I had once so passionately loved. (CGEL)我望着玛丽忧伤的面貌，这面貌我一度那样地热爱过。

不过，在属于非限制性定语从句的“*that I know*”之类惯用短句中又只能用*that*:

I never was hand and glove with him, *that* I remember. 在我的记忆中，我从来没和他有什么勾搭。

He took a book sometimes, but never read it *that* I saw. (*that*前可无停顿，书面上可无逗号)他有时拿着一本书，可是就我所看到的，那书他却从来没读过。

He had no particular liking, *that* I could discover, for anything. 就我所见，他没有特殊爱好，什么都不大喜爱。My father has not, *that* I can think of, left his fellow. 按我的想法，我父亲并没有离开他的伙伴。

*which*所引导的非限制性定语从句，也有时插在主句中间，甚至置于主语前（连词等后），指后边主句的一部分或整个主句：

He hung around for hours and, *which* was worse, kept me from doing my work. 他在我这里闲呆了几个小时，更糟糕的是，他让我无法工作。

I'm interested in wine. And——*which* is the point——I know that the wine is always there. 我对酒很感兴趣。而关键问题是：我知道这酒总是有的是。

Change of meaning may also be effected, by means of figurative language, or, *which* is a similar process, the use of a concrete term for an abstract conception. 也可以用比喻语言这一方法促使意义上发生变

化，或用（这是一种相似的方法）以具体词语表达抽象概念的方法。

Primarily, *which* is very notable and curious, I observe that men of business rarely know the meaning of the word "rich". 首先，我看到，商人们很少有人懂得“富裕”这个字眼的意义，这很明显又奇怪。

*which*在非限制性定语从句中除可作主语、表语、宾语、介词宾语外，还可以作定语：

She spoke in French, *which language* I did not understand. 她说法语，这种语言我是不懂的。Possibly they're all lying, in *which case* it's hopeless and we might as well give up. 可能他们都在说谎，那样的话，就没有希望了，我们还是放弃原来的打算吧！

非限制性定语从句，指人关系代词一般用*who*，但当所指不是具体的人，而是人的性质或类属时，则要用*which*（在限制性定语从句中指人的性质，类属时用*which/that*，见本节后面及下节）：They made him king, *which* he had long wanted to be. 他们推举他为国王，他早有为王的愿望。John is a soldier, *which* I should also like to be. (RHD) 约翰是个军人，我也想当军人。

在限制性定语从句中，*which*多可与*that*交替使用，仅作介词宾语时，*which*可带前位介词或后位介词，而*that*不可带前位介词、只能跟有后位介词。比较*which*任各种成分的情况：

<i>which</i> 指事物	<i>which</i> 指人（性质、类属）
Marks were discovered near the bedroom window <u>which</u> the constable insisted had been made by a dog. (从句主语 <i>which</i> 修饰marks) 卧室窗户旁边发现有些痕迹，警察坚持说这些痕迹是一只狗留下来的。	All his conversation was a dialogue with himself or <u>that</u> little doppelgänger <u>which</u> stood invisibly to one side of the people. (主语) 他的谈话全是自言自语，或者是在同那看不见的、站在人们

续表

We begin to take note of whims, fancies, peculiarities on the part of the essayist which light up the prim, impeccable countenance of the moralist. (主语, 隔人指事物) 我们开始注意这位杂文作家的奇思、想象与特色, 就是这些把那道家一本正经、无懈可击的面貌表现得十分鲜明。

There is one point that I would like to make which will interest the House. (that... which 连用) 有一个论点我愿提出, 这一论点会使议院感到兴趣的。

If we stand firm, his threats will be seen as the empty words which they really are. (表语) 如果我们坚定不移, 他的恫吓就会被看破, 他的恫吓本来就是一套空话。

The House of Lords falls short of that perfection which abstract political theory would require. (宾语, 用 which 避免 that 的重复) 上议院不是象抽象政治理论所要求的那样完美无瑕。

A report of which half/half of which was false deceived them. (介词宾语, 不说 of that) 一个半属虚假的报告欺骗了他们。

There are few things of which man stands in more fear than the absence of noise. (介词宾语, of which 在此句中为状语, 与在上句中为定语不同) 有绝大多数情况下, 无声的东西比有声的更使人害怕, 有声更可怕者无儿。

一边的、他自己的小小出窍魂灵交谈。

John is not the scholar which/that James is. (表语) 詹姆士是位学者, 约翰可不是那种人物。

He had no relation with his home, not this man which he now was. (表语) 他同他的家没有关系, 这时他就是这样一种人, 这种人是不要家的。

I was surprised to find Tom a different man from the one which/that I used to know. (宾语) 我很惊讶发现汤姆不是我原来熟知的那种人了。

He is exactly the man which such an education was likely to form. (宾语) 他正是这样的教育会培养出来的那种人。

The more sophisticated steelworkers—of which port Talbot has many delightful samples—suggest that the company's decision is an overture to the Common Market battle. (介词宾语) 要用技术更高超的炼钢工——这样的工人朴塔堡有很多可喜的代表——这说明公司的决定是共同市场贸易战的序曲。

which还可兼用于指人、指事物两种先行词: the persons and events which we have to deal with (RHD, that 条) 我们必须对付的人和事

8.7 一般只用或多用that的情况

that是历史最久、使用最广的关系代词，特别是在口语和非正式语中。在限制性定语从句中，除以若干代词限定的名词为先行词时多用**that**为关系代词（见下节）外，先就关系代词担任从句各种成分而论，有很多情况一般只用或多用**that**（指人或指事物的表语、指时间/处所/方式/原因的状语一般只用**that**，指人或指事物的宾语及跟后位介词的介词宾语一般多用**that**）。即使关系代词作从句主语时，也有些情况无论指人或指事物都只用或多用**that**。现按**that**所任成分分述如下。

1) 主语——作从句主语的**that**，当说话人选用较温文有礼或较为正式的语体时，多可换作**who/which**，但在指人的性质、类属时，一般不用**who**，而只用**that**（即使正式语中，用**which**作指人的类属的主语者也很少见）：

The soldiers *that* captured the post subsequently withdrew. (GCE, p.870) 攻占了那个堡垒的士兵们随即撤退了。

They give prizes to the boys *that* have the best manners. (井上) 他们给最有礼貌的孩子发奖品。

谚语、格言讲的是普遍道理，因而其中定语从句指人主语是指一类人，而不是特定的个别人，原只用关系代词**that**，仅后来有较少谚语、格言中定语从句指人主语用**who**：

He *that* respects not is not respected. 不知敬人的，人也不敬他。He *that* goes a-borrowing goes a-sorrowing. 常借帐，常心慌。He *that* mischief hatches, mischief catches. 害人先害己。He *that* will not when he may, when he will he shall have nay. 可要他不要，要时捞不到。He is lifeless *that* is faultless. 只要活着，总有过错。He needs a long spoon *that* sups with the devil. 跟魔鬼一起喝汤，得使一把长汤匙。（和坏人打交道必须提高警惕）。He was

a bold man *that* first ate an oyster. 头一个吃牡蛎的真是位大胆之人。

He laughs best *that/who* laughs last. 笑在最后的人，笑得才最开心。She is always married too soon *who* gets a bad husband, and she is never married too late *who* gets a good one. (Defoe) 碰上一个坏丈夫，总是出嫁太早；能得一位好丈夫，出嫁总不算迟。

在以be（表示“存在”）为谓语的“*that be/is*”或“*(that) there is*”之类定语从句中，从句主语只能用*that*，不用*who/which*；

The decisions are in the hands of the powers *that* be. (RHD) 决定权在掌权的当局手中。

Mrs Dombey *that is to be*, will be very sensible of your attention. (Dickens) 对于你的注意，这位未来的唐贝夫人将是很敏感的。

Right now is wrong, and wrong *that* was is right. (Jespersen) 过去是正确的，但现在是错误的，而过去是错误的，但现在是正确的。

She was away back in the life *that* had been. (RHD) 她完全沉浸在对过去生活的回忆中。

I asked for the best book (*that*) there was on the subject. (Eckersley) 我提出要看一切有关这一问题的最优秀著作。

He took all (*that*) there was. (ALD) 所有的他都拿走了。

That's all there is to it. (《现代》) 如此而已。

My children have had every complaint there is to be had. (后二句从句前“略去”*that*，实属未用关联词) 我的孩子们抱怨这、抱怨那，所有可抱怨的都提到了。

当关系代词*that*为从句主语而从句为*there be*“存在句”

时，**that**无论在什么语体，通常都“略去”不用；而当先行词为主句主语而主句为**there be**“存在句”时，关系代词**that/who**在口语中常“略去”不用（见下节表2）各例）。

另外，当主句中已有**who/what/which**时（不管主句为疑问句或陈述句），限制性定语从句一般只用**that**引导，以避免**WH-**语音的重复，该**that**多为从句主语，也可为从句宾语等成分：

Who that had been there for but a few hours could ever forget?在那里即使只呆了几个小时，谁会忘记那情景呢？

Who was the man (that) called a moment ago?刚才来访的那个男人是谁？

What man is there that has not some things in life to complain of?什么人生活里没有一些可抱怨的事呢？

Which is the car that overtook us?哪辆是曾超车越过我们的小汽车？

He wouldn't say who or what it was that bothered him.他不肯说明，是谁或是什么事在烦扰着他。

I told him who it was that they had helped to rescue. (**that**, 从句宾语) 我告诉他了，他们帮助援救的是什么人。

2) 表语——作限制性定语从句表语的关系代词一般只用**that**（指人也不用**who**，用**which**仅限正式语指人或事物的性质、类属）。**that**担任定语从句表语，不仅能指人或事物的性质、类属，而且可以指特定的个别人或个别事物：

He was at heart still the peasant that his forebears had been.他的内心里仍然象他的祖先一样，是农民气质。

Even the Queen is not the central figure that she once was.甚至女王也不是从前那样的中心人物了。

If he is the murderer (that) I think him (to be), we have done no more than is just. (**that**为定语从句的

宾语补语，即复合宾语中him的表语；此句中that指特定的人）我认为他就是那个凶手，如果他是凶手，那么我们所做的全都是正当的。

My calculator is not the machine *that* it was.
我的计算机已不是它原来那个样子了。

“名词、形容词+that（从句表语）引导的定语从句”可以表示感叹，还可以表示评论、原因或“让步（“虽然……”）”意义：

Beast *that* I was, to trust him! 我真是混蛋，竟相信他！
O miserable, unhappy *that* I am! 啊，我是多么凄惨，多么不幸！
You recovered the estate easily enough then, robber and rascal *that* you are. 那么你轻而易举地弄回了这份产业，你真是个强盗，是个无赖！

But Philemon, *simple and kind-hearted old man that he was*, had not many secrets.（评论或原因）但是，费列芒，他真是个单纯而好心的老人，并没有多少秘密。

Child *that/as he was*, he knew what was the right thing to do.（让步）他虽然是个孩子，却也知道怎么办才对。
Naked *that/as I was*, I braved the storm.（GCE；表示让步更常用as或though）我虽然没穿衣服，也冒着暴风雨跑去。

3) 宾语——作限制性定语从句宾语的关系代词，不但指人或事物的类属时多用that（比用which普遍），而且指特定的人或事物也多用that，这就避免了过分正式的whom（which也较正式）和不属宾格的who：

I am not the sort of man *that* women love.（类属）
我不是女人们喜爱的那种男人。

Then the nurse, an awkward, plain girl *that* nobody helped, tumbled out by herself. 然后那保姆，一个动作蠢笨、不太漂亮的姑娘，没有人搀扶她，自己滚落出来。

He has little talent for pictorial description; the ladies *that* he loves, are, visually speaking, almost interchangeable. 他没有什么形象化描绘的才能; 他所爱的那些女人, 从外貌上说来, 几乎都可以互相替换。

4) 介词宾语——作非限制性定语从句介词宾语的关系代词多用*that* (或“略去”不用), 后跟后位介词; 这样可以避免不那么简便的“介词+*which*”, 可以避免选择过分正式的*whom*或不属宾格的*who*:

the table *that* the boy crawled under (那孩子往那下边爬的那张桌子) the boy *that* the dog ran towards (狗向他跑去的那个男孩子)

They are the boys (*that*) I went to school with. 他们就是我跟着一起上学去的孩子们。

This is the house (*that*) he stood in front of. (GCE) 这就是他曾在那前面站着的那所房子。

但*besides*, *during*, *in spite of*等不能后置(参见3.10, 1)表后说明): *That* was the meeting *during* which I kept falling asleep. 不能改为*That* was the meeting *that* I kept falling asleep *during*. (就是在那次会议上, 我总是打瞌睡。)

尤其是当关系代词兼指人与事物两种先行词时, 更多使用*that* (作从句各种名词性成分):

I made notes of the people and places *that* excited my interest. (主语) 我把引起我兴趣的人和地方记了下来。

3.8 先行词为某些代词、形容词限定的名词时

当先行词为“某些代词、形容词等+名词”或为名词性代词、所表示的是特定、定量、全部或无有的人或事物时, 限制性定语从句关系代词(指人或事物)一般多用*that*, 指人也可以用

who。主句以There is/Here is/That is/It is等引导先行词时，关系代词亦多用that，可用who，但一般“省略”（实际上是本来不用）。

1) 先行词指唯一、特定的人或事物——由形容词、序数词、代词the only, the very, the first, the last, the next, the same, the best (形容词最高级) 及such, this等限定的名词。

Adrian the Fourth is the only Englishman *that* has become Pope. 亚德里安四世是唯一当了教皇的英国人。

I was the only child of my parents *who* have survived. 我是我父母所生的唯一活下来的孩子。

The very people *that/who* used to love her hate her now. 就是过去喜欢她的人们，现在也都恨她了。

Which was the first/next/fastest steamship *that* crossed the Atlantic? 横渡大西洋的第一只/下一只/当时最快的汽船是哪只船?

Teachers are the last persons on earth *that/who* can believe all men are born equal. 教师们是世界上最不会相信“人人生来皆平等”的人了。

I attend the same school *that/as* he does. 我和他在一个学校上学。

It's the best film *that* has ever been on the subject of madness. 这是已有的疯人题材影片中最好的一部。

He's the greatest man *that/who* has ever lived. 他是有史以来最伟大的人物。

Such loud and lamentable cries were heard as we walked along the streets, *that* would pierce the very heart to think of. 我们走在街上时可以听到那样凄惨的高声呼喊，那喊叫声只要想起来就使人寒心。

On which side had he cast the weight of his opinion—this man *that/whom* she had never seen? 他那颇有

分量的意见是赞助了哪一边呢——她从没见过的这个人？

They asked themselves in whispers what man this was *that* came among them with so sad an expression. 他们悄悄地互相询问：跟他们一起来的这满面愁容的人是谁？

This *that* Knox did for his Nation, we may really call a resurrection as from death. 诺克斯为自己的国家所作的这一贡献，我们真可以说它使国家起死回生了。

2) 先行词指某一情况下的全部人或事物——以代词“all, any, every, whatever, whichever (+ 名词)”或 any-, every-复合代词为先行词：

All *that/who* had resented his superciliousness were triumphant because his pride had had a fall. 所有对他的傲慢感到不满的人都兴高采烈，因为他的傲气有些消退了。

They had swept the country of all *that* could be collected *which* was esteemed fit for their master's table. (避免重复，后用 *which*) 他们在全国把所有被认为适于摆上主人餐桌而能搜罗到的东西都给搜刮净尽了。

Anyone *that* knows anything knows this. 任何人懂得一点道理的都懂得这一点。Have you got anything *that* belongs to me? 你那儿有我的什么东西吗？

I owe more undiluted happiness to him than to any man *that* ever lived. 为了我所得到的纯真美好的幸福，我感谢他胜过感谢任何人。

Whatever I had within me *that* was romantic and dreamy was encouraged. (Jespersen) 我心中任何浪漫的、虚幻的想法都得到他的鼓舞。Take whichever book *that* you like. 你喜欢哪本书，就拿哪本书。

In that far-off time superstition clung easily round every person or thing *that* was all unwonted. 在那久远的时代，迷信思想很容易随着十分异常的人或事物而产生。

People asked him to fix everything *that* needed repairing. 所有需要修理的东西，大家都让他修。

Your profession frightens every woman *that/who* is not a fury. 任何妇女只要不是泼妇，都会被你的职业吓坏的。

“those (+ 名词)”也可以说指某一情况下的全部人或事物，它所接定语从句一般也不用which作关系代词：

Those *who* think must govern those *that* toil. 劳心者治人，劳力者治于人。The Wood Gods are rather horrible to those *who* molest them—horrible perhaps to those *that* believe in them. (Schibsbye) 这些林间的神仙对于骚扰他们的人们是很可怕的——或许对相信这些神仙的人才是可怕的。

Life is full of perils, but the wise man ignores those *that* are inevitable. (are依those为复数) 人生充满危险，但对不可避免之事，聪明人并不在意。

3) 先行词指定量的人或事物——以指量代词“many, much, few, little (+ 名词)”为先行词：

Many *that* heard him on Sunday at Lincoln's inn went to St Lawrence Jewry on the following Tuesday in the hope of hearing the same sermon over again.

(Schibsbye) 星期日在林肯客店听过他讲道的许多人，在星期二来到圣劳伦斯犹太居民区，希望把这次讲道再听一遍。

His writings contain little *that* is new and startling, and much *that* is old and even trite. 他的作品中新颖、奇异的东西很少，陈旧甚至陈腐的东西太多。

All the few friends *that* I have here have been very kind to me. (What few friends I have here...) 我在这里的不太多的朋友对我都非常照顾。

4) 先行词指无有的人或事物——以否定代词no one, none, nothing为先行词，或以no等所限定的名词为先行词：

There is no one *that* I know of, who deserves to love you. 我所知道的没有一个人配得上爱你。

No heart is pure *that* is not passionate. 没有热情的心灵都不是纯洁的。

There is not one *who* knew him, I believe, *that* will not give cheerfully. 我相信原来认识他的人将没有一个不是乐意捐助的。

Nothing should be done in a hurry *that* can be done slowly. 任何可以从容做好的事情都不应该匆忙从事。

In fact there was *nothing which* really mattered *that* Jack could not do. (*which*可与*that*轮换使用) 事实上, 任何真正重要的事, 没有一件是杰克办不到的。

顺便提及, 如先行词为“*some (+ 名词) / something*”(并非强调特定、定量、全部、无有、不属以上1) — 4) 条), 则关系代词用*that*或*which*都很常见:

Some (universities) which were originally private are now partly or wholly supported by the municipalities. 有些(大学)原属私立, 现也部分或全部由各地市政当局资助。

something which/that made an impression on them (RHD) 某些给他们较深印象的东西

Death control is not *something which* can be provided by a few technicians. 使公众却病延年并非少数专业人员能够办到的事。

There's *something* about him, every now and then, *which* shows me he's got pluck somewhere in him. 在他身上有某种表现, 常常显示出来, 使我看到他心胸里还是什么别的地方蕴藏着勇气。

5) 在主句中, 以*There/Here is*等引导先行词, 指“有着、存在”某种人或事物, 或以*That/It is*等引导先行词, 表示

“那是”某种人或事物时——先行词为主句There/Here is…(存在句)的主语时,关系代词多用that,可用who,口语中常“略去”(比较:从句为存在句时,关系代词为从句主语,只用that,口语或书面语一般都“略去”不用,见上节3.7, 1)后面)。先行词为主句That/It is…的表语时,关系代词也多用that,可用who,口语中亦常“省略”不用:

There's something (*that*) keeps upsetting him.

There is somebody (*who*) wants you on the telephone. (ALD) 有人打电话找你。

Here is a man (*who/that*) wants to see you. 有人要见你。

Here's an old gouty chair of my grandfather's (*that*) will answer the purpose. 有一把我祖父的、又旧又破的椅子可以干这个用。

There was never any army (*that*) had their men stand in better battle-array. 从来没有一支军队,士兵的战斗队形站得这么好的。

There are very surprising things happen in this world. (Fielding) 这个世界上常有非常惊人的事情发生。(未用*that*)

下列That/This/It is等引导先行词的句子,有些属于分裂句(cleft sentences,即特殊强调结构),如关系代词为从句主语,把That/This/It is和关系代词一起略去,句子仍属完整,而且意义不变;但也有些不属于分裂句,试作上述省略时,句子就不完整,意义就会变动:

Was it/*that* someone (*that/who*) brought you a note? (分裂句,相当于Someone brought you a note?) 是有人给你带个条子来了吗?

This is the man (*that/who*) has written the article himself. (不同于The man has written the article

himself.)就是这个人他自己写的这篇文章。

It's this sort of book *that* is banned here. (分裂句, 相当于This sort of book is banned here.) 就是这种书, 在这里是禁书。

It's the sort of book *that* people hide. (LDCE)(不能简略地说The sort of book people hide. 或People hide the sort of book.) 这是人们总要藏起来的那种书。

It's a thing (*that*) happens once in a blue moon. 这种事是百年不遇的。

That's a thing (*that*) might happen to anyone. 这种事可能发生在任何人身上。

That's all (*that*) is the matter with me. (Jespersen) 对我来说, 有问题的就是这些。

3.9 time when 与time that的不同用途

疑问副词when, where, why还可用作关系副词引导定语从句, 从句的先行词分别为表示时间的名词(time, day等)、表示处所的名词(place等)、表示原因的名词(reason)。关系副词担任从句中的时间状语、处所状语、原因状语:

It happened the day *when/that* I was born. 这事就发生在我出生的那天。

That's the place *where/that* I tried out the new car. 这就是我试验那辆新车的地方。

This is the reason *why/(that)* he came. 这就是他到这里来的原因。

在某些情况下, 关系副词when, where, why可换作关系代词that。我们说that在此仍为关系代词是因为与that连用的介词被省略了: ...the day *that* I was born (on). ...the place *that* I tried out the new car (at). ...the reason *that* he came (for). 比较: the day on *which* I was

born. ...the place at which I tried out the new car.
...the reason for which he came (很少用)。

但在很多情况下，那三个关系副词不可换作关系代词that。让我们先以time when与time that等为代表，研究一下关系副词when与相应的that（从句状语）的不同用途：

关系副词 when 所限定的 time 等（带定冠词或不定冠词或为无冠词复数）先行词为句子重点——先行词多为主语、表语、宾语；指的是听话人未知的新信息或说话人欲其注意的中心事物

The time when such things could happen is gone. (主语) 会发生那种事的时代已经过去了。

There was a time when man never cooked his food. 过去有个时期，人类一直不会弄熟食吃。There are times when joking is not permissible. 有些时候，是不容许开玩笑的。

I decided that this was a moment when no stranger should intrude. (表语) 我决定，这样的时刻，任何外人不得干预。

It was one of those cold, wet evenings when most people stay indoors. (ALD) 那是一个寒冷、下着雨的晚上，那样的晚上大多数人都呆在家里。

It's a sort of day when we'd like to stay in bed. (LDCE) 那种天气，我们喜欢躺着不起床。

There are cases when politeness cuts deeper than impertinence. (主语) 有些情况，彬彬有礼比粗鲁傲慢能更深地刺伤人心。

I'm looking forward to the day when I retire. (短语动词

关系代词that所限定的the time等（带定冠词）先行词并非句子重点——先行词多为介词宾语或略去介词形成的状语；定语从句及先行词所指是听话人已知的、确定的时间

By the time (that) I arrived they had already left. (介词宾语) (By the time that... 近似于连词引导状语从句; They had already left before I arrived.) 我来到时，他们已经走了。

The moment (that) I saw you coming I came out to meet you. (状语) (比较可用复合连词引导的状语从句; As soon as I saw you coming ...) 我一见你来了，立刻就出来迎接你。

I had given it to her the same night (that) she talked so foolishly. (状语) 她说那样的傻话的当天夜晚，我就把那东西给她了。

Take your coat in case it rains. (=lest it rains. LDCE)

Take your dancing shoes in case you decide to go dancing.

(=because you might decide..., ib)(二句中 case 不带定冠词及 that, in case 转为复合连词) 拿着外衣以防下雨。拿着舞鞋，也许你到时候想去跳舞。

On the day that I retire I

续表

<p>look forward to 的宾语),我在盼望着我退休的那一天。</p> <p>Do you remember the day when you knocked a policeman's helmet off? (Erades)</p> <p>(宾语)你还记得你把一个警察的头盔打落在地的那一天吗?</p>	<p>shall receive a cheque for a thousand pounds. (介词宾语)在我退休的那天,我将得到一张一千镑的支票。</p> <p>It happened the day that you knocked that policeman's helmet off. (状语)事情就发生在你把那个警察头盔打掉的那天。</p>
---	--

Then *the day* came when I had to leave. 句中, *the day* 为主语, *when* 不可换为 *that*。而 *He died on the day when/that his son arrived*。句中, *the day* 为介词宾语; 用 *when* 时, 强调 *the day when his son arrived*, 可回答 *On which day?* 的问题; 而用 *that* 时可能不是强调 *the day that...*, 而是强调 *died*, 回答 *What happened to him on the day that his son arrived?* 的问题。

但当“*day/time*等 + *that*”中的先行词 *day* 或 *time* 等担任主句表语或宾语时, 该定语从句与所限定先行词可为句子重点:

That was the day that he left (on). (GCE) 那就是他走的那一天。

Can you tell me the exact time (that) the exhibition opens? 你能告诉我展览会开幕的确切时间吗?

特别是当 *time* 不带冠词、作表语时, 在 *It's time that...* 中表明听话人不明其属性 (该干什么了) 的时机, 该定语从句与先行词为句子重点:

It's time that you should once more enjoy life. 现在你应该再度享受生活的乐趣了。

Is it not high time that this question should be gone into? 难道现在不急需对这一问题进行研究吗?

作表语的 *about time* (该 *time* 本身为介词宾语) 同样可为句子重点: *It is about time (that) the thing should be*

done. 事情差不多该办了。It's about time (that) she found out what that reason is. (RHD) 大概她该了解一下那是什
么原因了。

询问方式的疑问副词how不能用作关系副词引导定语从句，
来限定way, manner等名词。这些表方式名词后要接用that(多
略去)或in which(用于正式说法)引导的定语从句：

This is the way (that) /in which he did it. (或者说
This is how he did it. 用连接副词how引导名词性关系从
句) 这件事，他就是以这种方式办的。

She spell the words in the very same manner
that/as they are pronounced in the local dialect. 这些
词，她的拼写方式和当地方言的发音一样。If only he had
seen the matter in the same light that I did! 要是他看
这个问题要是用和我同样的眼光那就好了!

3.10 关系代词的“省略”

正象宾语从句等名词从句可以不用连词that引导而直接连于
主句一样，定语从句本来就有不用关系代词that等引导而直接连
于主句的，在讲求简洁的口语中尤为常见，特别是当主、从句相
接而主句中的先行词兼作从句的表语、宾语、介词宾语、状语等
情况下，

She is not the cheerful woman she used to be. (the
cheerful woman属于主句，作为先行词兼任从句表语，如其后
用that引导从句，that即从句表语) 她现在不是过去那样一个总
是高高兴兴的女人了。

有些语法著作把直接连于主句的定语从句叫做触合从句
(contact clauses)。一般语法书把不用关系代词说成是“省
略”关系代词——这么讲也可以，只是应该弄清，这种“省略”
并不是较晚才有的次要表现法。古时英语口语中，定语从句常随
便连于主句，不用关系代词，

Was never widow had so dear a loss. (Shakespeare)
 (= There was never a widow who had such a dear loss.) 从来没有一个寡妇经受过这样重大的损失。(先行词兼从句主语)

以下二表归纳关系代词“省略”不用各种情况。第一表中，先行词兼任从句表语、宾语、介词宾语、状语（一般可不用关系代词）；第二表中，先行词兼任从句主语（几种情况下可不用关系代词）。

1) 先行词兼（或者说所缺关系代词如果补上应为）从句几种非主语成分：

表语	You said he was <u>everything</u> a man should be. 你说他是个尽善尽美的男人。She was twice <u>the man</u> her son was. 她一个人顶她的儿子两个人干活。
宾语	I feel as though I were beginning to be able to use <u>that power</u> (I feel) I've got inside me. 我觉得好象我已经能运用（自己感到）业已拥有的威力。（that power 兼任插入句 I feel 后定语从句 I've got...的宾语） 先行词相当插入句宾语者：Grace would look up <u>things</u> she thought would take his interest. 葛丽思常常搜寻她认为会使他感兴趣的東西。 <u>Many of those qualities</u> we think are typical of Americans in general were the result of this frontier life. 我们认为一般美国人特有的那些品质中，有多种品质正是这种拓边生活的产物。
介词宾语	I've marked on the orders <u>the time</u> they should hand them in by. 我在命令上标明了他们送还命令的最后期限。The robber found himself in exactly <u>the same position</u> he had formerly forced me into. 那狗强盗发觉自己正好陷入了他原来迫使我陷入的处境。
状语	<u>The first time</u> we went away he was somewhere between a kitten and a cat. 我们第一次走的时候，它还是个半大不大的小猫。That's <u>one reason</u> he likes to come. 这是他喜欢来的原因之一。I certainly do admire <u>the way</u> you managed to see both sides of the question. 我确实赞赏你能看到问题两方面的那种思想方法。

介词（包括复合介词）指具体关系时多置后位，短语动词所含介词虽指抽象关系亦常置后位，从句前关系代词可略：

He protects his head with *something (that)* neolithic man was probably *without*, namely, an old bowler hat. 他戴着新石器时代人类大概没有的一种东西，即一旧圆顶礼帽，来保护脑瓜。The conversation had been carried on chiefly in French, *a language (that)* Mr Stewart was perfectly *acquainted with*. 谈话主要是用法语进行的，这语言斯图阿特先生十分熟悉。I'm not *the sort of fellow* a young girl falls in love *with*. 我不是年轻姑娘会爱上的那种人。

This is *the garden* he stood in front of/he used to take care of. 这就是他曾在那前边站着的那个花园/他过去一直照管的那个花园。He had a trick of declaring that he never heard of *things (that)* everybody else was well *aware of*. 他会玩那种把戏：别人都一清二楚的事，他声称他从来没听说过。

而介词（特别是前加其他词语的介词）指抽象关系时不可置于后位，关系代词用 *which/whom*：

Jane was a woman *with whom* age did not count. 珍妮是那么一种女人，在她们来说年龄都不算数。There are only four people of *which* (指量) I am one. (Schibsbye, p.299) 只有四个人，我是其中之一。It's full of opinions *not one of which* they even understand. (Wilde) 里边满是种种意见，他们连一条也不懂。His bright dark eyes proclaimed him a personality *compared with whom* all the other men around the table were conventional dummies. 他那双明亮的黑眼睛显示着他是个突出人物，与他相比，饭桌周围所有的男人都不过是因袭陈规的笨蛋而已。

某些由形容词、副词、分词转来的介词一般不后置，如 *oppo-*

site, round, outside, beyond, besides, during, considering, concerning等。因后置可能误解它们仍用作形容词、副词、分词, 弄不清句中词语关系: He turned to the door *outside which* the two servants were hovering. (不说...the door (which/that) the two servants were hovering outside.) 他转向那个有那两名仆人等在外边的房门。

由连词转作介词的than不能后置: You know the state of my mind *than which* nothing is more fixed on this earth. 你知道我的心情, 世界上没有任何东西比我的决心更坚定的了。

2) 先行词兼从句主语 (或者说所缺关系代词如果补上应为从句主语) (参见3.7, 1) 后一部分):

<p>主句为存在句 There/Here is ...等, 或为 That/It is...等, Who/What is...等 (口语中常不用关系代词)</p>	<p><u>There is no one</u> enjoys good food more than he does. 没有人比他更酷爱美味佳肴的了。</p> <p><u>Here's Mr Maldon</u> begs the favour of a word. 马尔顿先生请您和他谈谈。</p> <p><u>Who was that</u> (that) called a few minutes ago? 刚才来访的那个人是谁?</p> <p>But <u>what's it</u> makes the poor old thing so excited? 是什么让这可怜的老头这么激动呢?</p>
<p>从句为存在句 ...(that) there is等 (在口语、书面语一般都不用关系代词)</p>	<p><u>Lohmann is the most naturally gifted all-round cricketer</u> there has ever been. 娄曼是前所未有的、最有天赋的全能板球运动员。</p> <p>His father wanted to solve all the <u>problems there were in the world</u>. 他父亲想把世间一切问题, 无论有多少, 全都解决干净。</p>

另外, 在非正式说法中, 有时见到如下把关系代词略去不用的情况 (用时为从句主语):

Anybody does that ought to be locked up. (比较:

Whoever does that ought...) 这不管是谁干的, 都应当把他押起来。

Any man (that) can't fight for his country had better be dead. 任何一个男人如不能为祖国而战不如死掉。

The hinge is loose and the first wind (that) comes along will blow the whole door off. 折页活动了, 只要一刮风就会把整个门扇刮下来。*You are the first ever asked who he was.* 你是第一个问他是谁的人。

He is the bravest man (that/that has) ever breathed. 他是空前的勇士。

Ryder's is the last name (that) would have occurred to me. (Schibsbye) 我当时想到别的什么名字也不会想到赖德的名字的。(以上六句属3.8, 1) 所述, 先行词指唯一的、特定的人或事物。)

最后, 应该提到节奏在“省略”中的关系。为了使语音总是轻重相间、整齐动听, 在两个重读音节间(如先行词与从句名词间), 轻读的*that*就要使用, 不应略去; 而在重读音节与轻读音节间(如先行词与从句人称代词间), 轻读的*that*就不必要, 可以略去。比较:

It's the address that Jackson sent the letter to.

(重读五音节: -dress, Jack-, sent, let-, to) 那是杰克逊把信发往那里的地址。

It's the address he sent the letter to. (重读四音节) 那是他把信发往那里的地址。

使语句轻重相间的方法, 也适用于决定名词从句前连词*that*的使用或“省略”:

It's true that Rogers lived to be almost a centenarian. 罗杰斯活到几乎是百岁老翁了, 这是确实的。

It's true he didn't mention his age. 确实他没提他的年龄。

第四章 分裂句

4.1 分裂句所含定语从句的先行词是It

为了强调句中一部分——一个句子成分，可把该句分成两部分：把要强调的句子成分夹在It is/was...that/who...中间，而该句其他部分留到后面。这种强调句型在语法上称为分裂句(cleft sentence)。例如The conditions made them. 一句可以“分裂”为以下两个强调句(It为关系代词的先行词)：

It was not *they* who made the conditions, it was *the conditions* that made them. (Galsworthy) (前一分句强调原宾语，后一分句强调原主语) 并非他们创造了时势，而是时势产生了他们。

定语从句与先行词被隔开的现象，不仅见于分裂句，例如下列三句中定语从句的先行词是句首的He:

He is very empty that is full of himself. (He that is full of himself is very empty.) 自以为了不起的，其实很空虚。

He jests at scars that never felt a wound. (先行词不是scars) (谚语) 没受过伤的人总爱嘲弄伤疤。

He must have iron nails that scratches a bear. (先行词不会是nails) (谚语) 谁要把狗熊抓挠几下子，他的指甲得象铁耙子一般。要干危险事，装备必齐全。

下面取分裂句形式的两句谚语中，先行词显然是句首的It:

It's the early bird that catches the worm. 抓到虫子的是早起的鸟(捷足先登)。(并非“那是抓虫的早起的鸟”。)

It's not the beard that makes the philosopher. 有胡

须不一定是哲学家。(并非“那不是造成哲学家的胡须。”)

有些谚语以特殊反衬一般，真意是排除特殊，概括一般，例如以下各句，其所含定语从句的先行词也是it:

It's an ill bird that fouls its own nest. 鸟不糟踏自己的窠，人不玷污自己的家。家丑不可外扬。

It's a good horse that never stumbles. (The best horse will sometimes stumble.) 马有失蹄，人有失误。

It's a long lane that has no turning. 道路总有拐弯处，恶运会有转变时。

It's a small flock that hasn't a black sheep. (There is a black sheep in every flock.) 马多总有害群之马，人多总会出个败类。

正因为分裂句所含定语从句的先行词是It，该从句谓语动词应该用单数第三人称形式:

'Tisn't I that wants to spoil your home. (Galsworthy) 要毁坏你的家的并不是我。*It's me that has to give it up.* (Jespersen) 不得不把它放弃的是我。*It is myself who is writing at last.* (ib) 我终于能亲自写信了。

Is it you that's going to be married or is it Edith? (ib) 将要结婚的是你、还是伊迪丝呢？*It wasn't you who was going to marry Philip.* (Shaw) 要和菲利普结婚的并不是你啊！

只是人们常受意念的影响，让定语从句的谓语动词用了与It相联系的人称代词那种数和人称形式。本应说*It's I* (口语*me*) *who's to blame.* 也常说*It's I/me who am to blame.*

(GCE) 都怪我。*It is you that/who is/are guilty.* 有罪的是你。*But it is the cheers of the spectators that has/have often decided the result of the match.* (此从句谓语动词可受*cheers*的影响取复数形式) 但常常是观众高喊“加油”的欢呼声决定着比赛的结果。

4.2 分裂句与一般含定语从句复合句的不同

分裂句与一般含定语从句的复合句之不同，主要在于：分裂句中所含定语从句的先行词是隔在句首的It，而一般含定语从句的复合句中先行词都是紧挨或接近从句。因而，分裂句中靠着从句的地方就不是从句直接限定的词语，而是所强调的原句名词性成分或状语，也可以是一个专有名词；而在一般含定语从句的复合句，由于专有名词指独有事物无须限定，专有名词就不会作为限制性定语从句的先行词出现在紧靠或靠近该从句的地方，专有名词只能作为非限制性定语从句的先行词，由其加以修饰（进一步说明）。比较：

It's Chelsea (that) he lives in. (分裂句) 他住在柴尔西。

Then we took the paved road to Zeugma, 120 miles away; from which it is another 2000 miles to the frontier.
(非限制性定语从句) 然后我们沿马路来到一百二十英里远的左格玛，从那里到边境还有二百英里。

It was Taylor who/that met Roberts. (EGS) 是泰勒遇见了罗伯茨。It was Roberts (that)/(whom) Taylor met.
(ib)(二句分裂句) 泰勒遇见的是罗伯茨。

His place is among the last Victorian sages, like G. Eliot and M. Arnold, to whom he owed and acknowledged much. (非限制性定语从句) 他跻于维多利亚女王时代最后一辈哲人——如艾略特、阿诺尔德——之列，对此二人，他说颇受其助益而深表感激。

以表示时间、处所、方式的名词为先行词的定语从句，可以用关系副词when, where, why引导；而分裂句所含定语从句的先行词总是语义笼统的名词性代词It，即使分裂句强调原句时间、处所、方式状语，一般还是用that引导从句，不用when, where, why (参见4.4)；

It was 1945. Yes, that was the year when I first met James. (定语从句) 那年是一九四五。是啊, 那就是我最初见到詹姆斯的那一年。

It was in 1945 that I first met James. (分裂句) 我最初见到詹姆斯, (那) 是在一九四五年。

That is the bank where (in which) they met. (或 *That's the bank they met in.*) (定语从句) 那个就是他们在那里会面的那家银行。

It was in the bank that they met. (分裂句) 他们会面是在那家银行里。

That was the reason why he had filed his protest. (定语从句) 这就是他提出抗议的原因。

It was for this reason that he had filed his protest. (分裂句) 他提出抗议就为的是这个原故。

有的语法书讲:一般定语从句中作主语的关系代词that/who不可省略, 而分裂句中作所含从句的主语的that/who可以省略。实际上, 一般定语从句如其主句以It/That is开头者, 作从句主语的that/who同样可以省略(参见3.8, 5); 3.10, 2));

It/That's a thing (that) might happen to anyone. (一般定语从句) 那是一种任何人都会碰到的事。

It's not a thing (that) would disturb me. (Schibsbye) (一般定语从句) 那事不会干扰我(原义“那不是一种...的事”)

It was a sad thing (that) befell him. (分裂句) 发生在他身上的是一件很凄惨的事。

以上三句的前两句中, 定语从句的先行词是a thing, 第三句分裂句所含定语从句的先行词却是It。除了这一主要不同外, 两种句子的语调重心(特别重读词语)也不相同。前两句定语从句的先行词a thing不特别重读, 二句分别重读从句中的'happen to' anyone与dis-'turb; 而第三句分裂句中特别重读的是所要

强调的a''sad'thing, 其后定语从句却不特别重读。再比较下列各组例句中的前、后二句。前句一般定语从句, 从句中心词语即语调核心, 而后句为分裂句, 关系代词前的主句表语才是语调核心:

{ That/It was the dog (that) I gave *the water* (最重读) to. (GCE) 那是我给它水喝的那条狗。

{ It was *the dog* (最重读) (that) I gave the water to. (ib) 我把水给的是狗啊!

{ This is the money that is *most* (最重读) *needed* (重读)。这就是极其需要的那笔钱。

{ It's *money* (最重读) that's most needed. 现在最需要的是钱。

{ It is a dream that has *come* (重读) *true* (最重读)。这是一个居然实现了的梦想。

{ It was a *curious* (最重读) *dream* (重读) (that) I had last night. 我昨夜梦见的是个怪梦。

{ It is *high* (重读) time that I should *go* (最重读)。(意为This present moment is high time at which I should go.) 现在我该走了(是我应该走的时间了)。

{ It is *perfect* (最重读) *time* (重读) that my watch is always keeping. 我的表走得总是十分准确。

谚语讲的是普遍的道理, 所以在谚语It is the *last* (最重读) *straw* (重读) that breaks the camel's back. 句中, It及限定它的定语从句that breaks the camel's back (压断骆驼脊背的) 是泛指一类事物, 与其相联系的the last straw同样是“类指”, 即泛指该类事物(最后又加上去的一根稻草)。全句意思是: 最后凑上的一点小事会使人再也承受不住或忍耐不了。该谚语为分裂句。

但谚语中的一般比喻可以用来指特定情况, 下面句中的the last straw就成为“特指”、即指具体情况下特定事物的了:

But when they said she told fibs, it was the last straw that *broke* (最重读) the camel's back (重读).

(DAI) 但当他们说她常常撒谎时, 终于使她忍无可忍了。

句中it以下并非分裂句。该it指的是前述情况 they said (that) she told fibs, 其后the last straw是所接定语从句的先行词, 从句限定了它是起了什么作用的最后一根稻草, 即表明它是使该女子再不能忍受的最后一个特定事件。

4.3 分裂句所强调的相应简单句各种成分

分裂句的句型It is/was...that...决定了分裂句所强调的主要是名词性成分, 即相应简单句中的主语、名词性表语、宾语、名词性宾语补语、介词宾语; 其中强调相应简单句表语的分裂句较为少见。分裂句要强调相应简单句定语时, 要把该定语连同所限定的名词一起加以强调。分裂句还常用来强调相应简单句状语, 即表示事情发生的时间、处所、方式、原因、目的、条件等非名词性词语, 这是分裂句的一种扩展用法。

分裂句不能强调相应简单句谓语动词。

下面举例分述强调相应简单句各种成分的分裂句表示法。

1) 强调相应简单句主语:

It was *Sir John Harding* who struck the first blow.
(比较*Sir John Harding struck the first blow.*) 先动手的是约翰·哈丁先生。

It's *he/him* who/that's a lecturer. 当讲师的是他。

2) 强调相应简单句表语:

It's *a lecturer* that he is now. (较少见) 他现在当的是讲师了。(It's a lecturer that he has become. 较自然)

3) 强调相应简单句宾语:

The editors of "Fortuna" remain smugly convinced that it is *God* whom they serve. (*Schibsbye*, whom很少用, 多用that) 《命运》的编者洋洋自得地认为他们在为上帝

服务。

It was *a book* that he gave me. (比较He gave me a book.) 他给我的是一本书。

It was *me* that he gave the book to. (强调相应简单句间接宾语时多加后位介词to) 他把那本书给了我。(换一种较正式说法It was *to me* that he gave the book. 强调的已不是名词性成分, 这就是分裂句用法的扩展, 句中It指由定语从句that he gave the book所限定的行为关系方面——从句仍是定语从句, 而不是其他种从句。

4) 强调带补语的宾语:

It's *was he/him* that they elected chairman. 他们选为主席的是他。

It's *the kitchen* that we've painted dark green. 我们刷成深绿色的是厨房。

5) 强调宾语补语:

It was *chairman* that they elected him. 他们选他当的正是主席。

It's *dark green* that we've painted the kitchen. 我们把厨房刷的是深绿色。

6) 强调定语:

用It is/was...whose...可强调相应简单句名词所有格定语: It's *Uncle Bill* whose address I lost. (比较I lost Uncle Bill's address.) 我弄丢的正是比尔舅舅的地址。(定语从句先行词还是It, 全句相当The person/one whose address I lost is Uncle Bill. 限制性定语从句whose等不可能是限定无需限定的专有名词Uncle Bill)

强调属性定语, 要连带所限定名词、代词: It's *my/the new book*, not yours/the old (used) one, that you've taken away. 你拿走的是我的/新书, 不是你的/那本旧书。

It was *his acquaintance* that I made in Italy, not

hers. 我在意大利结识的是那男人，不是那女人。

7) 强调简单句的状语 (及介词宾语):

It was *in my early youth/in Italy/in this way* that I first made his acquaintance. 正是在我很年轻的时候/在意大利/这样一种方式，我初次结识了他。

It was *in the gray of an early morning* that my mother's terrified voice awoke us. (时间) 天刚蒙蒙亮，我母亲惊恐的喊声就吵醒了我们。

It's *maybe under a load of kelp* (that) he'd be in a fishing boat. (处所) 他原来躲在一艘渔船里，可能正是藏在一大堆海藻底下。

It's *in the one train with the judges* (that) I came. (方式) 我来是跟法官们坐的同一趟火车。

It's *not only on bachelors* that the young ladies confer their affections. (关系方面) 年轻的女士们不只是把她们的温情寄托给单身汉们。(换一种说法 *It is not only bachelors on whom young ladies confer their affections.*

(Thackery) 是在强调相应简单句名词性成分——介词宾语; 还有一种较通俗说法 *It's not only bachelors that young ladies confer their affections on.* 也是在强调相应简单句介词宾语)

It is *with the younger firm* that I am transacting business. (关系方面) (换一种较通俗说法 *It is the younger firm that I am transacting business with.* 是在强调相应简单句介词宾语) 我同他们正有贸易往来的是那家建立较晚的公司。

Perhaps it is *because of my up-bringing in English pubs* that I think bar conversation has a charm of its own. (原因) 也许正是因为我是在英国小酒馆里长大的，我认为酒吧谈话有它特殊的魅力。

It was for his independence that he fought. (目的) (换一种较通俗说法 *It was his independence that he fought for.* (Jespersen) 是在强调相应简单句介词宾语) 他正是为了自己的独立而奋斗。

It was on that condition that I went. (Onions) (条件) 正是在这种条件下我才去的。

8) 强调复合句中的名词从句、带定语从句的名词:

It is what the youngsters actually need, not what they willfully demand, that is to be satisfied in good time. (原复合句中的主语从句) 是孩子们实际所需要的, 而不是他们任性要求的, 应予及时满足。

It is what Thoreau clearly whispered that Whitman so uproariously bawls. (原复合句中的宾语从句) 被惠特曼大声疾呼地喊叫开来的, 正是瑟罗清晰地悄声说出的事。

It was the hearty joyousness that he shed around him that made him so dear to us youngsters. (原复合句中带定语从句的名词) 正是洋溢在他身边的由衷的欢快气氛, 使我们这些孩子们那样喜欢他。

9) 强调复合句中的状语从句:

It was when/as soon as Roberts turned away that Taylor went to the door. (时间) 正是在罗伯茨转过身去时, 泰勒走到门口。

It is where oppression is greatest that resistance is greatest. (处所) 正是压迫最重的地方, 反抗最强烈。

It was not because I was tired but I did not like to go that I stayed at home. (原因) 不是因为我累了, 而是因为我不想去, 我才呆在家里的。

It was on condition that he should return at the end of three years that he was admitted to go to Europe. 正是在他三年期满立即返回的条件下, 他才获准去欧

洲。

不能直接把相应简单句的谓语动词放在 *It is/was...that...* 中间来加以强调，因为这种强调句型中间本是名词性成分的位置。如一定要强调某简单句谓语动词所表示的行为、运动时，可把该动词转化为动名词加以强调：

简单句 *He teaches/taught for a living.*

不可说 *It is/was teaches/taught that he for a living.*

可以说 *It is/was teaching that he does/did for a living.* 他为维持生活从事的是教学工作。

4.4 强调原状语一般不用 *when/where/why* 引导从句

分裂句强调相应简单句（或者说“原句”）的名词性成分时，引导从句的 *that* 无疑是关系代词（引导定语从句限定 *It*），当其指人或拟人事物时，可以分别情况换作 *who/whom/whose*，当其指事物时，也有人用 *which* 代替它（尽管这样用的人较少见）：

It is only women who live alone that/who can understand what it is to yearn to have a man's strong arm.（第一个 *who* 引导普通定语从句限定 *women*；第二个 *who* 引导分裂句的定语从句限定 *It*）只有独自生活的妇女才能理解渴望有一个男人的强壮臂膀的心情。

It was not the hen who/that cackled the most that/who laid the largest egg. 下了最大个鸡蛋的并不是嘎嘎叫叫得最热闹的那只母鸡。

It's his brother whose telephone number he has forgotten. 他忘了的是他弟弟的电话号码。

And was it you that/whom（较少见）*Roberts struck?* (EGS) 罗伯茨打的是你吗？

They would not, I think, have achieved it so well alone, and it is the West which has helped them.

(Pearl S. Buck) 我想他们自己干不会有此成就，是西方各

国帮助他们。

It is not of peculiar, but of general evil, *which* I am now complaining. (Austin) (比较It is not peculiar, but general evil, *that/which* I am complaining of.) 我现在所指责的不是某种殊特的坏事,而是在指责笼统的所有坏事。

It is fierce local patriotism of this kind that creates difficulties for the capital, straddled between the two zones, and *which* led to the outcry on both sides. (Schibsbye) 正是这种强烈的地方观念给跨在两地区之上的首都带来很多问题,并使双方都发出了激愤的言论。

而分裂句强调相应简单句(或者说“原句”)的状语的用法,则是强调名词性成分用法的扩展,是语言逐步丰富以表达事物层层关系的自然发展(参见Onions, p.18; Jespersen, MEG Part 3, p.164)。强调原状语的分裂句中,引导从句的*that*仍然是关系代词性质,仍然是引导定语从句限定其先行词*It*。只是有一点与强调名词性成分时稍有不同,那就是:分裂句强调原状语时,关系代词*that*即在定语从句中担任状语;这一点就象用*that*代替*when/where/why*引导从句限定*time/place/reason*等名词时所起的作用一样(*that*所带介词惯于略去,而*at/on/in/for which*...仍以关系代词作介词宾语)。

比较下面第一组例句中强调名词性成分的分裂句与第二组以下各组例句中强调原状语的各分裂句:

相应简单句(原句): I understood my situation on seeing the boy. 看见那孩子,我就明白我的处境了。
分裂句: It was on seeing the boy that I understood my situation. (强调时间) ...我才明白...
分裂句主要成分: It (the first time) was on seeing the boy.
It带定语从句: It (the first time) that(at which) I understood my situation...

不过，因为分裂句强调原状语时，*that*的先行词*It*所指仅是一个较笼统、较模糊的概念，还不是确指具体时间、处所、原因、目的等，并不等于*the time/place/reason/purpose*等名词，所以，关系代词一般只用*that*，既不用“介词 + *which*”，也很少见有用关系副词*when, where*等的：

It was just after 2 when we sent for a doctor.

(RHD) 刚过两点我们就请医生去了。// *'Tis seldom when the bee doth leave her comb in the dead carrion.*

(Shakespeare) 蜜蜂很少死在窠中，让伙伴把尸体拖开。*It is at the schools and universities where our characters are moulded.* (Onions) 我们的性格正是在中、小学和大学里形成的。

但也曾有语法家认为，强调名词性成分的*It is/was... that ...*与强调原状语的*It is/was... that...*是两种不同的句型：认为前者中*that*为关系代词，而强调原状语的后者中*that*为连词，引导的是名词从句（说该从句与*It*是同位关系，就是说它是同位从句；或者说代表该从句的*It*是引词，那就是说它是主语从句）。有人还把强调原状语的*It is/was... that...*与*It*引导不定式后位主语及其他类型后位主语的句型归为一类 (Schibsbye, p.190)：

It will take the Labour Party some weeks to regain full consciousness. 要让英国工党完全清醒过来，将需要几个星期的时间。

It was somewhere about 1918 that I first joined our village club. 我最初参加村里俱乐部大约在一九一八年。

主语可前置：*To regain full consciousness will take the Labour Party some weeks.* 等等（同样也可以说：*That I first joined our village club was somewhere about 1918.* 其中为连词*that*引导主语从句）

对这种说法的分析见下节。

4.5 It was in 1918 that...句型的性质

应该说It was in/about 1918 that I joined the club. 中如特别强调(重读) 1918 (... "eight), 则句子为分裂句含定语从句, 相当It (the time) that I joined the club was in/about 1918. 如无特别强调处, 也可以把它看作带主语从句的复合句, 可改写为That (That event)—I joined the club—was/happened in/about 1918. (参见 Erades, p. 356); 简单说: That/It was in/about 1918. 事情发生在一九一八年(前后)。(比较It was 1918. 那年是一九一八年。)

只是, 这种that从句前、后位可互换的情况看来很有限, 仅仅见到表示事情发生的时间而且以介词短语为表语(或者说状语, 修饰实意动词was “发生”)的复合句, 才有that从句在后或在前的两种说法。如果以时间副词为表语, 情况就不同了:

可以说: It was *then/recently/very lately* that I joined our village club.

未见说: That I joined our village club was *then/recently/very lately*.

也没有相应简单句: That was *then/recently/very lately*.

如果强调频度、处所、原因、条件、方式、目的、结果、方面等多种行为特征, 就都只见It is/was...that...的分裂句说法, 而没有见到That...is/was...主语从句开头的说法:

It is *rarely* that only one of them is seen. (不可改作That only one of them is seen is *rarely*. Onions)

(频度) 只看见其中一个人的情况是很少有的。

下列各分裂句也都不能改成 “That is/was + 原状语” 的句子形式:

It was *in Limerick* (that) he was. (Lady Gregory)
(处所) 他那时是在利莫里克。

It was *on that account/on that condition* that I agreed to go. (原因/条件) 正是为了这个原因/在这种条件下, 我才同意去的。

It was *by train* that we reached Istanbul. (方式) 我们是乘火车抵达伊斯坦布尔的。

It was *for fun* that he played the part of a clown. (目的) 他扮演丑角是为了取乐。

It is *in vain* that you quibble. (结果) 你这样躲闪回避, 是枉费心机的。

It was *with the people* (that) you were, and *not with the law* (that) you were, when you were a young man. (Lady Gregory) (方面) (不能说 That you were with the people…) 你年轻的时候, 你是站在人民这一边的, 不是站在法律那一边的。

要分清同属 *It is/was…that…* 形式的分裂句与带主语从句的复合句, 后者总是能改写成 *That* 开头的形式。比较:

1) “Will income tax be reduced?” — “That’s unlikely.” “所得税会减少吗?” —— “这不大可能。”

2) *It’s unlikely that income tax will be reduced.* 所得税减少是不大可能的。

3) *That—income tax will be reduced—is unlikely, that it will be abolished is out of the question.* (CGE) 所得税减少是不大可能的, 所得税取消, 根本不可能。

4) *Income tax is unlikely to be reduced.* 所得税减少是不大可能的。

5) *It is a 10 percent reduction in income tax that will come into effect very soon.* (相应简单句 *A 10 percent reduction in income tax will come into effect very soon.*) 所得税要减少百分之十, 这很快就要实行了。

6) *It is by 10 percent/very soon that income tax*

will be reduced. (相应简单句Income tax will be reduced by 10 percent very soon.) 所得税减少是减百分之十/很快就要实行了。

同理，下列两组例句中，第一组后两句是带主语从句的复合句，第二组后两句是强调名词性成分或原状语的分裂句：

That is rare. 这种事很少见。

That—he stays at home in such fine weather—is rare. 这么好的天气他呆在家里，这很少见。

It is rare that he stays at home in such fine weather. 很少见这么好的天气他呆在家里。

He rarely/seldom stays at home in such fine weather. 他很少在这么好的天呆在家里。

It is he/him who/that rarely/seldom stays at home in such fine weather. (不能说That rarely stays at home in such fine weather is he/him.) 正是他很少在这么好的天呆在家里。

It is rarely/seldom that he stays at home in such fine weather. (不能说That he stays at home in such fine weather is rarely/seldom.) 这么好的天他呆在家里，太少见了。

下列句中两个that各为所引导定语从句中的状语，而二者的先行词不同。前一个that限定last time，引导的是普通限制性定语从句；后一个that限定句首的It，引导的是分裂句所含的后位（与It隔开的）定语从句：

It was only last time (that/when) they were there that I got acquainted with him. (第二个that处一般不用when，因其先行词为It；分裂句强调原状语时，后边限定It的定语从句仍用that，一般不用when、where或why) (比较相应非分裂句I got acquainted with him only last time(that/when) they were there.) 仅仅是上次他们到那里去时，我才

认识了他。

4.6 主语代词、谓语时态与主句语序的变换

It is/was...that/who...型分裂句在语言的灵活使用中会发生一些形式上的变换:

That (It) was a fire bomb (that) they let off last night. (GCE) 昨天夜里他们爆炸的是一颗燃烧弹。

And it *might be myself (who) would be creeping up trying to make my escape.* (Lady Gregory) 那样就很可能我, 现在正在往上爬, 想要逃跑。

This it was (It was this) that has caused the regular beating noise. (Jespersen) 正是这个东西发出了那种有规律的敲打声。

这些变换分属主语代词、谓语语气或时态、主句语序三个方面。

1) 主语代词的变换——It换成That、Those:

That (It) was Cantercot (who) just went in, wasn't it? 是坎妥克特刚刚进去吧, 是不是? (比较 *Cantercot just went in, didn't he?*)

Those are (It is) my feet that you're stepping on. 你踩着的是我的脚。

但以下二句不是分裂句: *That/It is a thing (that) might happen to any man.* (先行词为thing) (这是一种在任何人都会发生的事。这种事谁都会碰到。) *That is all (that) is the matter with me.* (先行词为all) (这是对我成问题的所有的事。我的困难就是这些。)

2) 谓语语气、时态的变换——is/was换成will be, may/might be等。分裂句主句谓语动词一般只用is或was的单一形式, 因为所有其他语气、时态意义可以由从句谓语动词的形式变化来表示: *It is John who will come/has come/may have*

come. It was John who *had come/used to come/might have come*. 但有时为了强调各种语气、时态意义, 可把相应的助动词、情态动词构成的谓语形式由从句移入主句, 或在主句、从句中重复使用之, 于是, 主句谓语动词单一形式的 *is/was* 就会变成种种复合形式: *It has been/had been/will be/may be/might be/might have been* 等。

<p>主句中, <i>is</i> 从句中; 一般现在时、一般将来时、一般过去时、现在完成时、现在完成进行时、虚拟现在时等</p>	<p><i>It is not he who will quarrel a second time.</i> (A. Bennett) 再次吵架的不会是他。 <i>It's not often that you got an opportunity like this.</i> 你得此良机, 这不是常有的事。 <i>It is</i> (现在的认识) <i>always Jay who called.</i> 那个时期来访问的总是杰伊。 <i>It's the Arab who has been following her.</i> 一直跟在她身后的是那个阿拉伯人。 <i>Maybe it is you (who) might be in trouble now.</i> 现在陷于困境的那就可能是你了、</p>
<p>主句中, <i>was</i> 从句中; 一般过去时、过去完成时、过去完成进行时、虚拟过去时等; 偶见用一般现在时表示过去发生的一系列事情, 使其历历如在眼前</p>	<p><i>It was not often that you got an opportunity like that.</i> 你得到那样的良机, 在那个时候不是常有的事。 <i>It was</i> (当时已认识到) <i>always Jay who called.</i> 来访的总是杰伊。 <i>It was/is more than a hundred years ago that the Manifesto was issued.</i> (比较 <i>it is more than a hundred years since the...</i>) 共产党宣言发表至今已一百多年了。 <i>It was</i> (不用 <i>is</i>) <i>last night that John wore his best suit to the dance.</i> (强调过去时间状语) 正是昨晚, 约翰穿了最好的西装去跳舞。 <i>It was the Arab who had been following her.</i> 一直跟在她身后的是那个阿拉伯人。 <i>It was the forty-fathom slumber that clears the soul and eye and heart, and sends you to breakfast ravening.</i> 是那极其深沉的睡梦使你的灵魂、眼睛与心神都焕然一新, 让你能狼吞虎咽地吃起早饭来。</p>

续表

<p>主句中: will be等 从句中: 一般现在时、一般将来时</p>	<p>It will be John <u>Who comes in first.</u> (Halliday)最先来到的将是约翰。 It will be you <u>who will have to take the blame for this.</u>(Eckersley)为这件事受埋怨的将是你。 It's going to be his hand that <u>sets apart those fine legs.</u> (S. Bellow)把那两只细小的腿分开的将是他的手。</p>
<p>主句中: has/had been 从句中: 完成时态, 偶见用一般过去时</p>	<p>It has always been at night-time that I <u>have been molested.</u> (B.Stoker) 我受搅扰总是在夜间。 Perhaps it had been Christine <u>who'd made the mistake.</u> (K.Amis) 弄错的也许是克里斯丁。 Sometimes it had been Brett <u>who flared up.</u>(A.Hailey) 有时候发火的是勃来特。</p>
<p>主句中加用情态动词 it may be, it must be, it may/must have been等</p>	<p>It <u>may be</u> this sense of possible disaster in the air that makes San Franciscan society go with so captivating a rush and whirl.(Kipling) 可能是这种大难就会临头的危急感使旧金山社会处于那样席卷一切的团团转与奔走繁忙之中。 It <u>must have been</u> his brother that you saw.(GCE) 你看见的一定是他的哥哥。</p>
<p>主句中用动词虚拟形式或加用情态动词虚拟形式(分裂句主句, 从句可能一起作更扩展句中的从句) it were, it might be, it might have been 等</p>	<p>Why should she slink about as if <u>it were she who had disgraced herself?</u> (E. Wharton) 她为什么走到哪里都那样羞愧, 似乎是她自己造成的这种耻辱? It <u>might be</u> you (who) might be in trouble now. 现在陷于困境的那就可能是你了。 It <u>might have been</u> the manager who spoke to you. (GCE) 和你说话的可能就是经理。 If it wasn't for my wife and family, <u>it might be myself now(who) would be after breaking jail and hiding in the dark.</u> (Lady Gregory) 如果不是因为我有妻子儿女, 也许现在是我刚刚越狱而逃、藏在暗处。</p>

确切地说，主句中加用情态动词的句子有时并不是“把一句分成两部分”的分裂句：

It (The boy) must have been his brother that you saw. 意义上并不相当于 You must have seen his brother.

It (The man) might have been the manager who spoke to you. 相当 The man who spoke to you might have been the manager. 而不相当于 The manager might have spoken to you.

3) 主句语序的变换——“it is/was + 表语”换成“(非疑问词或疑问词) 表语 + it is/was”、“疑问词表语 + is/was it”或“is/was it + 表语”，变换的语序分属以下几种倒装：

强调表语倒装：The man recovered of the bite, *the dog it was* that died. (Onions) 人被咬伤后痊愈了，死了的是那只狗。*She it is* (who) arrests my attention first. 首先抓住我注意力的是她。*This it was* which gave him such faith and fearlessness in work. 正是这个给了他 偌大的干好工作的信心与勇气。

宾语从句倒装 (承接主句的疑问词置从句句首)：I wonder *who it was* (that) defined man as a rational animal. 我不知道是谁给人下定义说人是理性的动物。He had never guessed *what it was* in him which was beautiful to her. 他从来没想到，在他身上是什么对她说来是美好的。I have endeavoured to discover *what quality it was* which he possesses that elevates him so immeasurably above other persons. 我曾力图了解，他具有的是什么品质，使得他那样无与伦比地高高超越了别人。

感叹句倒装 (所强调疑问词组置句首)：What a glorious bonfire *it was* (that) you made! (GCE) 你们点燃了多么美妙的营火啊！What remarkable intelligence *it was* that you displayed! 你表现了多么杰出的智慧啊？

特殊问句倒装（疑问词置句首，主语与谓语动词颠倒）：*Who was it that found the key?* (RHD) 是谁把钥匙找到的？*What was it (that) set one to watch the other so?* 是什么东西使一个人这样监视着另一个人呢？*When was it that this meeting took place?* (EGS) 这次会议是什么时候召开的呢？*Where exactly was it that they met?* 他们会见的确切地点在哪儿呢？*Why was it that Roberts turned away?* 罗伯茨转过身去是为什么呢？*How was it that you did not give the alarm at once?* 你没有立即发出警报是怎么回事呢？

一般问句倒装（主语与谓语动词颠倒）：*Is it here (that) we are going to have our party?* 我们举行宴会就是在这儿吗？*Was it for this that we suffered and toiled?* (Jespersen) 我们受苦受累难道就为的是这个吗？

4.7 分裂句中关系代词that, who的“省略”

正象宾语从句等名词从句可以不用连词that引导而直接连于主句一样，也正象普通定语从句常可不用关系代词、关系副词that、when等引导而直接连于主句一样，分裂句所含定语从句也常常是“触合从句”，不用什么来引导，在讲求简洁的口语中尤其如此。

如果把这种不用that、who等的情况说成是“省略”，那么分析“省略”关系代词的分裂句时，可以见到该关系代词如果用于定语从句前，可分别为从句中的主语、宾语、介词宾语或状语等成分。

1) 所缺that/who如果补上应为主语：

It is your heart (that) is on fire, not your shop.
(Jespersen) 是你的心急如火，不是你的商店着火了。

It's practice (that) does it. 经常练习才能这么熟练。

It wasn't I (who) let him in. 不是我让他进来的。

It was me (*who*) made her think it was the best thing to do. 是我使她想到最好这样做。

It's the poor (*who/that*) have the hard life. 过苦日子的是那些穷人。

即使不是分裂句，带有普通定语从句的复合句如以It is/was...等开头，定语从句前也可以略去不用应为主语的关系代词：

It is a thing (*that*) happens once in a blue moon. (先行词为a thing) 这是一种百年不遇的事。

而下列二句为分裂句，所含定语从句的先行词皆为It:

It's a sad thing (*that*) befell him. 发生在他身上的是一件很凄惨的事。(比较A sad thing befell him.)

It's always the right thing (*that*) comes into his head at the crucial moment. 在关键时刻，他所想到的总是恰当的主意。(比较: The right thing always comes into his head at the crucial moment.)

2) 所缺*that/who*如果补上应为表语:

It was only a merchant (*that*) he could become. 他那时只能成为一个商人。

It's a living reality (*that*) our dream has become! 我们的梦想已变成活生生的现实!

3) 所缺*that/who (m)* 如果补上应为宾语:

It was Roberts (*that/whom*) we met. 我们见到的是罗伯茨。

It's this watch (*that*) I said I would let you have, not that. 我说要给你的是这块表，不是那块。

It's life (*that*) a writer seeks. 作家追求的是生活。

4) 所缺*that/who(m)* 如果补上应为介词宾语:

It's me (*that/whom*) he gave the book to. (很少说It's me he gave the book, 该句所略*that/whom*为间接宾语) 他

把那本书给了我了。

It was the girl (*that*) I was complaining about.
我所埋怨的是那个姑娘不好。

Who was it (*that/whom*) you voted for? 你投票选的是谁?

5) 所缺*that*如果补上应为状语:

It was in September (*that*) I first noticed it. (时间) 我最初注意这一点是在九月份。

It was in Italy (*that*) I first made his acquaintance. (处所) 我最初认识他是在意大利。

It's little (*that*) any mother knows what might happen to her child before it has gone through its life, or who will be who in the end. (度量) 任何一位母亲都难以知道她的孩子走完一生道路之前会碰到什么事, 最后谁会成为什么人。

It was about the girl (*that*) I was complaining. (关系方面) 我所埋怨的是那个姑娘不好。

值得注意的是, 分裂句中作表语的名词可带有自己的定语从句。比较起来, 以该名词(或代词)为先行词的普通定语从句较多使用关系代词, 而以分裂句主语It为先行词的后位定语从句多把关系代词略去不用:

It is the preacher *who* does not prepare (*who*) sends his congregation away empty. 正是那种不做准备的传道士才会让听他讲道的教徒毫无所获、空空散去。

It's not everything *that* happens (*that*) gets into the papers. 不是所发生的每一件事都会登在报纸上的。

It's those *that* are down (*that*) would be up, and those *that* are up (*that*) would be down. (Lady Gregory) 正是那些压在底下的人们要翻身上去, 而那些凌驾于上的人们要滚落下来。

这三句中，作为分裂句表语的名词或代词是句子强调的事物、句子重点（重读），限定它的定语从句更要着重（最重读），因而多加用关系代词；而限定It的后位定语从句不那么着重，因而多不用关系代词。

不过，也有时引导这两种定语从句的关系代词都略去不用：

Maybe it's one of the boys (*that*) you used to be singing with at that time (*that*) you will be arresting today or tomorrow, and sending into the dock. 可能你今天或者明天将要逮捕并送去受审判的，正是你那时候和他们一起唱歌的孩子们中间的一个。

另外，分裂句还可以带有限定其他名词的定语从句以及别种从句；整个分裂句还可以作为更扩展的复合句中的一个从句——要了解各种从句前所使用或所略去不用的不同性质的关联词：

It might be himself (*that*) would be keeping the law, and myself (*that*) would be breaking it, and myself (*that*) would be trying maybe to put a bullet in his head, or take up a lump of stone the way (*that*) you said he did. 那就可能是他在维护法律而我在违犯法律，可能是我也许在想方设法要给他的脑袋里打进一颗子弹去，或者就象你说的他干过的那样，我会同样地拿起一块石头把他干掉。

It's to the assizes (*that*) I came, thinking (*that*) I might make a few shillings here or there. 我是奔着巡回审判大会来的，心想在这附近一带挣几个先令。

Sergeant, I am thinking (*that*) it was with the people (*that*) you were, and not with the law (*that*) you were, when you were a young man. 警官，我设想，你年轻的时候你是站在人民这一边的，不是站在法律那一边的。

4.8 所谓“拟分裂句” What he's done is...

有些语法书讲，象The monkeys interested the children

most. 这样一句话，仅为强调主语，就可分裂出两种句型：It is/was the monkeys that interested the children most.

(本章前几节所述分裂句) What interested the children most was the monkeys. (Wood) 使孩子们最感兴趣的是那些猴子。

那些语法书讲，这第二种强调句型也是分裂句，或称拟分裂句 (pseudo-cleft sentences)。实际上，这是使用以what等引导的名词性关系从句来强调原句主语。使用以what等引导的名词性关系从句，不仅可以强调原句主语、表语、宾语等名词性成分，而且可以用What he's done is...之类的形式强调原句动词谓语 (What...is/was...句型不能用于强调原句状语)。

原句：The lies (that) he told proved his undoing.

强调原主语：What proved his undoing was *the lies (that) he told*. (Wood) (比较It was *the lies (that) he told (that) proved his undoing.*) 正是他所说的那些谎话证明了他的败坏。

强调原宾语：What the lies he told proved was *his undoing*. (比较It was *his undoing (that) the lies he told proved.*) 他的谎言所证明的正是他的败坏。

原问句：What did Taylor hand to Roberts? (用分裂句What was it that Taylor handed to Roberts? 是强调原宾语What) 泰勒递给罗伯茨的是什么东西?

原答句：He handed to Roberts an envelope.

强调原宾语：What he handed to Roberts was *an envelope*. (比较It was *an envelope that he handed to Roberts.*) 他递给罗伯茨的是一个信封。

原句：He is a genius.

强调原表语：What he is is *a genius*. (CGE, p. 181) (但不能说It is a genius that he is.) 他正是一个天才。

原句：I'm teaching him a lesson.

强调原现在进行时谓语: *What I'm doing is teaching him a lesson.* 我正是在给他一次教训。

原句: *I'm going to teach him a lesson.*

强调原be going to...谓语: *What I'm going to do is (to) teach him a lesson.* 我正是要给他一次教训。

原句: *He'll spoil the whole thing.*

强调原一般将来时谓语: *What he'll do is spoil the whole thing.* 他正是将要把事情弄个一团糟。

原句: *He has spoilt the whole thing.*

强调原现在完成时谓语: *What he has done is spoilt/ (to) spoil the whole thing.* 他正是把事情弄了个一团糟。

以上后四个强调原谓语的句中, 谓语动词都是表示动态的动作动词 (*dynamic verbs*)。如果原句谓语动词是表示静态的状态动词 (*stative verbs*) 则不能用do来代替, 无法构成相应的拟分裂句来强调状态动词担任的谓语: *What I am doing/will do/have done is...*等。例如:

原句: *I like music.*

不能说: *What I do is (to) like music.*

比较动作动词句: *The birds make music all day long.*
What the birds do is (to) make music all day long. 小鸟整天没别的事, 只是唱歌。

what是因为可以作为连接代词, 表示*the thing that/which* 或*that which*, 才可以用来构成这种拟分裂句的。而who, 因其在现代英语中已不用来表示*the person who* (参见4.8, 4.9), 所以不能说*Who met us was the ambassador.* 而要说*The person/one who met us was the ambassador. It was the ambassador that/who met us.* (CGE) 会见我们的是大使。

when与where可以作为连接副词, 分别表示*the time when* 与*the place where*, 但很少用于句子开头引导主语从句构成拟

分裂句来强调句末词语（表语），却常用来引导靠后的表语从句，来强调句首词语（主语），构成WH-从句在后的另一种拟分裂句（参见2.10表语从句条）：

原句：In autumn the countryside is most beautiful.

强调原时间状语：(In) Autumn is when the countryside is most beautiful. (比较Autumn is the time when the countryside is most beautiful. It is in autumn that the countryside is most beautiful. 很少说 When the countryside is most beautiful is (in) autumn. 正是在秋天，农村最美。

原句：He first achieved fame as a writer in 1950.

强调原时间状语：(In) 1950 was when he first achieved fame as a writer. 他作为作家成名是在一九五零年。

原句：I first met my wife on this very spot.

强调原处所状语：(On) This very spot was where I first met my wife. (This very spot was the place where I first met my wife. 很少说 Where I first met my wife was on this very spot.) 正是在这个地点，我第一次见到我的妻子。

原句：The accident took place here.

强调原处所状语：Here is/was where the accident took place. 正是在这里发生的那次事故。

连接代词what，甚至连接代词who，也可以引导表语从句，构成WH-从句在后的拟分裂句，来强调句首词语（主语）：

The monkeys were what interested the children most. (比较What interested the children most was the monkeys. 句中应用was，而不应用were)

The police chief was who I meant. (比较I meant the police chief. It was the police chief that I meant. 但不能说：Who I meant was the police chief.)

第五章 while, as, that, if等

引导对应或因果状语从句

5.1 时间从句while/as...并不是回答What time?

句中成分是按句中关系来区分的。句中指事物本身的成分（回答Who/What?），为名词性成分主语、宾语等，由名词、名词性代词等表示；指主语的运动或联系状态的成分（回答What does he do/is he?等）为谓语，由实意动词或“系词加表语”表示；修饰、限定名词性成分的成分（回答What.../Which/How many/How much?等）为定语，由形容词、数词等表示。而修饰、限定句中动词的成分为状语，由副词等表示，故英语语法上把状语称作adverbials。

但状语不只是修饰、限定动词的成分——修饰、限定形容词、副词、介词短语以至整个句子的成分，都被归入状语之列。因此，状语所用词语的性质最为繁杂，状语从句的性质亦然。根据什么给状语及状语从句分类呢？首先，也可以根据所回答的问题进行分类，例如状语从句可分为：

回答When/What time? How long? How often? 的是时间状语从句；

回答Where? Where to? How far? 的是处所状语从句；

回答How? In what manner? 的是方式状语从句；

回答What in comparison with? 的是比较状语从句；

回答Why? For what reason? 的是原因状语从句；

回答To what effect? 的是结果状语从句；

回答To what purpose? 的是目的状语从句;

回答On what condition? 的是条件状语从句;

回答What granted/conceded? 的是让步状语从句。

上列类别虽已繁多, 却未能包括所有状语从句, 为此让我们先按所表示事物的固有关系或对外纵横关系, 把各种状语从句归为三大类。

1) 表示运动或联系状态的固有时间、空间关系——由as, as far as等引导的时间从句、处所从句(如处所从句His land extends as far as the eye can reach.);

2) 表示运动或联系状态的外部横向关系即“对应关系”——由as等引导的方式从句、比较从句、由that等引导的关系方面从句等(如比较从句She is not so rich as he (is).);

3) 表示运动或联系状态的外部纵向关系即“因果关系”——由as, if等引导的原因从句、条件从句、让步从句, 由that等引导的结果从句、目的从句等(如原因从句Rich as he is, he needn't work hard. 让步从句Rich as he is, he is unhappy.)。

这三大类各包括多种状语从句, 所回答的问题实际不限于前面提到的十几条。

例如时间从句中, 除when...从句回答When/What time?、until/as(so) long as...从句回答How long?、each/every time...从句回答How often? 以外, 值得注意, while...从句与as...从句所回答的就超出了这些有关时间问题的范围:

You may stay here as long as you like. (从句回答How long may I stay here?) 你愿在这呆多久可以呆多久。

So(As) long as I am alive, you will never look for help in vain. 只要我活着(在我活在世上这么长的时间内), 你要求帮助永远不会落空。

We started every time a fish leaped. (从句回答How often did you start?) 每次有一条鱼跳起来, 我们都为

之一惊。

You are safe *while* I am here. (从句不是回答When/What time am I safe? 而是回答During what time/During how long a time am I safe?) 我在此期间,你总是安全的。

He smiled *as* he passed. (从句也不是回答When/What time? 而是回答 (At the same time)As what happened? 之类的问题)正在他走过的那会儿,他微微一笑。

As midnight drew near, the moon appeared above the hills. (从句也不是回答When/What time? 而是回答In what meantime? 之类的问题)随着时间临近午夜,月亮(渐渐)在山岗上兴起。

连词*while*, *as*与连词*when*的不同略如下述:

1) *while* 的意思是 *during the time when*...或 *for as long as*. *while*...从句总是指某种持续的、或因反复而持续的情况;整个主从复合句表示主句(短暂或持续、反复)情况发生在从句的持续(包括反复)过程中:

He kept the cigarette between his lips *while* he was talking. (*while*如换为*when*,会失去持续全过程的意义;换为*as*,则仅强调同时)整个他谈话的过程中,他一直在唇边叼着烟卷。

Many great writers were not fully appreciated *while* they were alive. (主句的反复情况发生在从句反复进行的过程中,句中*while*也不宜换为*when*或*as*)许多伟大作家在世期间,都未得到充分的重视。

While I was reading, I fell asleep. (主句的短暂情况发生在从句的持续过程中,句中*while*可换为*when*或*as*,但意味有所不同)我看着看着书,睡着了。

仅在主句指较短暂情况时, *while/as/when*...三种从句差别较小: I noticed a police car in front of number 37 *as/*

when/while I was walking down the street. *As/when/while* I was walking down the street I noticed a police car in front of number 37. (Swan) 我沿着大街走着走着，注意到三十七号门前有一辆警车。

2) *as* 的意思是 *at/in the same time when...*。 *as...* 从句可指持续情况，也可指短暂情况；整个主从复合句表示主句（短暂或持续、反复）情况发生在从句持续（包括反复）或短暂情况的同时：

He told us stories *as* we went along. (主句持续情况发生在从句持续情况的同时，句中 *as* 如换为 *while*，会失去强调同时的意义，变成强调从句全过程) 我们一面走着，他一面给我们讲着故事。

Her anger grew *as* she talked. (RHD) (主句持续情况与从句持续情况同时进行而且始终关联，连词 *while* 不能表示这种意义) 她说说着说着，越说越生气。

As he grew richer, he grew more ambitious. (主从复合句表示相随渐变的情况，常用连词 *as*，该 *as...* 从句如不是指一定时间，而是指变化的比例关系时，即为“比例从句”，见 5.6) 随着他越来越富，他的野心越来越大。

As he did so, the door was flung open. (主句短暂情况发生在从句短暂情况的同时) 正在他这么干时，门猛然被打开。

He went out (just) *as* I entered. 正是我进来的时候，他出去了。

Just as he was speaking, there was a loud explosion. (*as...* 从句前加 *just*，表示从句情况比较短暂) 他正说着，发出了很大的爆炸声。

He came up *as* I was speaking. (RHD) (主句短暂情况发生在从句持续情况的同时) 我正在讲话的时候，他走上前来。

The sun was sinking *as* we turned home. (Greene)
(主句持续情况发生在从句短暂情况的同时) 我们回家时, 太阳正在西下。

as...从句和 *when/while*...从句的一点不同, 前者不可略去主语 (与主句主语重复者) 及谓语一部: *The aircraft exploded as it was landing.* 不可略作 *The aircraft exploded as landing.* 但可以说 *The aircraft exploded when/while landing.* 飞机着陆时爆炸了。

下列句中 *as* 为介词: *As a boy, I looked at such things quite differently.* 我小时候, 对这些事情的看法和现在大不相同。比较: *When/While a boy/young/(staying) in England, I looked at such things quite differently.* 我小时候/年轻时/在英国时, 对这些事情的看法和现在大不相同。

3) 连词 *when* 的基本意思是 *at the time when*, 但主、从句情况不一定是恰好同时, 常可能是接续发生的, 就有 *after the time when* 之意。特别是当主、从句都表示短暂情况时, 主句情况常是随后发生。如果从句表示持续情况, *when* 也不象 *while* 那样强调其持续过程, 而只表示主句 (持续、反复或短暂) 情况发生在那个时间。下列六组例句可概括连词 *when* 的基本用法,

主句持续情况发生在从句持续情况发生时 —— *We learned Latin when we were young.* (因多用句末重点传达新信息, 说明听者未知的情况, 故此句应是回答 *When/What time did you learn Latin?*) 我们的拉丁语是在年轻时学的。 *When we were young, we learned Latin.* (应是回答 *What language did you learn when you were young?* 之类问题) 我们年轻时, 学的是拉丁语。 *He is impatient when(ever) he is kept waiting.* (持续且反复) 每次让他等待时, 他总是很不耐烦。 *It's cold when it snows.* (反复) 下雪时, 天就冷。

主句持续情况发生在从句短暂情况发生时 —— *I was ten*

years old *when* my father died. (并非回答 *When* was you ten years old? 而是回答 *What* happened when you were ten years old? 或 *How* old were you when your father died? 比较 *When* my father died, I was ten years old.) 那年我十岁, 父亲死了。I was taking a walk, when I came across him. (*when*前有逗号, 《简明英汉词典》认为它是并列连词) 我正在散步, 碰见了。When John arrived, I was cooking lunch. (Swan) (回答 *What* were you doing when John arrived?) 约翰来到时, 我正在做午饭。

主句短暂情况发生在从句持续情况发生时——My father died *when* I was ten years old. 我父亲死是在我十岁的那一年。I came across him *when* I was taking a walk.

(《简明英汉词典》) 我碰见他是在我正散步的时候。John arrived *when* I was cooking lunch. (Swan; 以上三句中后位从句皆可换到前面, 而使主句在后成为句末重点) 约翰是我做午饭时到的。When (he was) a boy, he went to sea.

(从句如换到后面作为句末重点不宜有省略) 他从小就当了水手。

主句短暂情况发生在从句短暂情况发生时 (主句情况可能稍后) ——Stop writing *when* the bell rings. 铃一响就不要写了。We'll start *when* the team leader comes. (比较...as soon as he comes. ...right after he has come.) 队长来了咱们就出发。He rose *when* she entered. (比较He rose as she entered. 强调同时) 她一进来, 他就站起来了。

主句情况显然发生在从句情况之后——Let us set out *when/after* the sun has set. (RHD) 我们日落后出发吧! He went to his old job *when* the war ended. 战争结束后他重操旧业。When I come back, I shall see him. 我回来后要见到他的。

从句情况显然发生在主句情况之后——We had just fallen asleep *when* the bell rang. (并非回答 When did you fall asleep? 而是回答 What happened when/after you had fallen asleep?) 我们刚睡着, 门铃就响了。He had hardly stepped in the hut *when* it began to rain. (以上二句 *when* 前无逗号, 但下句后面的三句中 *when* 前有逗号) 他刚跨进小屋, 就下起雨来。When/By the time (that) I got to the station, they were already there. 我来到车站时他们已在那里。We were about to start, *when* it began to rain. 我们正准备出发, 忽然下起雨来。They arrive at six, *when* we all have dinner. (LDCE 解释这个 *when* 相当 and then, 用法象是并列连词) 他们六点到, 然后我们一起吃晚饭。He stayed there till Sunday, *when* he started for Chicago. (RHD 解释这个 *when* 相当 and then 或 upon/after which, 按后一释意该 *when* 属关系副词性质) 他在那里呆到星期日, 然后去芝加哥了。

我们认为当 *when* 及 *where* 前有逗号, 而所引导从句显然修饰主句中一个时间名词或处所名词时, 该 *when* 或 *where* 即用作关系副词, 而从句为非限制性定语从句 (上一段中最后二例句里, *when*... 从句分别修饰主句中的 *six* 与 *Sunday*, 也应看作非限制性定语从句):

The Queen will visit the town in *May*, *when/at which* time she will open the new hospital. (ALD) 女王将于五月份访问此城, 届时将主持该新建医院的开业典礼。

I went to a shop, *where* I happened to see him. 我到一家商店去, 在那里偶然看到了他。He took the 9:09 train to *Woodside*, *where* he caught a subway to the city. (RHD) 他乘九点零九分的火车到伍塞得, 在那里赶上一趟去该市的地下铁道列车。

5.2 It's...since/from...与It/I was...before...等

表示“从某一时间”与“从某一处所”，英语分别用since(介词或连词)与from(介词)：

It is (now) three months since then/since he was married. 从那时/从他结婚到现在，已是三个月了。

It is thirty miles from/to London. 这里离/到伦敦是三十英里。

表示距离还可以把介词短语放在句首：

From Boston to New York (it) is two hundred miles. 从波士顿到纽约是二百英里。

以上各句中的it指有关的时间量或距离。应注意，表示时间量虽意指从过去持续到现在，也最常用一般现在时It is/seems/must be等，而较少用现在完成时；如果since引导从句，从句多用一般过去时，很少用现在完成时：

It is/has been (较少用)three years since I saw him last. (RHD) 从我上次见他到现在，已经三年了。

比较：This is the tenth day since I wrote to him. (不可说：This has been the tenth day since...) 从我上次给他写信到今天，已经十天了。

It is five years since the boy became a pioneer. 从这孩子成为少先队员以来，已经五年了。

It is five years since the boy was a pioneer. (since从句的谓语表示持续状态时，从句意指“从该状态结束以来”) 从这孩子不再是少先队员以来，已经五年了。

How long is it since you were in London? 从你离开(或“上次去”)伦敦以来有多久了?

It is over three years since she died. 她死了已经三年多了。

It seems ages/must be almost ten years since we

last met. 从我们上次见面以来, 觉得已经很久很久了/一定将近十年了。

It's a year since I've had roast mutton. (RHD)
(从句很少用现在完成时) 从我那次吃烤羊肉以来, 已经有一年了。

It...主句中, 只有在特别强调持续过程时, 才用现在完成时:

It has been years since I enjoyed myself so much as last night. (LDCE) 我已经有好多好多年没有象昨天晚上这样高兴了。

It has been approximately a decade since it was last performed. (RHD) 从这出戏上次演出以来, 已将近十年了。

但在表示到过去某一时刻为止的时间量时, 主句用一般过去时(较少用过去完成时), 从句用过去完成时:

It was seven years since he had entered the navy (till that time). 从他进海军到那时, 已是七年光景。

It was ten years since they had lived here. (since 从句的谓语表示持续状态, 从句指“该状态结束以来”) 从他们搬走到那时, 已经过了十年。

It had been so long since we had seen each other (till that day). 从我们在那时之前相见之日到那一天, 已经是好久了。

since从句前不可用ago, 不可说: *It is ten years ago since he left.* 要去掉ago, 或把since改为that: *It's ten years since he left. It's ten years ago that my brother left for America.* (Wood) (后一句为分裂句)

当since从句所从属的主句不是It is/was... 而是以具体的人或事物为主句主语时, 这些主句的谓语动词就多用完成时态了——指till now用现在完成时, 指till then/that time(过去)

用过去完成时；而从句谓语动词则根据所表示的是否持续状态而主要分别用过去时与现在完成时：

从句表非持续的变动用一般过去时

He has been (不用 is) a notability (主句持续状态) since he wrote (不用 has written) the book. 从他写了这本书以来，他一直是惹人注目的人物。

We have made many friends (主句反复行为) since we came here. 从我们到这里以来，我们已交了好多朋友。

Has anything happened (主句表非持续的变动，疑问句) since he left home? 他离开家以后，发生什么事了吗？Nothing has happened (主句表非持续的变动，否定句) since he left home. 他离开家以后，什么事也没发生。

I met her last week. Since we left school (till then), we had often written to each other. (从句情况虽然发生在主句过去情况之前，但因从句表示的是非持续的变动，仍常用一般过去时而不常用 since we had left school 之类的过去完成时) 我上星期见到她了。从我们毕业到这次见面，我们常有书信来往。

He had lived with us since he returned/was back. (不常用 since he had returned/been back) 从他回到那时为止，他一直和我们住在一起。

从句表持续的状态用现在完成时

He has always been a pet of yours ever since he has worked in the office. 从他在这个办事处工作以来，他一直是你所宠爱的人。

We have made many friends since we have lived here. 从我们住在这里以来，我们已交了好多朋友。

Nothing has happened since he has been here. 从他到这里以后，什么事也没发生。(比较：Nothing has happened since he was here/he left. 从他离开这里以后，什么事也没发生。)

We had often written to each other since he had been to Shanghai. (since he had been to Shanghai till that time——从句表示到过去某时为止的持续状态，用过去完成时，不可用一般过去时) 从他去上海直到那时，我们常有书信来往。

He had lived with us since he had been home. 从他回家后到那时为止，他一直和我们住在一起。

非正式说法片面强调现在情况时，since 复合句的主句甚至从句中都可使用一般现在时：

I feel much better since I was given an injection.

给我注射一针以后，我觉得好多了。

It's dull in our town since my playmates left.
(Browning) 从跟我一起玩的伙伴们离开后，我们城里很无聊。

I have been walking/*am walking* (主句可用现在进行时) to work since my car broke down. 从我的汽车坏了以后，我就总是走着上班。

Ever since I *can remember*, even when I was quite a child, people have always told me that I had no perseverance, no strength of will. (Morris) (since I can remember 实为 since the beginning of the time I can remember 之意) 从我能回忆起的时候，甚至很小的时候，人们总是对我说我没有坚持精神，没有毅力。

Since I'm married, I give you my honour I've not touched a bit of stamped paper. (Thackeray) 我以我的名誉担保，从我结婚后，我真的没有摸过书本。

比较下列表示时间量的四种句型：

自从句所指时间	到从句所指时间
自过去到现在 It is/has been...since... (从句用一般过去时) It is/has been so long since we <u>met</u> .	自现在到将来 It will be...before... (从句用一般现在时指将来) It will be five years before we <u>meet</u> . It won't be long before we go.
自(从句的)过去到过去 It was/had been...since... (从句用过去完成时) It was/had been so long since we <u>had met</u> .	自过去到(从句的)过去 It was/had been...before... (从句用一般过去时) It was some time before I <u>saw</u> him. It wasn't long/hadn't been 5 minutes before I <u>noticed</u> that.

前述以It (+ is/was等) 为主语表示时间量或距离(空间量) 的句子极为常见。但英语还有时以具体的人或事物sb./sth. (+ is/was等) 为主语, 接表时间或距离词语, 再接 before、from等引导的从句或介词短语, 中国学生对此多不熟悉。

表示人或事物持续状态的时间量:

It/I was a long while *before* I could rise. (岩波, be条) (这类词中I was... 意义相当于I remained/stayed there...) 我过了很长时间才能站起身来。

Goodyear was another four years in which things went very badly with him, *before* he made the discovery how to vulcanize rubber completely. (Easier Scientific English Practice, p.3) 古德伊尔又过了情况很糟的四年之久, 他才发现了能把橡胶完全硫化的方法。(比较 Goodyear remained in that state for another four years *before*...)

I suppose I had not been five minutes *on* Morroccan soil *before* I noticed the overloading of the donkeys and was infuriated by it. (Advanced English, Book 2, p.18) (兼用on...介词短语状语和before...时间状语从句) 我觉得, 我在摩洛哥的土地上呆了还不到五分钟就注意到这里驮的东西过于沉重, 为此非常气忿。

We were six days *on* the boat. (LDCE, vessel条)
(six days与on the boat皆为状语) 我们在船上过了六天。

I was 20 day hacking and hewing at it at the bottom. I was 14 more getting the branches and the vast spreading head of it cut off. (Defoe) (20/14 days与hacking.../getting...皆为状语) 二十天之久, 我一直在那大树底下砍啊、砍啊。又是十四天之久, 我一直砍着, 把树枝和那巨大的树的上半部砍了下来。

表示人或事物的处所与另一处所的距离:

Even today man is still a long way *from* malaria eradication. (许国璋主编《英语》, Book 4, p.194) 即使在今天, 人类要达到完全消灭疟疾的目的, 还有很长的路要走。

Life could evolve only if the planet is the right distance *from* its sun. With a weaker sun *than* our own, the planet would have to be closer to it. 只是在行星离它所绕恒星距离合适的情况下, 生命才会发展。如果那颗恒星比我们的太阳热量小些, 该行星就必须离它较近。

5.3 as引导表示“对应”等关系的多种状语从句

连词as多用于引导时间从句、方式从句和比较从句, 但它远不只是引导这样三种状语从句, 这正象是: 连词when、while多引导时间从句, 但远不只引导时间从句; 连词if、in case多引导条件从句, 但远不只引导条件从句; 连词that多引导原因从句、结果从句和目的从句, 但也远不只引导那样三种状语从句。

when、while引导时间从句以外的各种状语从句:

Liberty is useless, *when/if* it does not lead to action. (条件从句, adverbial clause of condition) 自由如果不激起行动, 自由就毫无意义。

He threatened to leave *when/although* he had no intention of leaving. (让步从句, adverbial clause of concession) 虽然他无意离开这里, 他却威胁说他要离开。

How can we finish *when/since/if* you won't help? (原因从句或条件从句, adverbial clause of cause/condition) 既然/要是你不肯帮忙, 我们哪能弄完呢?

While/As long as there's life, there's hope. (条件从句) 只要有生命, 就总是有希望。

While/Though he appreciated the honor, he could not accept the position. (让步从句) 他虽然很重视这一荣

誉，却不能接受这一职位。

They had only three rakes *while*/but they needed five. (对照从句, *adverbial clause of contrast*, 回答 *What in contrast to?*) 他们只有三把耙子, 可是他们需要五把。

While their country has plenty of oil, ours has none. (对照从句) 他们国家有的是石油, 而我们一点也没有。

His eldest son became a barrister, the second entered the Church, *while* the youngest made the army his career. (Wood) (对照从句) 他的大儿子当了律师, 二儿子做了牧师, 而最小的儿子选择从军为其职业。

if、*in case* 引导条件从句以外的各种状语从句:

If I am wrong, you are not right. (岩波) (对照从句) 如果说我错了, 你也并非正确。(全句可称“松散条件句”, 见6.5)

If/ *Though* they are poor, they are at any rate happy. (让步从句) 虽然他们穷, 不管怎么说他们很幸福。

She is thirty, *if (she is) a day*. (RHD) (语气状语从句, *adverbial clause of modality*, 一种特殊惯用短句, 见本节后面 *as* 引导的及其他形式的语气状语短句、短语) 可以肯定, 她有三十了。

虽然 *in case* 有时相当 *if*: *Fire in case/if* you are resisted. (如果碰到抵抗, 你就开枪。), 却也常常不同于 *if*, 引导的不是条件从句:

We hid behind some bushes *in case/for* fear that/lest (lest 用于较陈旧正式说法) *passers-by* should see us.

(虽不宜说该从句表示“反面目的”或“否定的目的”, 但还可以说这是目的从句, *adverbial clause of purpose*, 不过所回答的不是“*To what purpose?*”, 而是“*What to prevent?*”: 表示要“排除某种结果”的目的) 我们躲在一些树丛后边, 以免过路人会看见我们。

Take these pills *in case* you feel ill on the boat.
(CGE) (What to prepare against? 表示要“防备某种结果”，不是“排除”) 拿着这些药以防你在船上会晕船。

In case you don't remember my name, I've enclosed a picture. (RHD) (防备某种结果) 我随信附上一张照片，以防您记不得我的名字。

Take your dancing shoes *in case* you decide to go dancing. (LDCE) (With what possibility in view? 表示要“准备可能结果”，不是“防备”不愿发生的事) 带上你的舞鞋，也许到时候你想去跳舞。

that 引导原因从句；结果从句、目的从句以外的状语从句：

Your son is no longer a child *that* you should use the rod. 你儿子不是小孩了，你怎么还能拿棍子打呢？

I'm not a woman *that* I should worry about such trifles. (RHD) 我不是女人，不会为这些琐事发愁的。

We are not pigeons *that* we should eat dry peas.
(Erades, p.155) 我们不是鸽子，怎么能吃干豌豆呢？

以上三句的主句都是否定句。从句不应说是结果从句 (adverbial clause of result/effect)，它不是回答 To what effect? 而是回答 What presumption (to be ruled out)? 它表示从被否定情况得出的推论，可以称为推论从句 adverbial clause of inference (参见 Erades, p.155)。

Where is he *that* you (should) come without him?
他在什么地方？你怎么没和他一起来？

What have I done *that* he should cut me? (岩波)
我干了什么事伤了他？他怎么不理我了呢？

Do you have any sense of beauty *that* you should praise such paintings? (RHD) 你有一点审美观感没有？你怎么会赞美这种画呢？

Have you nothing to do *that* you are sitting here idle? (Erades, p.154) 你一点可干的事都没有吗? 怎么就闲坐在这儿呢?

以上四句的主句都是疑问句。从句不应说是结果从句, 它不是回答 *To what effect?* 而是回答 *Seeing what consequence (that gives rise to the doubt)?* 它表示由某可疑事项造成的情况, 据以推想其原因, 也可以归为推论从句。

另外, 用于若干形容词及分词后、原属名词从句性质的介词宾语 *that* 从句, 由于介词的省略, 也形成了状语从句(见2.15)。这些状语从句表示形容词及分词所指属性、状态的关系方面或造成原因, 可分别称为方面从句 (*adverbial clause of respect/restriction*; 参见 Zandvoort, p.219) 与原因从句:

Are you aware of the difficulty? Are you aware (of 现已不用) *that* there is a difficulty? (LDCE) (方面从句, 回答 *What in relation/respect to?* 如问 *What in respect to are you aware?* 即答 *I am aware (in respect) that...*) 你知道这种难处吗? 你知道这里面有难处吗?

Are you certain of/about *that*? I'm certain *that* he saw me. (ALD) (方面从句) 关于这一点, 你能肯定吗? 我肯定他看见我了。

She is confident/convinced *that* he is honest. (方面从句可修饰分词) 她确信他是诚实的。

I'm sorry *that* I caused you such annoyance. (原因从句) 对不起, 我给您添了这些麻烦。She is annoyed *that* you are going. (岩波) (原因从句可修饰分词) 因为你要走, 她很苦恼。

和以上所述能引导多种状语从句的连词 *when*、*while*、*if*、*in case*、*that* 比较起来, 连词 *as* 能够引导的状语从句种类更多。连词 *as* 除引导大家较熟悉的时间从句、方式从句、比较从句外, 还能引导方面从句、依照从句、对照从句、比例从句, 这几

种从句都属于表示事物横向联系的“对应关系”状语从句（方式从句、比较从句亦属“对应关系”状语从句这一大类）。而且，连词as还能引导属于表示事物纵向联系的“因果关系”状语从句一大类的原因从句与让步从句。另外，连词as还常引导一些惯用短句，作为一种特殊的语气状语从句。

1) as引导方式从句(adverbial clause of manner; 回答How? In what manner?)

Do as you would be done by. 你要人怎样待你，你就要怎样待人。

Do in Rome as the Romans do. (谚语) 入乡随俗。

I bought the house just as it stood/was. (岩波) 这房子当时没有装修，原样不动，我就买了它。

All was as it had been. (RHD) (was是实意动词，不是联系动词) 一切都和原先一样。

That is as it should be. (Zandvoort) (is是实意动词，所接是方式从句，不是表语从句) 那就应该是这个样子。

2) as引导比较从句(adverbial clause of comparison; 回答What in comparison with?)

He is not so old as she (is). (not so...as...只表示主语属性、特征的程度较低) 他的年龄没有她那么大。

He is not as old as she (is), but much older. 他的年龄和她的不一样大，而是比她的大得多。

He isn't as old as she (is). (isn't后多用副词as，而不用so) 他的年龄没有她那么大。(也可能意思是“他的年龄和她的不同”，也许较小，也许较大)

I am not as old as people would think (I am). (对上下文所肯定的同等程度比较加以否定时多用 not as...as...) 我不是人们往往认为我是的那么大年龄。

Do you think I'll believe him? I'm not as foolish as all that. 你以为我(那么傻)会相信他吗? 我还没有傻到

那个程度。

3) *as* 引导方面从句 (adverbial clause of respect/restriction; 回答 What in relation/respect to? In what sense? With what restriction? 等)

She is really quite good as girls go. (RHD) 作为女孩子说来, 她就满不错了。

She is not a bad servant as/so far as servants go. 作为仆人说来, 她不是一个很不好的女仆。

He meant no harm, as I understand him. 就我对他的理解说来, 他毫无恶意。

His criticism, as I remember, was highly esteemed. 我记得, 他的评论受到大家的高度重视。

Their position, as (it is) compared with what it was, has been improved. 他们的境况和过去相比已有改善。

4) *as* 引导依照从句 (adverbial clause of accordance; 回答 What in accordance with?)

She sang as (she had) promised. (并非回答 In what manner?) 按她答应过的那样, 她唱了歌。

They said that the demonstration would go on as (it had been) planned. 他们说游行还要按原计划进行。

He left as (he had) agreed (to leave). (RHD) 他按他同意过的那样离开了。

5) *as* 引导对照从句 (adverbial clause of contrast; 回答 What in contrast to?)

As I would not be a slave, so I would not be a master. (Lincoln) (并非回答 What in comparison with?) 我既不愿做奴隶, 也就不愿意做奴隶主。

He was as popular as his father (was) not. (RHD) 他为人们喜爱, 正如他父亲不招人喜欢那样。(如前一 *as* 特别重

读，强调平等程度比较，则后面为比较从句：他的父亲非常不招人喜欢，他却同样不寻常地为人们喜爱。）

She is as innocent as she is pretty. (RHD) 她既是秀美可爱，又是天真无邪。（重点在主句表语）

Two is to four as eight is to sixteen. 二比四等于八比十六。

Reading is to the mind as food is to the body. 读书对于心灵的重要性犹如食物对于身体。

Leaves are to the plant as/what lungs are to the animal. As lungs are to the animal, so are leaves to the plant. 叶子对于植物说来，犹如肺对于动物一样。

6) as引导比例从句(adverbial clause of proportion; 回答What in proportion to?)

One grows wiser as one grows older. The older one grows, the wiser one becomes. (详见5.6) 人们年龄越大，懂的事就越多。

7) as引导原因/理由从句(adverbial clause of cause/reason); 回答Why? (as/since从句指听者已知的原因，多前位；指听者未知的原 因用 because…，前或后位) For what reason?)

As he was young/Young as he was, he was not equal to that task. (RHD) 因为他还年轻，他不能胜任这一工作。

As he was tired/Tired as he was, he went to bed at once. 因为很累，他马上就睡了。

As I know him well/Knowing him as I do, I know what he would do. (岩波) 因我很了解他，我知道他要怎么办。(三句仅句首的as可换作since，用since为正式说法)

8) as引导让步从句(adverbial clause of concession; 回答What granted/conceded?)

Young *as* he was/Though he was young, he knew some family secrets. 虽然他还幼小, 他也知道家里一些秘密。

Tired *as/though* he was, he sat up late studying last night. 虽然很累, 他昨夜还是学习到很晚才睡。

Interesting *as* the book does the ordinary reader/Although the book interests the ordinary reader, it yet fails to please literary critics. 这本书虽然使普通读者很感兴趣, 却未能取悦于文学评论家们。

Try *as* she would/Though she tried hard, she could never remember a word of what he said. (RHD) 她费了很大的劲回想, 却怎么也想不起来他说的话了。

9) *as* 引导语气从句 (adverbial clause of modality) —— “语气”指说话人对所述客观情况附加的主观看法、主观说明 (情态动词或称语气动词只是表明所述属于可能、须要或必然的主观看法, 语气副词可表示更多语气意义)。因状语包括修饰或限定动词、形容词、副词、介词短语以至全句的各种词语及结构, 所以, 表示语气的副词、短语及短句也都归为状语成分。语气状语从句多修饰整个主句; 因它是说话人附加的主观说明, 所以就原句客观情况提出的各种问题, 都不会是针对语气状语从句 (或其他形式语气状语) 的; 只有就说话人的看法提问, 才能针对语气从句 (或其他形式语气状语)

You are wrong, *as it appears*. (从句回答针对说话人看法提出的问题 Are you sure in saying so? 它不是表示主句情况与任何客观事物的关系特征, 而是表示说话人对该情况不敢十分肯定, 比较: Probably/Methinks/Quite likely/I'm afraid, you are wrong.) 看来, 你错了。

He is my best friend, my second self, *as it were*. 他是我最好的朋友, 可以说, 是我的贴心人。

As it chanced, he was absent on that particular day. 真是凑巧, 就是那一天他没有到。

As luck would have it, I arrived in Paris just on the day of her departure. 好象是命里安排, 我来到巴黎正好是在她离开巴黎的那一天。

This man, as you know, is good for nothing. (*as you know*意为“如你所知”, 不同于*you know*, 后者意为“你应该知道”, 亦可用作语气状语) 这个人, 正如你所知道的那样, 是个无用的废物。

除一些惯用短句外, 很多惯用的短语如*to tell the truth, to sum up, generally speaking, in a word, in fact, as a matter of fact/course* (介词短语) 等, 也用作语气状语。不同形式的语气状语, 意义可很相近:

as it appears/apparently/meseems/I believe

as it were/so to speak/you may say so

frankly (speaking)/putting it frankly/to tell the truth

She is 30, if a day/undoubtedly/sure enough/to be sure.

He'll come, certainly/naturally/(as a matter) of course.

5.4 *as/than*从句与*as/than*短语

英语引导状语从句的连词, 有很多兼为介词、副词, 如*before, after, since, as, than*等 (*than*仅可兼作连词、介词两种词类)。作为副词, 本身即为句中状语; 作为介词, 与名词性成分构成介词短语状语或定语等; 而作为连词, 则引导状语从句。

*before, after, since*用作副词:

He said: "I got here long ago." He told me he had got there long before. 他说: “我早到了。”他告诉我他早到了。

I was never so treated, either *before* or *after*. 我从来没受过这样的待遇，那以前和以后都没受过。

How long *since* is/was it? (岩波) How long ago was it? (《现代》) 那是多久以前的事?

Her husband died ten years ago but she's *since* remarried. (LDCE) 她丈夫十年前死去，但以后她又结婚了。

It happened long *since/ago*. (《综合》) It happened many years *since/ago*. 事情发生在很久/多年以前。

He went abroad and has stayed there ever *since*. 他到国外去了，从那以后一直住在国外。

before, *after*, *since* 用作介词:

Before long he met a fisherman. 不久他遇见一个渔夫。

He will get here *before* long. 他不久就会到这儿。

He arrived *after* 4 hours. 过了四个小时之后，他来到了。(比较 He arrived 4 hours *after*. “四个小时以后，他来到了。”句中 *after* 为副词)

He will arrive *after* 4. 他将在四点以后到达。(比较 He will arrive in 4 hours. 他过四个小时到达。)

It is a long time *since* breakfast. 早饭到现在已经是很长时间了。

Since his departure I've heard from him twice. 从他离开之后，我收到过他两次来信。

It had been only 3 weeks *since* her divorce. 从她离婚到那时，只有三个星期。

before, *after*, *since* 用作连词:

That was (long) *before* I came. (Palmer) 那是我来以前(很久)的事。

4 hours *after* he arrived, he began to work. 他到

达后四个小时，开始工作了。

How long is it *since* he left/was in London? 从他离开/不在伦敦到现在有多长时间了?

*as*用作副词（与*also*同源，有*to the same degree*等）含义：

A rose by any other name would smell *as* sweet. 一朵玫瑰花即使叫作别的什么名称，它将同样芬芳。

She waited for 5 minutes, and they seemed *as* many hours. (RHD) 她等了五分钟，这五分钟好象是五小时。

He meant no harm, and I meant *as* little. 他毫无恶意，我也毫不恶意。

I'll pay five times *as* much. 我将给那五倍的价钱。

He runs swiftly enough, but I can run *as* swiftly. 他跑得够快的，可是我也能跑那么快。

He is not so/*as* old as he looks. (后一个*as*为连词) 他看样子岁数很大，实际没有那么大。

最常作连词的*as*在十二世纪以前只是副词，与副词*also*源出同一古英语词（意为*all so*）；十二世纪起，*as*可兼作连词；到十三世纪才出现*as*作介词接名词、代词的用法（参见WNNCD）。而*than*在十二世纪以前只是连词，后因所引导比较从句常被省略得只剩一个名词或代词，使*than*常被误为介词接用宾格代词，约十六世纪时，接宾格用法已较普遍，就可以承认*than*能兼作介词了（ib）：

He was treated *as* a friend (is). (井上；连词*as*引导的方式从句*as a friend is treated*可略作*as a friend is*，但一般都省略到*as*后只剩下*a friend*，使*as*转而成为引导名词的介词) 人们把他看作友人，给予接待。

She runs *as* fast *as* Paul (does). (LDCE) (比较从句) 她跑得和保罗一样快。

She runs as fast as I (do)/as me. (ib) (比较从句或表示比较的介词短语) 她跑得和我一样快。

He is { as intelligent as
more intelligent than } she/her. (GCE) 他

和她一样聪明/他比她更聪明。

...a man no mightier than thyself or me. (Shakespeare) 一个不过象你本人或我这样平凡之人

...a writer than whom there is none finer.
(WNWD) 一位无可比拟的优秀作家

以上各句的主句中只有一个名词或代词，作为比较从句所比的对象（或者是句子主体中只有一个名词或代词作为表示比较的介词短语所比的对象），各句意义明确而无歧义。但当主句（或句子主体）中有两个名词或两个代词，或是有一名词还有一代词时，则省略得只剩一个名词或代词的比较从句（或表比较的介词短语）就可能造成句子的歧义：

She likes them as much as Paul (likes them). 她象保罗一样喜欢他们。She likes them as much as (she likes) Paul. 她喜欢他们象喜欢保罗一样。

He loves the dog more than his wife (loves the dog.) 他比他的妻子更爱这只狗。He loves the dog more than (he loves) his wife. 他更爱这只狗，对妻子都不这么疼爱。（如在than后使用代词，则非正式说法可用同一than her表示以上两种不同意义，仅靠上、下文或具体情景辨明实际所指：He loves the dog more than her. (GCE, p.769) 而英语正式说法中前、后两种意义要分别以than she和than her表示：He loves the dog more than she. He loves the dog more than her. 后者为...than he loves her之略。)

He attacked the Government more than us. 在非正式说法，可指“他对政府比我们对政府攻击得更厉害。”也可能

指“他对政府比对我们攻击得更厉害。”在正式英语,该表达法只能指后一种意义: *He attacked the Government more than (he did) us.* 而前一种意义要表达为: *He attacked the Government more than we.* 或为...*than we did.* (GCE)

歧义句固然应该避免,应补足因省略而会使人误解的词语,但更多用到的还是省略形式。两种情况必须在某方面是同一的,才能在别的方面进行比较,而主、从句中指同一事物的词语多不必重复。比较从句全无所略的较少:

Bill speaks French worse than he writes it. (he代Bill, it代French) 比尔说法语比他用法文写东西还更差些。

James knows more about films than Susan does about music. (does代knows) 詹姆斯对电影的了解胜于苏珊对音乐的了解。

Martin was as impatient as he was stubborn. 马丁特别固执,他的不耐烦也同样特别突出。(重点在主句表语)

His voice is as thin as he is fat. (RHD) 他本人非常肥胖,他的声音同样不同寻常地那么尖细。

Mary is cleverer than Jane is pretty. (GCE) 玛丽的聪明比珍妮的漂亮更为出众。(clever与pretty皆属出众)

The teacher speaks more quickly than the students can take notes. 教师讲得太快,学生赶不上记。(speaks与can take notes相通)

Ogden played the piano more skilfully than his fellow-countryman conducted the orchestra. (GCE) 奥格登演奏钢琴演奏得比他的同胞指挥乐队更为出色。(played与conducted同属音乐演出)

比较从句与主句的谓语或表语多是相通的,这时从句谓语或表语多要略去,或只留不同的助动词、情态动词、联系动词(主、从句主语指同一人或事物时,从句主语用代词):

Tom came home as early as he could. (不说... as

he could come.) 汤姆尽可能早些回到家来。

I got up later than I *ought to*. (不说... than I ought to get up.) 那天我起得比应该起床的时间晚些。

John is lazier than (he) ever (*was*). (不说... than he ever was lazy.) 约翰现在比以前任何时候都更懒了。

当主、从句谓语或表语相通而主语不同时，比较从句多省略得只剩主语，或仅带一个助动词、情态动词、联系动词：

This box is three times as heavy *as the other*.
(可带—*is*; ...*as the other is*. 但多不带) 这个盒子是那个盒子重量的三倍。

Few people were as shy *as he (is)*. (岩波) (如带 *is* 时，*he* 仍轻读；无 *is* 时，*he* 要重读) 很少有人象他这样腼腆。

Jane would do it much more quickly *than I (would)*. 珍妮如果干这个活，会比我干得快得多。

You've been working harder *than we (have)*. 你工作得一直比我们更努力。

James enjoys the theatre more *than Susan (does)*.
(GCE; 不能说... *than Susan enjoys*. 但可以说... *than Susan enjoys it*.) 詹姆斯比苏珊更喜欢看戏。

下面十句中都用了惯用的比拟表现法，比较从句都是只由 *as* 引导一个主语，可注意前后具相同开头辅音与相同元音的词：

Mother is always as *busy as a bee*. 母亲总是忙这忙那。

He is as *crooked as a corkscrew*. 他这个人完全是邪门歪道。

That lad is as *green as grass*. 那孩子太幼稚。

The laborer was as *hungry as a hawk/hunter*. 那雇工饿得象饿狼一般。

I thought Tom had gone to Europe. There he is, as *large as life*. 我以为汤姆到欧洲去了。他却明明白白在那。

儿呢!

Keep your eye upon him, He's as mad as a March hare. 对他要加点小心。他到处撒野象个起性的兔子。

The fool was as pleased as Punch/as proud as a peacock. 那傻瓜高兴得象滑稽木偶老潘趣/象孔雀般洋洋得意。

I must dry some seaweed and line this crevice. I could be as snug as a bug in a rug, 我得把海草晒干垫在这个石崖裂缝里。躺在这儿, 我会舒服得象臭虫躲在毛毯里。

I never came across such a closely-knit family before. They are as thick as thieves. 我从来没碰到过这样关系密切的一个家族。他们太亲密了。

The two brothers are physically as like as two peas in a pod, but are as different like/as chalk and cheese in their natures. 这哥俩个外表上一模一样象一个豆荚里的两颗豌豆, 可是性情上却象白垩和奶酪一样有本质的不同。

5.5 比较从句中可以或惯于省略的种种情况

比较从句略去主语者较少, 但惯略主语的用法颇应注意。现按所略为主语、谓语等、表语等、宾语等分述如下(注意有些可略可不略, 但有些是惯于略去, 不再“补足”的):

1) 从句只略掉主语

从句惯于略去可理解的主语it、what等:

There were not so many tickets available as was expected. (Wood; ...as it was expected (that) there would be. 略去it与所引导从句中的主语从句) 没弄到原想能弄到的那么多票。

There were more casualties than was reported.

(...than it was reported that there were.) 伤亡人数比报告的伤亡数字要多。

I decided that I would stay no longer *than was absolutely necessary*. (...no longer than what (the time that) was necessary. 参见Jespersen, MEG, III, p.179; 因what引导的是名词从句, 这里than实属介词性质, what从句或带定语从句的名词the time为介词宾语) 我决定, 绝对必须停留几天就只停留几天, 决不久留。

Don't eat more *than (what) is good for you*. 吃东西适可而止, 不要过量。

I have done more *than (what) is required*. 我所完成的已超出了要求我完成的任务。

比较: Nothing could give me greater pleasure *than what you have just told me*. (Wood, CEU; Wood解释说, 该what名词从句所带的does省略了, 不略时应为: ...than what you have just told me does. 或...than that does which you have just told me. 实际上what从句后“所略”动词等皆不再用, 所以说than已转属介词, 见本书5.4更多类似用例) 你刚才告诉我的使我太高兴了, 别的什么也不能使我更高兴的。

从句略去与主句主语重复的主语:

There were not so many tickets available *as were asked for*. (Wood; ...as tickets were asked for. 惯略) 没有弄到人们所要的那么多票。

There were more people present *than were/was expected*. (...than there were people expected. 或...than it was expected that there would be (many people). 皆惯略) 出席的人比预料的的多。

Both houses were as clean *as (they) could be*. (可略) 两所房子都极其干净。

Progress has not been as fast as (it) *had been hoped (to be)*. (可略) 没有取得原来希望取得的那么快的进展。

The town offers better cultural advantages *than (it) has been generally supposed (to offer)*. 这个城市提供的文化生活要比一般设想的更好一些。

2) 从句略去与主句谓语等重复的成分

从句可略去与主句谓语重复的谓语:

Fred doesn't calculate so accurately *as Arthur (does)*. 弗列德计算得不如亚瑟精确。

He drives faster and more dangerously *than you (do)*. 他比你开车开得快, 也比较危险。

She plays with him *as a cat (plays) with a mouse*. (方式从句, 非比较从句) 她玩弄他就象猫玩弄耗子。

从句可略去重复的主语、谓语 (留宾语、状语):

Tom hates him as much *as (he hates) me*. 汤姆象恨我一样恨着他。

The photographs disappointed my parents more *than (they did) me*. 这些照片使我父母比我更失望。

She works as carefully *as (she does) quickly*. (LDCE) 她的工作干得很快, 也同样是很细心的。

I have always lived more in the future *than (I have lived) in the present*. (RHD) 我总是生活在对未来的想象中, 而不大考虑自己生活在今天的现实中。

从句惯于略去重复的主语、助动词或情态动词:

I would just as soon stay at home *as go*. (岩波; ...as I would go.) 如不去/与其去, 我倒愿留在家里。

(Things are) Easier said *than (they are) done*. 好说不好办。

I would rather/sooner die *than yield*. (...than I

would yield.) 我宁愿死, 也决不屈服。

His delight can be more easily conceived *than* (it can be) *described*. 他的欢乐心情不难想象, 却难以形容。

3) 从句略去与主句表语等重复的成分

从句惯于略去与主句表语重复的表语:

They were as anxious as *he was* (anxious). 他们象他一样焦急。

You will find these dates taste better *than* (what) *they look* (to be). (Onions) 你将发现这些枣虽然看样子不大好, 吃着却比较好吃。

He is a better man *than* (what) *you'll ever be!*
(RHD) 你是永远也不会做到成为他这样的好人的!

从句略去重复的联系动词、表语:

To go ahead resolutely and fail is not so bad as *not to try at all* (is). (句末表语惯略) 坚决前进即使失败也比无所作为要好。

He is better qualified to teach me *than I* (am qualified to teach) *him*. 要说我有资格教他, 不如说他有资格教我。

从句惯于略去可理解的主语、联系动词:

I'll come as early as (it is) *possible* (for me to come). 我将尽可能早来。

You arrived earlier *than* (it was) *usual/necessary* (for you to arrive)* (GCE) 你到得比平常早/比你必须来到的时间早些。

从句略去重复的主语、联系动词、表语 (只留状语):

He is as diligent as *ever*, (可以说...as he ever was before. 但一般不再重复表语: ...as he ever was diligent before.) 他现在还是象以前一样勤奋。

She trembled lest he might be as cold to her as

(he had been) *formerly*. (表语惯略) 她颤抖着, 害怕他会象以前那样, 对她那么冷冰冰的。

He is fonder of work *than* (he is fond) of play.
他喜欢工作胜过他喜欢玩。

She is better *than* (she was) when I wrote you last. (主语、系词可略, 表语惯略; 比较从句连词后只留状语从句) 她现在比我上次给你写信时好些了。

4) 从句略去与主句宾语等重复的成分
从句可略去与主句宾语等重复的宾语:

I haven't done as much as I should have liked (to do). (不再重复代词much; ...as I should have liked to do much.) 我本想多干些工作, 却没有干那么多。

They are as firm as one could expect (them to be). (them to be firm中的firm一般不再重复; 从句复合宾语和主句主语、谓语重复) 人们期望他们十分坚决, 他们真是十分坚决。

She may be as lucky as she hopes (that she will be). (比较从句所含宾语从句和主句主语、联系动词、表语重复) 她希望自己幸运, 她真可能那么幸运。

More (people) know Tom Fool *than* Tom Fool knows (so many people). (从句宾语和主句主语重复) 认识傻瓜汤姆的人比傻瓜汤姆认识的人要多。

I felt more excited *than* I can say (that I felt).
(比较从句所含宾语从句和主句主语、联系动词、表语重复) 我感到说也说不出的那么异常激动。

He gets more orders *than* we ever manage to (get).
(GCE; 略去从句宾语to get中的get) 他接到的订货数总多于我们一向所能接到的订货数。She enjoyed it much more *than* I expected (her to). (ib) 我没想到她喜欢这个, 她却是非常喜欢。

从句可略去重复的谓语、宾语（只留主语）：

You hate him as much as I (hate him). 你象我一样恨他。

I love her more than you (love her). 我比你更爱她。

从句略去重复的主语、谓语、宾语（只留状语）：

They have produced twice as much sugar as (they had) in the previous season. (现代) 他们这一季的糖产量是上一季的二倍。

He described the scene as vividly as (he would have done) if he had been there. (Eckersley) (比较从句连词后只留状语从句) 他把那情景描述得活灵活现、好象他曾在场一般。

I would liefer choose a wife for myself than (I would) for your son. (RHD) 我更愿意给我自己找个媳妇，而不是给你儿子找媳妇。

He deceived us worse than (he would have) if he had told us an outright lie. (比较从句连词后只留状语从句) 他这样欺骗我们，比直接撒谎还要恶劣。

关于 as 一词用作介词的详细用法，接形容词、分词、不定式、介词短语的用法，以及 as 引导宾语补语、主语补语的用法，见 7.2, 7.3。

5.6 用连词 as 与不用连词引导的比例从句

语法上讲的关联词 (connectives) 包括作为虚词的连词，与作为实词的连接代词、连接副词、关系代词、关系副词等，即包括所有能引导从句或连接并列分句、并列词语的虚词与实词（见 2.3 最后一段）。

有些多功能关联词，可具实词性质，也可属虚词性质。如 that、as 用作关系代词时为实词，就在定语从句中担任名词性成

分 (that、as还可用作副词,担任句中状语,见7.1,7.2;5.4); that、as用作连词时就转化为虚词而不担任从句中任何成分。

状语从句一般是由各种连词引导的,但是一种较特殊的比例从句却可以不用连词引导,而是最常用连接副词 **the** 引导。所接主句中也用一个 **the** 与从句的 **the** 相呼应,不过这主句的 **the** 属于指示副词性质:

The more I see of the man, the more I like him.

(前面从句的 **the** 相当 **How much**... 之类,起连接作用;后面主句的 **the** 相当 **so much**... 之类,起指示作用: **How much more I see of the man, so much more I like him.**) 我越是经常见到这个人,我越是喜欢他。

比较连接副词 **However** 的连接作用: **However often I see the girl, I do not like her.** 无论我多么经常见到这位姑娘,我也不喜欢她。

但是,更应着重讨论的是:比例复合句不只“**The + 形容词/副词比较级... , the + 形容词/副词比较级...**”这样一种形式。比例从句也可以用连词 **as** 引导(最初就是用 **as** 引导的),还可以用 **WH-**形式连接代词/连接副词词组(如 **By how much**、**To what extent** 等)引导。**as** 引导的比例从句与其主句中可能没有比较级形式,却也表示两情况相关连而发生相应变动。即使用 **the** 引导比例从句时,主句也不一定总是以 **the**... 开头:主句的 **the**... 可能在句末,也可能主句中比较级并不加 **the**; 而且,并不总是从句在前,也可能是主句在前。

这里,首先按引导比例从句所用的三种不同连词或连接代词,分述如下:

1) 用连词 **as** 引导比例从句

主、从句都没有比较级形式的:

As time went on, (so) their hopes began to wane.
(GCE) (从句并非要说明“与某事同时”,而是要说明“随该

变动而……”）随着时间的消逝，他们的希望开始减退。

One advances in modesty as one advances in knowledge. 一个人越是有学问，他越是谦虚。

As the strength of the defenders failed, (so) the courage of the attackers grew. 守卫的一方力量越是衰微，进攻的一方勇气就越增长。

Her anger grew as she talked on. (意为 'The more she talked, the more angry she became.) 她越说越生气。

从句中没有比较级形式的：

As he grew up, he became more cautious. (Zandvoort) 随着他渐渐长大，他也越来越谨慎。(比较As he grew older, he became more cautious. (ib)

We can earn more or less (in proportion) as we work (better or not so well). 按我们工作的好坏，我们可能挣得多些或少些。

主、从句都有比较级形式的：

As the lark rose higher, he sank deeper in thought. (Jespersen) (并非要说明两情况发生在同时，而是要说明两变动的程度相当) 那云雀越是高高地飞向空中，他越是深深地陷入沉思。

As he grew richer, he grew more ambitious. 他越是富有，他的野心就越大。

As you go farther north, (so) the winters become longer and more severe. 越往北去，冬天越长也越是寒冷。

As the lane got narrower, (so) the overhanging branches made it more difficult for us to keep sight of our quarry. (GCE) 那小道越窄，低垂的树枝就越发使我们难以追踪我们的猎物。

2) 用WH-形式词组引导比例从句:

To what extent you work harder, to that extent you earn more. (The harder you work, the more you earn.) 你工作得越努力, 你挣的就越多。

By how much the better man you are yourself, by so much the more will you be inclined to believe me. (Fielding) 如果你是一个好人, 你这人越好, 你就越会相信我。(比较主句中用 *inasmuch* 或 *by so much*, 而从句用 *as* 引导的比例复合句: *We were the more free inasmuch as we made it clearer that he was rather a weak man than a wicked.* 我们渐渐弄清他并不是很凶恶的、却是很衰弱的人, 我们就越发随便了。 *But by precisely so much as his power is diminished, the hired workman's power is increased.* (Jespersen) 正是随着他的权力一点点减小, 那雇工的权力一点点增长。)

3) 用连接副词 *the* 引导比例从句

主句在前 (主句无指示副词 *the*, 或该 *the*... 在主句末尾):

They liked the book better the more it made them cry. 那书越是总让他们流泪, 他们越是喜欢那书。

I succeeded less and less the older I grew. 我年龄越大, 我的事业就越来越不顺利。

His face darkened more and more the more he and my aunt observed each other. (Jespersen) 他和我的姑姑越是相对望着, 他的脸色就越发阴沉。

One wants the more, the more one has. (= *The more one has, the more one wants.* 岩波) 越有钱, 越贪婪。

An object draws the harder, the more matter it contains. 物体的质量越多, 吸引力就越大。

It was the darker the farther we advanced into

the wood. 他们越往树林里头走去, 就越黑暗。

I believe in the absolutism of evil *the more, the more* I see of evil men and women. 我越常见到邪恶的人们, 我就越是相信人性邪恶的绝对论。

从句在前 (主句无指示副词 *the*, 或该 *the...* 在主句开头):

The more you read of them, you will like them still better. (Jespersen) 你越是更多读到关于他们的叙述, 你就越是喜欢他们。

The more we think about it, *the less* we know.

(*the less* 主句宾语提前, 部分倒装) 我们越是仔细考虑此事, 越是什么也不明白。

The more often a man has been in prison, *the more likely* he is to return there. (*the more likely* 主句表语提前, 部分倒装) 一个人越是经常坐牢, 他就越容易回到那里去。

The more my life disappointed me, *the more solemn and wonderful* it became to me. (主句表语提前) 生活越是使我失望, 我越是觉得生活庄严而美好。

The more you read, *the better* you will write.

(*the better* 主句状语提前, 亦属部分倒装) 你读得越多, 就写得越好。

随着主句 *the...* 后位成分的提前, 主句主语、谓语 (或主语、联系动词) 也常倒装, 或部分倒装即只是助动词、情态动词提到主语前边:

The more you read, *the better will you* write.

The noisier they were, *the better was he* pleased. 他们喧闹得越厉害, 他就越高兴。

The more I know of the world, *the more am I* convinced of it. 我对世故了解得越多, 我越发深信这一点。

The more learned a man is, *the more modest* he

is/is he. 一个人越是有学问，他就越是谦虚。

The more I listened, the more I laughed/*did I laugh*. (主句原无助动词者主语前加do的适当形式) 我越往下听，越是大笑不已。

The harder he worked, the happier he felt/*did he feel*. 他的工作越努力，他就觉得越幸福。

当主句主语是名词时，特别是较长名词或名词词组，更常用主谓倒装、部分倒装语序：

The later you arrive, the worse the food is/*is the food*. 你来得越晚，饭菜就越差。

The farther north you go, the more severe the winters are/*are the winters*. 越往北去，冬天越冷。

The greater the distance is through which the water falls, the greater is the power developed. 水落下的距离越大，所产生的电力就越大。

The more their capital grew, the more determined *did Parliament* become not to interfere. (井上) 他们的资本增长得越多，国会就越发不会加以干预。

在最常用的The..., the...型比例复合句中，从句、主句的联系动词be (限定形式) 多可略去，有时只是从句或只是主句有该联系动词而被省略：

The greater the danger (is), the more daringly he drove ahead. 危险越大，他越是英勇向前。

The smaller the particles (are), the more freely do they move. 粒子越小，运动得就自由。

The higher up (you climb), the greater the fall (will be). 爬得越高，跌得越重。

The smaller the mind, the greater the conceit. 越是胸怀狭小，越是妄自尊大。

The nearer the bone, the sweeter the meat. (谚

语) 越是快啃到骨头, 肉越香。问题深处兴味浓。

The later the publication, the more modern the knowledge that it imparts. 越是最近的出版物, 它所传达的知识越是现代的。

甚至有时主句或从句中可理解的主语与联系动词或其他动词一起略去:

The longer you stay, the better (it will be). 你呆的时间越久越好。

The sooner (you come)/The more (there is), the better (it is/will be). 越快越好/越多越好。

The older the goose (is), (it is) the harder to pluck. (谚语) 鹅越老, 毛越难拔。越老越吝啬。

The more (people there are), the merrier (things become/the company will be). 人越多, 越快活。

The more haste, the less speed. (谚语) 欲速则不达。

5.7 表示因果关系的各类从句性质相通

前述表示事物与外界的对应(横向)关系的各类状语从句是性质相仿的:

She did as I told her. (方式从句) 她就按我说的那样作的。

She did it as she had promised. (依照从句; 并非表示“怎样”) 她如约办了此事。

She did as skilfully as I. (比较从句) 她干得象我一样熟练。

She did quite well, as girls go. (方面从句; 表示“从哪方面、哪种意义上说”) 就姑娘而言, 她干得满好。

She did better and better as I kept telling her more about the work. (比例从句) 关于这一工作, 我对她

讲得越多，她干得就越好。

而下述表示事物与外界的因果（纵向）关系的各种状语从句则是性质相通的。

例如，与原因从句性质相通的有理由从句（**adverbial clause of reason**；主观推理中的原因）、条件从句（客观或主观上限定的原因）、让步从句（客观或主观上排除的原因）：

Because/As/Since it has rained, the ground is wet.
(原因从句)

As/Since it has rained, the ground must be wet.
(理由从句；顺推理) 一般不用because表示理由，见1.1

If it has rained, the ground must be wet. (条件从句)

Though it has rained a little, the ground is no longer wet now. (让步从句)

以上是因果顺述或是从原由到结论的顺推理；以下则是从理据到设想原由的逆推理（原因从句as/because…亦可后置，形成从果到因的“逆推”，而结果从句只能后置，见1.2及下文）：

As/Since the ground is wet, it must have rained.
(理由从句；逆推理)

If the ground is wet, it must have rained. (条件从句；逆推理)

Though the ground is not wet now, it may as well have rained a little. (让步从句；逆推理)

带原因从句的主从复合句，如果以主句为从句、以从句为主句更换一下，复合句就会成为带结果从句的主从复合句。而与结果从句性质相通的有推论从句（主观推理中的结果，见5.3, 5.8）、目的从句（主观意愿中的结果）、程度从句（主句所述某属性或特征的程度所致的结果）：

It rained heavily, so that the ground is still wet now. (结果从句) 雨下得很大，现在地还湿呢。

It must have rained *that the road is still wet*. (推论从句) 一定是下过雨, 地还湿呢。

Could it have rained *that the road is so dry and dusty*? (推论从句) 路上这么干、这么多尘土, 哪能下过雨呢?

It hasn't rained *that the road should be found wet*. (Is the road really wet? Has somebody sprinkled it with water?) (推论从句) 天没下过雨, 路上怎么会是湿的呢! (真是湿的吗? 是不是有人在路上洒水了!)

We sprinkled the road with water *so that it might not be so dusty*. (目的从句) 我们在路上洒了水, 以免尘土飞扬。(目的从句亦可前置, 结果/推论/程度从句不可)

It rained so heavily *that the ground is still wet now*. (程度从句) 雨下得那么大, (以致) 现在地还湿呢! (或者说 We had such a heavy rain that the ground is still wet now.)

“因”与“果”是纵向关系的两端。*that* 状语从句主要是表示后果这一端的情况, 只是当 *that* 与具相应意义的其他词语连用时, 所构成复合连词, 才能表示起因那一端的情况, 用于引导原因、理由、条件、让步各种状语从句 (参见5.8)。

now that, seeing that 引导原因从句、理由从句:

Seeing that they have just returned from overseas, we made some allowances. (原因) 因为他们刚从海外回来, 我们给了一些特殊照顾。

Seeing that they all say so, it must be true. (理由) 既是他们都这么说, 这一定是真的。

assuming/supposing that 引导条件从句或让步从句, *but that, providing/provided that* 引导条件从句, *granting/granted that* 引导让步从句:

Assuming/Supposing that it rains tomorrow, what

shall we do? (条件) 假定明天下雨, 咱们怎么办?

Assuming/Supposing that he was in his right mind, that was no excuse for his conduct. (让步) 即使他的想法正常而无恶意, 那也决不能为他的行为做丝毫辩解。

Granting/Granted that he said so, he may not keep his promise. (让步) 即使他这样说了, 他也可能不守信用。

至于以单独的that引导原因从句、让步从句的一种句型, 那实为一种带定语从句的结构 (参见3.7, 2)), 那种结构既可以表示评论、感叹, 又可以表示原因、让步。比较:

You recovered the estate easily enough then, robber and rascal that you are! (Jespersen) (robber and rascal是句首you的同位语, 其后that you are实为定语从句; robber and rascal that you are一起表示评论) 那么你轻而易举地弄回了这份产业, 你这强盗、无赖!

Fool that/as he is! (RHD; 感叹) 他真是个傻瓜!

Fool that/as I was, I took his word for it. (评论) 我真傻, 竟然把他的话信以为真。

The carrier was in high spirits, good fellow that he was. (评论, 或者说“原因”) 那搬运工真是个好人的, 他干得兴致勃勃地。

Michael, fool as/that he was, completely ruined the dinner. (GCE; 原因或评论) 迈克尔本是个傻瓜, 他把这次宴会完全糟蹋了。

Field bird that/as it is, the skylark has its nest in the field. (岩波; 原因) 云雀原是田野鸟类, 它的窝就在田野里。

Naked that/as I was, I braved the storm. (GCE; 让步) 我虽然没穿衣服, 却冒着暴风雨冲向前去。

另外, 还有两种以that引导的状语从句比较特殊, 即修饰若

干“动宾”型短语动词的、修饰某些形容词与分词的that从句。用于这两种情况的that从句虽显然起状语作用而属于状语从句，但它们前面原来是带有介词的，它们本是属于名词从句性质的介词宾语从句。现在，所带介词已惯于略去不用，而该that从句仍可象介词短语那样表示关系方面（一种横向联系特征）或表示原因（一种纵向联系特征），就成了that引导的方面从句与原因从句（参见2.15）。

1) 修饰“动宾”型短语动词的方面从句：

Have you made up your mind about what you'll do? (从句前有about) I have made up my mind *that something should be done*. (NDEC) 你下定决心怎么办了吗？我已下定决心要处理此事。

Take care of the suitcases. Take care *that none of them get wet*. (EGS) 注意这些提箱。注意一件也不要弄湿了。

I've no doubt about it. I've no doubt *that you'll understand*. (ib) 这一点我确信无疑。我确信你会懂得的。

2) 修饰形容词、分词的方面从句：

Be careful of the pot. Be careful (*that*) *you don't drop it*. (Hornby) 加小心这个罐子。加小心别掉了。

They were anxious for your return. They were anxious *that you should return*. (ib) 他们着急，盼你回来。

Are you sure/certain/confident of his honesty? Are you sure/certain/confident (*that*) *he's honest*? (ib) 你有把握，他是诚实的吗？

I'm sure *he'll be here on time*. (...sure that he'll be here ...设想可靠) 我确信他会准时到这儿的。

I'm certain *I put the book on the table*. (...certain that I put...肯定无疑) 我肯定把书放在桌上了。

3) 修饰形容词、分词的原因从句:

I'm glad of your success. I'm glad that you've succeeded. 你成功了, 我很高兴。

We're amused at the news. We're amused (to hear) that you've met her at last. (EGS) 这消息使我们很开心。你终于见到她了, (听到) 这使我们很开心。

They were surprised/disappointed at your inability to come. They were surprised/disappointed that you were not able to come. 你没能来, 他们很惊讶/失望。

以上三组因略去介词由介词宾语从句转为状语从句的 *that* 从句, 可与下面一句比较, 下句中 *rejoice* 原为不及物动词 (接 *at/over something*), 所接 *that* 介词宾语从句前的介词略去后, 从句转为宾语从句, *rejoice* 转为及物动词:

We rejoice that they have scored fresh victories.

(《用法》) 我们为他们取得新胜利而欢欣鼓舞。(比较原不及物动词用法: *We rejoice at/over every victory won by your people.* (ib) 我们为贵国人民取得的每一个胜利而欢欣鼓舞。)

5.8 *that* 引导表示“因果”等关系的多种状语从句及其省略

that 是所有从属关联词中用得最广泛的, 又是最常在可用时不用而可以说常被“省略”的关联词 (见 2.17, 3.10)。 *that* 常作为关系代词引导定语从句 (*as* 作为关系代词引导定语从句用得较少), *that* 也常常作为连词引导各种名词从句及状语从句。单独的 *that* 所引导状语从句的种类虽不如单独的 *as* 所引导的状语从句种类那么多 (按不同分类法都多达十种上下), 但 *that* 前加上其他词语形成复合连词所能引导状语从句的类别却比 *as* 状语从句类别还要繁多。更值得注意的是 *that* 及其构成的复合连词引导这么多种状语从句时 *that* 可否“省略”不用的种种情况。

在单独的that引导的各种状语从句中，仅仅是原属介词宾语从句而略去介词形成的状语从句才可省略（或者说根本不用）that——即使是在这一大类原属名词从句的表原因、表方面状语从句（2.15；5.3,5.7），也只限在修饰一些口语或非正式说法常用形容词与分词时，引导从句的连词that才可以略掉不用；而在较正式说法、修饰不太常用的形容词与分词时，以及在修饰其他词语如“动词+宾语”结构时，一般仍保留应该使用的连词that。而且，单独的that用来引导结果/目的/推论/让步从句等多种状语从句时也不能省略。

1) 可略单用的that的原介词宾语从句型表原因、表方面状语从句。

非正式语修饰形容词、分词的原因从句：

I'm sorry(*that*) I can't help you. 对不起，我不能帮你的忙。（比较跟介词的sorry for that/being unable to help）。

We're so delighted / pleased / satisfied / surprised / astonished (*that*) you can come after all. (EGS; 主句中的so可换作very, 并未构成复合连词so...that) (delighted at your coming...) 你到底还是来了, 这使我们很欢喜/很高兴/很惊讶/大吃一惊。

非正式语修饰形容词、分词的方面从句：

I'm sure/certain/positive/afraid (*that*) you will fail. (sure of your failure...) 我肯定/恐怕你要失败。

I'm anxious (*that*) he shouldn't find out. (Swan)
(anxious for him not to find out) 我很担心别让他发现问题。

She's convinced(*that*) he's honest. (convinced of his honesty) 她确信他是诚实的。

2) 不略单用的that的原介词宾语从句型表原因、表方面状语从句。

正式语修饰形容词、分词的原因从句:

I am/feel ashamed *that* you should see me in this state. (ashamed of being seen...) 让您看见我处于这种境况, 我觉得很羞愧。

I am grieved *that* he should be exposed to danger on my account. (grieved about/over the danger) 竟然因为我而使他面临危险, 我很难过。

正式语修饰形容词、分词的方面从句:

She was not aware *that* her husband earned 50 pounds a week. (not aware of the fact) 她并不了解他的丈夫每星期收入五十英镑。

They were determined *that* we should stay in the rear. (were determined on leaving us staying...) 他们已下定决心, 让我们留在后方。

修饰“动词+宾语”结构的原介词宾语从句型原因从句、方面从句:

Do not lose heart *that* you are not successful at first. (Do not lose heart at the want of instant success. NDEC) 不要因为起初不成功就灰心丧气。

Getliffe convinced me *that* Howard was innocent. (convinced me of his innocence) 盖特利非劝说我, 使我相信霍华德是无辜的。

I have no doubt *that* we shall be able to do something for you. (have no doubt about it) 我确信我们一定能给你帮些忙的。

[但有个别例外情况; Take care (*that*) you don't break it. (Palmer) (口语惯用语后) 小心别碰坏了。]

修饰不及物动词的原介词宾语从句型原因从句、方面从句:

There was no doubt *that* he was a fine scholar. (There was no doubt about it.) 毫无疑问, 他是个优秀学

者。

I grieved *that* you should be so angry. (Onions)
你那样生气，使我很难过。

The manager objected *that* it was impossible.
(Swan)(objected for some reason/for its impracticability)
经理反对这种想法，因为这是办不到的。

(比较 I insisted *that* he should come with us. 中
insist 可看作已转为及物动词，而 I insisted on his coming
with us. 中 insist 原为不及物动词；ALD)

that 名词从句前现只能保留 except, in, save 三介词 (2.
13, 2.15)。

3) 不可省略单用的 *that* 的结果从句：

Can you touch pitch *that* you do not defile yourself?
你能摸沥青而不弄脏你的手吗？

Everything seemed to him to be shaping satisfactorily *that* his spirits were at their highest. 他觉得一切都发展得很顺心，于是他极其得意。

(比较 …shaping satisfactorily, so *that*… 逗号后有 so 可略 *that*, 而从句转为并列分句性质，见 1.2。而 …shaping so satisfactorily *that*… 后为程度从句，因其由复合连词 so…*that* 引导，*that* 也可以省略，见本节后面。)

4) 不可省略单用的 *that* 的目的从句：

Bring it closer *that* I may see it better. (较正式说法用 *that* 引导 I may…, LDCE——一般非正式说法 Bring it closer so *that* I can see it better.) 拿近一点，好让我看得清楚。

Man does not live *that* he may eat, but eats *that* he may live. 人活着不是为了吃饭，而是吃饭为了活着。

They hurried *that* they might not miss the train.
(Curme; …in order *that*… 更正式说法, …so *that*… 较随

便说法) 他们急忙赶路, 以免错过这趟火车。

比较 *He hurried so as not to be late.* (岩波) 他急忙赶去, 以免迟到。(但 *so as to...* 并非总是表示目的, 也可以表示结果: *Don't let your radio blare so as to disturb your neighbours.* 还可以表示程度: *He is not so stupid as to do that. We were so fortunate as/were fortunate enough to be in Paris on Bastille Day* (法国庆日). (Hornby) 可看出 *so...that/as to...* 都表示程度)。

5) 不可省略单用的 *that* 的推论从句:

There must be something wrong that he hasn't arrived yet. (比较 *Could there be something wrong that...?*) 一定是出错了, 他还没到。

He must have hurt your feelings that you were so angry with him. (比较 *Had he hurt your feelings that...?*) 他准是刺伤了你的感情了, 你对他那么生气。

I'm not a cow that you should offer me grass. Am I a cow that you should offer me grass? (Hornby) 我不是牛/我是牛吗, 你怎么拿草给我吃呢?

Where were your eyes that you did not see the post? 你瞎了眼啦, 怎么就看不见那个杆子?

6) 非“原介词宾语从句型”的原因从句不可省略 *that* (主句中有“*the + 形容词/副词比较级*”或从句为“*表语/状语 + that/as + 主语...*”形式):

A bad book is the worse that it cannot repent. 坏书由于它不会悔过自责而有害更甚。

The act was the bolder that he stood utterly alone. 因为他完全是单枪匹马, 这一行动就显得更为果敢。

I will assist you the more willingly that/as I owe you a debt of gratitude. (《综合》*the* 条) 由于我记着你对我的恩情, 我更加乐于给你协助。

Teacher *that/as* he is, he is capable of helping you to get prepared for the exam. (*that*实为引导定语从句的关系代词, 见3.7,2); 5.7中间。Teacher *that* he is在一起可看作原因从句) 因为他是教员, 他能帮你准备考试。

Cold *that/as* it is, the children are staying indoors. 由于天冷, 孩子们呆在屋里。

另外, *not that...but that...*型原因从句中的*that*也不能省略: He always travelled third-class, *not that* he was so miserly, *but that* he wanted to go side by side with ordinary people. (常说*It was not that...but that...*其中*It*指原因) 他总是乘三等客车旅行, 不是因为他那么吝啬, 而是因为他要和普通人民在一起坐车。

7) 让步从句不可略去*that*(从句为“表语/状语 + *that/as* + 主语...”形式):

Teacher *that/as* he is, he is not capable of teaching all subjects. (*that...*实引导定语从句; Teacher *that* he is在一起配合主句语义, 可看作让步从句) 虽然他是教员, 他也不是所有的科目都能教。

Cold *that/as* it is, the children are playing outdoors. 天虽很冷, 孩子们还是在外边玩呢。

Different ways *that/as* they are going, they will reach the same destination in about the same time. 他们虽然走的是不同的路, 也会用大约相同的时间到达同一个目的地。(而Different ways *that/as* they are going, they will not get there in the same time. 中所含为原因从句)

8) 非“原介词宾语从句型”的方面从句不可省略*that* (主句为否定句或简略的否定句):

“Any calls for me?”--“Not *that* I know of.”(There has not been any *that* I know of. 之略, 其中*that*实为引导定语从句的关系代词, 见《综合》; 因其表 *so far as* “就

……而言”之意，可看作在此引导方面从句，说明所限方面或涉及方面)“有我的电话吗?”——“据我所知，没有你的电话。”

“Where is she staying now?”--“Not *that* I care.”

(That is not a matter *that* I care. 之略，其中*that*原亦关系代词)“她现在住在哪儿?”——“我不管那事。”

There is no such person *that* I know of. 我是不知道有这么个人的。

He has never been abroad *that* I remember. 我是不记得他到国外去过的。

比较“介词+介词宾语从句”表示方面(in *that*…)以及“原介词宾语从句”前略去介词形成的方面从句与原因从句：

Our protest was successful, *in that*/in so far as the Minister agreed to reconsider the matter. (Close) (方面) 部长同意重新考虑此事，就这一点说来，我们的抗议是成功的。

Take good care of yourself. Be careful (*that*) you don't catch cold. (介词宾语从句略介词而成方面从句) 保重身体。小心不要着凉。

Aren't you thankful for *that*? Aren't you thankful (*that*) your wife has been spared? (Hornby; 原介词宾语从句略去介词而成原因从句) 为了此事，你不是很感激吗? 你的妻子得免于难，你不是很感激吗?

5.9 复合连词“...that”引导十余种状语从句及其中*that*的省略

*that*前加其他词语构成复合连词引导种种状语从句时，该*that*或者可在口语、非正式说法中省略，或者在各种语体都已惯于略去不用；复合连词“...*that*”中的*that*不可略掉的情况是极个别的(如正式说法所用in order *that*)。下面按时间关系、对应关系、因果关系三大类的顺序，列举十一种状语从句前复合连

词“...that”中that可以省略或惯于略去的情况。

1) 时间从句——用by the time (that), once (that), each/every/the first/the next/the last time (that), directly / immediately / the instant / the minute / the moment (that) 等引导 (一般惯略that):

The truck will have arrived *by the time* you have all the things packed up. 等你把东西都包装好, 卡车也就到了。

Once you show any fear, he will attack you. (LDCE) 只要你一露出一害怕的样子, 他马上就要向你进攻。

The last time I heard of him he was in the army. 上次我收到他的来信时, 他还在军队里。

Directly he discovered her, he turned away. 他刚一发现她, 立刻转身走开了。

2) 方式从句——用the way (that) 引导(惯略):

Mary doesn't worry about trifles *the way* her sister does. (未略时应是...in the way that/in which her sister does.) 玛丽不象她姐姐那样为些琐事而烦恼。

3) 方面从句——用considering (that可略), in respect that (属正式用语, 不略) 等引导:

He sees fairly well, *considering* (that) he is sixty years of age. (应是说明In what sense/What in respect to does he see fairly well? 意即He sees fairly well in respect that he is 60 already. 并非说明For what reason? 从句表示片面的关系包括片面的观点, 为方面从句; 表示直接原因或正面理由的才是原因从句或理由从句) 就他现年六十这一点而论, 他的视力还不错。

It is out of the question *in respect that* it stultifies the premeditated plan. 就其与原订计划冲突这一点说来, 那种想法就是办不到的。

4) 原因从句——用*now (that)*, *seeing (that)* 等引导 (可略*that*):

Now (that) I was in the same class as George, I used to be with him all day long. (Close) 由于当时我已和乔治同班, 我总是整天和他在一起。

Seeing (that) it's raining hard, we'll have to stay here for the night. 因为雨下得很大, 我们得在这住一夜。

5) 理由从句——用*now (that)*, *seeing (that)*, *considering (that)* 等引导 (可略*that*):

Now (that)/Seeing (that) the hall is full already, I think the meeting should begin right away. (在此不是表示客观因果关系, 而是表示主观理由与结论关系) 礼堂已经坐满了, 我想会议应该马上开始。

I expected a more enthusiastic welcome, considering (that) it is the first time I have come here. (在此不是片面观点, 而是正面理由) 因为这是我初次来此, 我原想会受到比这更热烈的欢迎。

6) 条件从句——用*so (that)*, *on condition (that)*, *assuming/presuming/supposing/providing/provided (that)*, *but (that)* 等引导 (可略*that*):

So (that) it is done/So long as it is done, it does not matter how. (Zandvoort) 只要事情能办到, 怎么办都没关系。

You may go where you please, so (that) you are back by dinner time. (Curme) 只要你到吃饭的时候回来, 你愿意到哪儿去都可以。

I will let you drive, on condition/providing/provided (that) you have a valid licence. (Close) 你必须有个正式驾驶执照, 我才能让你开车。

He would have said no, but (that) he was afraid.

(LDCE, but与but that二条)如果不是因为害怕,他本来是要说“不行(不对)”的。但从句在前时及正式说法中不可略去that: *But that/Were it not that he has a family, he would have left England long ago.* 他要不是有家小之累,早就离开英国了。*Life would be short, but that hope prolongs it/if hope did not prolong it.* 如果不是希望延长着生命的话,生命会是很短促的。

but (that) 因惯于连用并取得多种固定语义,应看作复合连词,而except/save/in that... (接从句)则是介词加介词宾语从句(介词宾语从句前原先可用的其他介词都已惯于略去,只此三介词仍可保留其前,见2.13,2.15)。比较:

I know nothing about the accident *except what I read in the paper.* 除在报上看到的消息外,我对此事故一无所知。

We know nothing about him *except/save* (后者旧说法) *that he was in the army during the war.* (作为介词except/save不可无that而接从句)除知道他战时在军队里以外,对于他,我们一无所知。

Men differ from brutes *in that they can reason.* 人与野兽之不同,就在于人有理性。

7) 让步从句——用for all (that), granted/granting/admitting/notwithstanding (that) 等引导(可略that):

For all (that) he had worked hard, he failed. 他虽然曾经非常努力,却是失败了。

I would go *notwithstanding (that) he advised me not to.* 虽然他劝我不要,我还是想去。

Granted/Granting/Admitting (that) he has the ability and interest, it does not mean he has the time to do the job. 即使 he 有能力、有兴趣,但这并不意味 he 有时间从事这一工作。

8) 结果从句——用but (that), so/such(that), so/such ... (that) 等引导(可略that):

He never played with them but (that) a quarrel followed. 他每次和他们一起玩, 总是引起一场吵闹。

Such was his condition/His condition was such, (that) he could not be moved. (结果从句中也可有can/could/may/might/shall/should/will/would, 见后) 他情况严重, 不能挪动他。

The world is so made (that) it probably never happens that a person lives who has never had anyone to love him. (so 修饰谓语is made, 后为结果从句; 如so修饰形容词、副词等, 后为程度从句, 见后) 世界上从来就是这样, 大概从来没有一个人活在世上而没有领受过任何人的恩爱的。

9) 目的从句——用in case(that) 引导, that惯于略去; 用for fear (that) 引导, that可以略去; 用in order that引导, 属正式用语, 不可省略that; 用so(that), so/such...(that) 引导, 可略that:

Be quiet in case you (should) wake the baby. (排除该结果的目的, 相当Be quiet so that you may not wake the baby. 参见5.3) 悄悄地, 别惊醒孩子。

He left his most valuable books with me for fear (that)/in case they should get lost. 把他的最珍贵的书放在我这里了, 以免丢失。

in case还能引导其他意义的目的从句及条件从句(5.3):
In case he comes, let me know. 如果他来, 你告诉我一声。

目的从句中多用表示可能或须要的情态动词, 但不是非用不可, 也常见并无情态动词的目的从句:

They will start early in order that they may (正式说法)/can (不大正式)/shall (“定要”或“应该”)/should(应

会) arrive before dark. 他们将早早启程, 以便能够/一定在天黑前赶到。

They started early *in order that* they might/could/should arrive before dark. 他们早早就启程了, 以便能在天黑前赶到。

We ought to write to him *in order that* he *doesn't/won't* feel we're hiding things from him. (Swan, 561)

(也可以说 We wrote to him *in order that* he wouldn't feel...) 我们应该给他写信, 使他不会认为我们有事瞒着他。

We have so arranged matters (that) one of us shall always be on duty. 我们已经做出适当安排, 以便我们一定总有一人值班。

但 *So that* one of us shall always be on duty, necessary arrangements have been made. 中 *that* 不略

10) 程度从句——用(形容词、分词、副词等 + *enough* +) *that* 引导, *that* 不可省略; 用 *so/such* (+ 形容词、分词、副词...) (that) 引导, 可略 *that*:

She is not old enough *that* we can send her with the message. (RHD) 她年龄太小, 我们不能让她送这个信儿。

(原说法: 她还不够我们能让她送信儿的年龄。)

He made *such a* remarkable speech/*so* remarkable a speech (that) he was elected unanimously. 他的演讲非常出色, 以至大家一致选举了他。

I'm so positive minded about the house (that) I would not let anyone else have it. (*so* 修饰分词) 我要这所房子的主意如此坚定, 我不会让别人得到它的。

I've got so many things to do (that) I don't know where to start. (*so* 修饰指量代词 *many*) 我有这么多事要做, 都不知从哪儿着手了。

在表示因果关系“果”这一端关系的四种状语从句中, 除

推论从句只能用单独的that引导(属旧用法)外,其他三种——结果、目的、程度从句——都能用so/such that或so/such...that引导。其中紧连在一起的so that为复合连词,已一起虚词化,不担任句中成分;但such以及so...that中并非紧接that的so并没有虚化,仍然分别作为确定代词与程度副词,担任句中成分,所以严格说来,二者并不是与that构成复合连词。不过,为了便于讨论、便于运用,我们不妨把so/such that与so/such...that都放在这里,研究其中that都可以省略的共同性,无论其用于引导结果从句,目的从句或程度从句。

另一方面,我们看到,so/such that或so/such...that在分别引导这三种从句时,在意义上与在形式上都有所不同,这正是因为三种从句性质上的不同。结果从句表明To what effect之类意义;目的从句表明To what purpose之类意义;而程度从句表明To what extent之类意义。也正因为三者性质各异,才会有but that、in order that、for fear that、(...enough) that等连词或复合连词,各自只能引导三者中的一种从句。

5.10 so/such that或so/such...that引导的三种从句并不以有无情态动词相区别

so that是复合连词;such that与so/such...that都是主从句呼应结构。为了区别以相同或相似的so/such that或so/such...that引导的三种不同从句,有两点应当着重说明。其一是:主句中有没有与so/such相关联的形容词、分词、副词等有程度关系的词语,就是区别从句是否为程度从句的标志。其二是:从句中有没有情态动词,并不是区别从句是否为目的从句的标志。

以下四句的从句中虽都有情态动词,从句却都不是目的从句,而都是程度从句,因为四句话主句中都有与so/such相关联的形容词或副词,各该从句就是在说明那形容词或副词所表属性或特征的程度。

It's such a good chance (that) we mustn't/shouldn't

miss it. 如此良机, 我们一定不能/不应该错过。

He speaks so *rapidly* that we cannot clearly understand him. (…spoke so rapidly that we could not…) 他说得那么快, 我们听不大懂。

He is so *badly* injured that he may/might die. (Curme; 也可用无情态意义的助动词will, 可带语气副词: … that he *will probably* die.) 他伤势那么重, 可能活不成了。

He is so *badly* injured that he may/will/shall (或 must, “一定要”)/should (应该) be taken to the hospital.

(…was so badly injured that he might/could/would/should be/have been taken to the hospital.) 他伤势那么重, 可能要/将要/一定要/应该送进医院。(“他的伤势当时那么重, 他可以/可能/将会/应该被送进医院。”或“……可能/应该已被送进医院。”)

以上四句中, 只有第二句可以稍加改动, 使它成为带目的从句的复合句, 因为只有这一句的主句表示的是人有意识、有目的的行为:

He speaks rapidly so *that* we may/might/shall/should not clearly understand him. 他说得很快, 想让我们听不大懂。

如果说He speaks rapidly so *that*/He so mumbles *that* we cannot clearly understand him. 可能是表目的“想让……”, 也可能是表结果“使得我们……”; 如so *that*或*that*前有停顿(书面有逗号)应是表结果: 他说得很快/他嘟嘟啾啾地, 我们听不大懂。

而Such is his *mumble* that we cannot make clear a single word of his. 后只是结果从句。(“他那一套嘟啾, 我们一个字也听不出来。”)

such虽常暗指较高、较强的程度, 但也可仅指一定属性, 无程度含义:

There was *such* a draught (such a violent draught), (that) it is no wonder he caught cold. (such 修饰不带形容词等的名词, 后为结果从句) 风太大了, 不怪他着了凉。

The pain is *such* (so acute) (that) he cannot sleep. 疼得 (那么厉害, 使) 他睡不着觉。

Her life was *such* (that) she had to keep too much in herself. (T. Olsen) 她的生活就是这样的, 使她不得不把太多的隐情藏在心底。

同样, *so* 虽常暗指较高、较强程度, 但也可能仅指一定方式特征, 无程度含义:

The fear *so* overcame me (overcame me to such an extent) (that) I could never sleep. (so 修饰动词谓语, 后为结果从句) 我非常害怕 (到那种程度), 睡觉都睡不着了。

In six months I *so* readjusted (readjusted in such a way) my sleeping *that* six perfect hours of slumber out of twenty-four was quite sufficient. 六个月期间我就很好地调节了我的睡眠, 结果每二十四个小时里有六个小时的熟睡就足够了。

She was *so* fashioned *that* none could see her without joy. 她长的那般模样, 没有一个人看见她不喜欢的。

不仅程度从句中, 而且结果从句中也可以使用情态动词; 不仅可以用 *can/could*, 而且可以用目的从句中最常使用的 *may/might/shall/should* 以及 *will/would*:

Such is (was) his tact	}	that everyone may (might)/can (could) follow him without effort.
He exercises (exercised) such tact,		that everyone shall (is sure to, “一定要”)/should (“应会”)/will (“愿意”) (过去用 would) follow his lecture with earnest interest.

他是如此巧妙灵活， } { 谁都能毫不费劲地听懂。
他运用巧妙的讲法， } { 谁都会/愿意热切倾听他讲课。

如果说 *He exercises(exercised) such tact that everyone may (might) /can(could)/shall/should/will (would) ...* 在 *that* 前没有逗号，则从句可为目的从句：他运用巧妙的讲法以便谁都能/会/愿意……。再比较：

1) 用 *may/might* 的目的从句与结果从句

I've made it clear everyone must be punctual so that he may/might come on time. 我已明确提出人人要严守时刻，以使他能按时来到。

It has cleared up beautifully so that he may/might come after all. 天已十分晴朗，他还是可能来的。(结果)

2) 用 *can/could* 的目的从句与结果从句

He gives one pencil to each passenger so that he can write out his own order. (K. Harris) 他给每位旅客一只铅笔，以便旅客们写下他们所要的饭菜。

There are often some coxcombs kicking up a row, so that you can't hear the singing. 常常有些花花公子大吵大闹，使你听不见所唱的歌。(结果)

The Turks tied the Arabs' feet together with strong leather bands so that they could not run away. (目的从句或结果从句，如 *so that* 前有逗号则从句只是结果从句) 土耳其人把那些阿拉伯人的双脚用结实的皮条捆在一起，(好让) 他们跑不了。

3) 用 *shall/should* 的目的从句与结果从句

My mother will call the baby Alfred so that we shall never forget you. (Laurence) 母亲给孩子起的名字将是阿尔弗来德，以便我们永远不能把你忘记。

His behaviour is such that everybody shall(must)/

should/will/would(会要)be on guard against him. 他品行不端, 人人都必须/应该/要/可能想着要提防他。(结果)

4) 用*will/would*的目的从句与结果从句

They are hurrying(They hurried)*so that* they may (might) not/*won't(wouldn't)*(美国说法)miss the train. 他们赶紧走, 以免赶不上火车。

He's going to the lecture early *so that* he may/*he'll* (美国说法) get a good seat.(Curme) 他早早就前去听讲课, 以便坐个好座位。

He's going to the lecture early, *so that* he'll get a good seat. 他早早就前去听讲课, 会坐个好座位的。(结果)

5) 不用任何情态动词的目的从句

The naval base should be completely wrecked *so that* the docks and workshops *are rendered* utterly useless for at least 18 months.(Churchill)该海军基地将予以彻底摧毁, 以使各码头、各工厂至少十八个月完全不能使用。

不用情态动词的结果从句很普通, 不必再引用例。

第六章 从句、主句 与独立句中的虚拟语气

6.1 直陈条件/让步从句与虚拟条件/让步从句 比较下列两组例句：

If the sky *falls*, we shall catch larks. (Onions)
(谚语) 天塌下来正好抓云雀 (何必杞人忧天)。

If the sky *fall* (旧虚拟形式, 原形动词), we should catch larks.

If the sky *fell* (虚拟, 指现在、将来, 用过去形式) we should all catch larks. (Shaw)

If the sky *were to fall* (虚拟将来), we should catch larks.

Though everyone *deserts* you, I will not. (Onions)
即使人人都背弃你, 我也不会那样做。

Though everyone *desert* (原形动词) you, I will not.
(ib)

Though everyone *should desert* you, I will not.
(ib)

Even though/Even if everyone *deserted* you, I would not.

Even though/Even if everyone *were to desert* you, I would not.

两组例句的第一句中, 从句谓语动词用的是直陈语气形式, 二从句为直陈条件从句与直陈让步从句; 两组例句的其他各句中, 从句谓语动词用的是种种虚拟语气形式, 各从句为虚拟条件

从句或虚拟让步从句。

直陈条件/让步从句所提情况，在说话人看来是现实的或有现实的可能性。有人称这种条件从句构成的复合句为真实条件句，实际上该情况不一定已成现实或必成现实；有人称其构成的复合句为开放（open）条件句，实际上与其相对的虚拟条件从句所提情况有的也可能实现，也有“开放”性质。

虚拟条件/让步从句所提情况，在说话人看来是虚设的，仅有虚拟的可能（如上列例句中的fall、desert），或者其可能性较小、甚至完全不可能而纯属假设（如例句中的fell、were to fall、should desert、deserted、were to desert；有人称使用这些形式的条件从句构成的复合句为非真实条件句）。

虚拟条件/让步从句所接主句中的谓语动词，一般也用虚拟语气形式（在主句中虚拟形式由情态动词或助动词的过去形式加实意动词、系词不定式表示）。但在从句虚拟语气减弱的某些情况下（如例句中的should desert...），主句谓语动词既可用虚拟语气形式（I would not.），也可用直陈语气形式（I will not.）

Though everyone *should* desert you, I *would/will* not.

If you *would* write me a letter, I *would/will* attend to it at once. (Close) 如您愿写信给我，我要立即办理此事。
If you *could* do that, I *should/shall* (助动词) leave early. (或he *would/will* (助动词) ...) 如你能做这件事，我(他)将早些离开。
Should we ever be in Paris, we *should/shall* (助动词) go to see your uncle. 如我们竟然有一天会来到巴黎，我们将去看望你伯父。

Wait over there, if you *wouldn't mind*. (主句还可转用祈使语气) 如果您不介意，请在那边等候。

也可让从句“直陈”，而主句“虚拟”：If you bathe now, you may/might catch cold. 如果你现在下河洗澡，你会着凉的。If I ask him, he *would* agree. (Palmer) 我如问他，

他会同意的。——不好把主、从句语气不同的这些复合句笼统归为“真实条件句”或“非真实条件句”。

以上除（在主句中）注明助动词的三处外，*should*（竟会，竟然）、*will/would*（愿意）（用于各人称，象*may/might, could*一样）都是情态动词。值得注意，在主、从句都指将来时间的情况下，条件/让步从句不可使用将来时助动词，仅在其主句中使用适当的将来时助动词*shall*（将）、*should*（将会）（二者用于英国英语一人称），*will*（将）、*would*（将会）（二者用于英国英语二、三人称与美国英语各人称）——助动词是情态动词虚化的结果，它们失去了原来的情态意义（*shall*原表示“须要”，*will*原表示“意欲”）。比较下列各句中的直陈条件从句，指将来者不用将来时助动词，但表明情态（现在与将来的可能、需要等）者可用情态动词：

If John *came*, he (usually) worked in the garden.

If John *comes*, he usually works in the garden.

If John *comes* tomorrow, he *will work* in the garden.

If I *have* money next year, I *will go* to Japan.

(Swan) 明年我如有钱，我将去日本。

I will let you have your book back on Monday if I *have* finished it by then. (Close; 从句不用if I shall/will have finished...) 如果到星期一我能看完你那本书，我将在那时让你把书拿回去。

The police won't take your car away if you *are sitting* in it. (从句不用if you shall/will be sitting in it.) 如果你将一直坐在车里，警察不会把你的车弄走。

If only we *can get* to the next petrol station, we'll be all right. (从句中*can*为情态动词) 如果我们能开到最近的加油站，我们就好办了。

If you *will get* drunk every night, it won't be

surprising you'll feel ill. (从句中will为情态动词) 如果你一定要天天晚上喝得醉醺醺的, 你将总闹身体不舒服, 那就不足为怪了。

If you *won't* help us, all our plans will be ruined. (从句中won't为情态动词否定形式) 如果你执意不肯帮助, 我们的一切计划都要破灭了。

上列从第三句往下都是“将来条件决定将来结果”, 从句不用将来时助动词(可用情态动词), 而主句使用将来时助动词(或情态动词)。但当我们表示“将来条件决定现在结果”时, 因主句没有指将来的标志, 从句就要使用将来时助动词:

If he *won't* arrive before nine, there's no point in ordering dinner for him. (GCE) 如果他九点以前不会来到, 现在给他预订晚饭就没意义了。

还有一种原属省略的复合句的“条件从句”, 那种从句中可以用将来时助动词是因为该从句原为条件复合句的主句:

If the play *will be cancelled* (if we go to see it), let's not go. (Palmer) 如果(我们去看戏而)这出戏的演出就会取消的话, 那么我们就不要去吧。

If it'll *be* of any help (if I come), I'll come along. 如果(我去)能帮点忙, 我将一同前往。

If it *will make* any difference (if I lend you some money), I'll gladly lend you some money. (GCE) 如果(我借给你一些钱)能起些作用的话, 我将很愿意借给你一些钱。

If it *will make* you happier (if I stop smoking), I'll stop smoking. (Swan) 如果(我戒烟)能使你快活, 我愿把烟戒掉。

If he'll *be left* destitute, I'll change my will. (Palmer) 可能有两种含义。一是If he'll *be left* destitute if I change my will, I'll change it. 如果我改变我的遗嘱, 他就会落得缺吃少穿, 那么我就要改变我的遗嘱。另一含义是

If he'll be left destitute if I do not change my will/keep my will unchanged, I'll change it. 如果(遗嘱不改变)他会落得缺吃少穿,那么我就要改变我的遗嘱。(多半指后一意义)

if、though以外的引导条件/让步从句的连词多只用于引导直陈条件/让步从句,如as/so long as、providing/provided/on condition (that)、although;

As/So long as you are innocent, fear nothing. 只要你问心无愧,什么也不要怕。

Although he promised not to do so, he did it. (岩波; 语气较强的although多用于句首,但也可用于主句后引导后位从句; 比较引导虚拟让步从句要用的though; He would all the same do it, (even) though/even if he were to promise not to do so.) 虽然他答应了不这样干,还是这样干了。(虚拟: 虽然/即使他会答应不这样干,他还会照样干的。)

而supposing/suppose与unless既能引导直陈条件从句,又能引导虚拟条件从句;

Supposing it happens, what shall you do? Supposing it happened, what should you do? (Onions) 假设这种事真会发生,你该要怎么办呢?

Suppose he does retire without finishing this work, what would happen to our company? (RHD) (主句would可换作will) 假使他真的没完成这一工作就会退休,咱们的公司会怎么样呢?

Suppose/Supposing he had asked you for money, would you have given him any? (EGS) 假设他曾向你借钱,你会给他点儿吗?

Come tomorrow unless I phone/if I don't phone. (Swan) 除非我打电话不让你来,明天你还要来。

She wouldn't come unless you invited her/if you didn't invite her. (EGS) 除非你邀请了她/如果你没有邀请

她，她是不会来的。

He wouldn't do it unless you were to order him to/if you were not to order him to. 除非你命令他干这件事/如果你不命令他干这件事，他是不会干的。

I shouldn't have gone to the door unless I had heard the bell/if I hadn't heard the bell. (RHD) 要不是我听见门铃响，我是不会到门口去的。

不过，unless主要用于引导直陈条件从句，较少用来引导虚拟条件从句（有时用于虚拟将来或现在，用于虚拟过去的很少见）。另外，只是在if...not意指排除该条件而容许其他条件决定主句情况发生与否时，才可用unless代替：

I'll keep on working	}	if she doesn't come.
I'll never stop working		unless she comes. 如果她不来/除非她来，（由于工作忙）我将不停地工作。

但在if...not表示该条件的否定本身直接造成主句情况的发生与否时，不可用unless代替：I'll be quite glad if she doesn't come. (Swan) 如果她不来，我就会很高兴。I'll be surprised if he doesn't have an accident. (ib) 如果他不发生事故，我才会觉得奇怪呢！

6.2 虚拟语气的三种基本类型在从句及主句中的四种基本用法

英语虚拟语气“subjunctive”一词原义subjoined：“附加的”。虚拟语气主要用在各种从句中（只用于一种复合句主句即条件/让步复合句主句）。因主从复合句中一般是主句起主导作用，故在一般从句中，虚拟语气动词形式只有相对的时态意义，仅指明从句情况发生于主句情况的同时、先时或后时，而不表示独立的现在、过去或将来等时间性。

be型：原形动词型——表示“意向”等；指同时（与主句情

况同时) 或后时 (在其后):

It is/was essential/important that every child *have* the same educational opportunities. (Swan) (名词从句中; 同时性) 所有的儿童都应得到同等的受教育的机会。

We are/were/shall be anxious that he *do* his bit.
(方面状语从句中; 后时性) 我们很关心/曾很关心/将很关心, 渴望他能尽他的本分。

were型与had been型: 错向过去型 (back-shift forms) ——表示“假想”等; 指同时用动词过去形式, 称为were型是因对于动词be要用were (正式说法, 而非正式语多可用was); 指后时也用动词过去形式 (were型); 指先时 (发生在主句情况之前) 用动词过去完成形式 (had been型, 即直陈语气中的“过去的过去”形式):

He wished/Now he wishes/Then he'll wish (that) he *were/was* rich. (名词从句中; 同时性或后时性) 他曾希望/现在他希望/然后他将希望他有很多钱。

I acted/shall act as if/as though I *knew* nothing about it/nothing *had happened*. (方式状语从句中; knew具同时性, had happened具先时性) 我装着/将装成一无所知/若无其事的样子。

should be型与should have been型: 情态动词/助动词错向过去型——表示“假想”等。指同时与后时用情态动词的过去形式should (应该; 竟会)/would (愿意)/might/could加动词不定式; 指先时用情态动词的过去形式should/would/might/could加动词不定式的完成形式; 情态动词错向过去型的这两种形式除可用于多种从句表示“假想”外, 还可用于条件/让步从句及条件/让步复合句的主句中, 分别表示“假设”与“推测”(并分别取得指现在、将来与过去的独立时间意义)。而助动词错向过去型只能用于条件/让步复合句的主句中表示“推测”, 指现在与将来用should/would (助动词无情态意义, 皆仅相当

“就会”，“将会”)加动词不定式，指过去用should/would加动词不定式完成形式：

It's time/It will be about time (that) I *should go*.
(也可以说It's time I went.) (定语从句中，同时性) 现在我该/到那时我差不多该走了。

It is/was unthinkable	}	{	that he <i>should/could be</i>
I am/was shocked			so cruel. (同时性或后时性)
			that he <i>should/could have</i>
			<i>left you</i> . (先时性)

他竟/怎能这么残忍，	}	{	这是难以想象的 (原接主语从句)。
他竟/怎能离开了你，			这使我大吃一惊 (原接原因状语从句)。

that 从句中should的用法见2.16。

只是因为条件/让步从句的特殊先决作用，这两种从句中的虚拟语气形式才具有绝对的即独立的时间性。用于条件/让步复合句主句中的虚拟语气形式 (情态动词/助动词错向过去型) 也有自己独立的时间意义。下面按虚拟语气的三大类型，分述四大用法：意向、假想、假设 (条件/让步从句)、推测 (相应主句)。

1) 原型动词型 (简称be型)——基本用法是表示“意向”，表示所要求、安排、建议、命令或所惧怕要避免的情况，用于各种名词从句及方面、原因、目的从句中：

He feared/was afraid lest/that she *be involved* in the scandal. (宾语从句/原因从句中，be…是美国英语说法，在英国那样说限于正式文件，英国一般说should be…) 他恐怕她会被牵连到那件丑闻中去。

I'll be kind to her lest she *decide to leave* me.
(LDCE; 要避免某种情况的目的从句中) 我要好好待她，以免她要离开我。

原形动词型表示可能实现的“假设”，用于条件/让步从句 (指现在或将来)，属陈旧用法，现仅见于某些惯用语及仿古语句

或正式文件中:

If it *be* so (惯用语), we are all at fault. (Onions) 果真如此的话, 我们都有过错。

If a server *serve* (现多用直陈语气的 *serves*) a fault twice, he shall lose a point. 若投球手发坏球二次, 他即丢掉一分。

Be that as it may/*Come what may*, we will go ahead. (*Be that as it may be*/*Come what may come* 之略, 惯用语) 无论如何, 我们要继续前进。

Though the sore *be healed*, yet a scar may remain. (RHD) (现多用...*may be healed*, ...*will remain*.) 创伤虽可愈合, 总要留下伤疤。

2) 错向过去型 (简称 *were/had been* 型)——基本用法是表示多半或根本不能实现的“假想”(用于宾语从句等从句中)与“假设”(用于条件/让步从句)。

I'd (*would*) much rather you *called* me Joe. (RHD) (假想, 同时性) 我很希望你叫我的名字“乔”。

Would that we *had seen* her before! (LDCE) (比较 *We wish/wished we had seen her*.) (假想, 先时性) 多么希望我们曾经见到她啊!

条件/让步从句中表示“假设”的错向过去型, 指现在 (与将来) 用动词过去形式; 指过去用动词过去完成形式。

“假设”指现在与将来:

If wishes *were* horses, beggars might ride. (谚语) 如果幻想能成为马匹, 叫花子们就都有了坐骑。

If ifs and ans (古旧词 *an = if*) *were* pots and pans, there'd be no work for tinkers' hand. (谚语) 任你想得溜溜圆, 落得个没影又没烟。

He would not take it though it *were* offered. (RHD; 现代英语 *although* 主要用于直陈让步从句, 一般不用虚拟让步从句) 即使把这东西给他, 他也不会要的。

Even though he was persuaded to return, the mischief is done. (Hugh Walpole; 或者说 Though/Even if he were... 但不说 Even although) 即使能劝服他让他回去, 祸害也已经造成了。(此句主句为直陈语气)

“假设”指过去:

If the piece had been loaded, he must inevitably have shot himself dead upon the spot. (Dickens) (must... 属直陈语气) 如果这只枪装了子弹, 他一定当场就开枪自杀了。

If they had left at nine, they would certainly be home by midnight. (Leech; 主句指将来; 如主句也指过去要说 would certainly have been home by midnight.) 如果他们九点就出发了, 到半夜他们一定会到家。(如主句也指过去: “那么半夜时候他们早已到家了。”))

Even though I had known his address, I might not have had time to write to him. (从句、主句都指过去) 即使我当时知道他的地址, 我也可能没时间给他写信。

“假设”专指将来, 可用单一的动词过去形式, 或用复合的“情态动词过去形式 should (竟会, 竟然) 加动词不定式”, 还可用“(相当情态动词的) 过去形式 were (竟要, 竟能安排) 加带 to 的动词不定式”:

If it rained tomorrow/should rain/were to rain/was (非正式说法) to rain, we should get wet. (GCE) 假如(明天)要下雨, 我们会浇湿的。

It would be better if you saw/were to see him yourself. (EGS) 假如你本人能见见他/你本人能安排见他, 会更好些。(比较: I am to see him today. 今天我要见他。 He was never to see his wife and family again. (ALD) 以后他再也见不到他的妻子儿女了。be to 约从1200年起用于表示主、客观安排, 比 have to 约从1800年起用于表示客观必要, 为时更早, 都相当情态动词)

If you *should* see/happen to see George, would/will you ask him to ring me? (EGS; 从句的*should*虚拟语气较弱, 其主句也可用直陈语气的*will*; 主句的*would*虚拟语气也较弱, 也可与从句直陈语气的*happen*连用) 假如你见到乔治, 让他给我打个电话好吗?

从句用*were to*接主句直陈语气者较少; If it *were to* rain, I don't know what we shall do. (姚善友) 假如下雨, 我真不知道我们该怎么办。

Though he *were to* beg on his knees, I should still refuse. (或Even though/Even if he *were to*...) 即使他要跪着乞求, 我照样不会答应他。

其他过去形式情态动词表“假设”用法见下节。

3) 情态动词/助动词错向过去型 (情态动词/助动词过去形式 + 动词不定式/不定式完成形式, 简称*should be/have been*型) ——可用于虚拟语气的全部四种基本用法即: 意向、假想、假设、推测。

should (*shall*的过去形式) 可用于表示所要求或要避免某情况的“意向”(相当*be*型主要用法), 用于各种名词从句及方面、原因、目的状语从句中;

各过去形式情态动词与助动词*could/might/would/should*都可用于表示未必实现、多半或根本不能实现的“假想”, 用于宾语从句、定语从句、方式状语从句等从句中;

各过去形式情态动词都可 (过去形式将来时助动词不可) 用于表示未必实现、多半或根本不能实现的“假设”, 用于条件/让步从句中 (If/Though he *should* (竟然)/*would* (愿意) go 中用的是情态动词而不是助动词);

各过去形式情态动词与助动词都可用于表示未必实现、多半或根本不能实现的“推测”, 用于条件/让步复合句的主句中。

*should be/have been*型用于四种基本用法及某些引申用法的较详细论述见以下二节。其中表示“意向”(意想未然)的用

法与表示“假想”的引申用法表“意外、意料中”(感受已然)的用法,可参见2.16。

6.3 should be/have been型表示的“意向”、“假想”与假想之引申:“意外、意料中”

should be/have been型是虚拟语气形式中用得最广泛的一大类,可用于虚拟语气的所有四种基本用法中:用于多种从句中表示“意向”、“假想”时只有相对时间意义(用于多种从句中表示从“假想”引申出的一种表示“意外、意料中”用法时也只有相对时间意义);用于条件/让步复合句的从句与主句中,分别表示“假设”与“推测”时才有其独立的时间意义。

下面依次讨论四种基本用法中should be/have been型的用例,但为便于弄清相似形式的不同本质,把从“假想”引申出来的表示“意外、意料中”用法提了出来,与表示“意向”的用法一起论述。

1) 表“意向”(意想未然)与表“意外、意料中”(感受已然——“假想”之引申)

比较左、右两句的不同性质:

<p>It's important / reasonable / essential / vital that the play (should) be licensed to be staged. 一定要许可这出戏上演,这很重要/是合理的/很必要/十分重要。</p> <p>把心目中的未然情况作为“意想”、要求;</p> <p>主要指“后时”,有时兼指“同时”,没有相应的指“先时”形式;</p> <p>在美国英语、动词原形前不加should英国正式文件亦然(仅英非正式说法加should);</p> <p>以虚拟形式(过去形式)表“意向”只可用should(应该),不用其他情态动词。</p>	<p>It's interesting that the play should be a huge success. (Leech) (也可以说...that the play should have been a huge success.) 这出戏居然大获成功,这种情况真是很有意思。</p> <p>把意外的已然情况看作“假想”、想象;</p> <p>should be型仅指“同时”,一般不指“后时”,should have been型指“先时”;</p> <p>英国、美国英语同样用should(竟会,竟然);</p> <p>以虚拟形式表“意外”,有时可用其他情态动词; It's incredible that they should/could have left. who could have expected that he could/would act like that? (竟能/竟要)</p>
--	---

表“意向” *should be*型可用于各种名词从句及方面状语从句、目的状语从句等从句中：

It will be better that he (*should*) *be* informed about it. (主语从句) 把这事通知他比较好。

He gave orders that all lights (*should*) *be* put out. (同位语从句) 他下令把所有的灯关掉。

He moved/voted that I (*should*) *be* made a member of the committee. (宾语从句) 他提议/投票赞成让我作为委员会一个成员。

I'm anxious that nobody (*should*) *be* hurt. (方面状语从句) 我很担心，不要碰伤任何人。

Let's act and not shrink for fear/*lest* our motives (*should*) *be* misunderstood. (目的状语从句) (如说 Let's act for fear our motives may be misunderstood. 从句所用为直陈语气；如改说 We acted for fear our motives might be misunderstood. 从句所用为直陈语气过去时形式) 让我们行动起来，不要退缩，免得我们的动机竟会被人误解。(目的是“避免……”，*should*：“竟会”)

表“意外” *should de/have been*中的 *should* 相当“竟会、竟然”；而表“意料中” *should be/have been*中的 *should* 相当“应该”(这种“意料中”也有感情色彩，与表“意外”同属感受已然)。表示“意外、意料中” *should be/have been*型可用于各种名词从句及原因状语从句、推论状语从句等从句中(但因其指已然发生的情况，不能用于目的状语从句)。注意各句的感情色彩。

It's wonderful that right *should* thus overcome might. 正义就该这样战胜强权，太好了。It's lucky/a good thing that the weather *should be* so fine. 很幸运/很好，天气居然这么晴朗。(喜；此句及以下多句含主语从句)

It's unfair that I *should suffer* from others' mis-

conduct. (怒) 我竟因别人干了错事而受苦, 这太不公道。

It worries me that you *should be* looking so pale.
(忧) 你脸色怎么这样苍白, 我很担心。

It's a pity/disappointing that you *should be* ill just now. (伤) 真可惜/叫人失望, 你偏偏这时候病了。

It's annoying that she *should* so easily get excited.
(烦) 她怎么这么容易激动, 真让人苦恼。

It's a shame/It isn't right that such a thing *should be* allowed to happen. (怨) 真糟糕, /不该竟让这种事发生。

It was embarrassing that his first wife *should come* in at the very moment. (惊) 真叫人难堪, 正在这时他的前妻走了进来。

It's right/natural that he *should bear* the expense.
(意料中) 费用由他负担, 这就对了/很自然。It was no great wonder that he *should succeed/should have succeeded*.
(同时性/先时性) 他应该获得成功, 这不足为奇。

The idea that man *should destroy* his environment worries me. (同位语从句) 一想到人类竟会破坏自己的环境, 就使我非常担忧。

I regret that you *should have behaved* so badly.
(亦可用于疑问词的名词从句中: I can't understand why you *should/how* you could behave/have behaved so badly.) (宾语从句) 我很难过 (不理解), 你竟然 (怎能) 表现得那样恶劣。

I'm glad/amazed/ashamed/sorry that she *should go* there. (原因状语从句) 她竟能去那儿, 我很高兴/惊讶/羞愧/难过。

We were all astonished that one so young *should/could have done* so much. (先时性) 一个人这么年轻就已做出这么多成绩, 使我们全都非常惊奇。

What has the child done that you should resort to such violence?(推论从句) 这孩子干了什么,你怎么竟要采取这么残暴的办法对待他?

2) 表“假想”——情态动词错向过去型用于宾语从句、time的定语从句;情态动词或助动词错向过去型用于as if/though方式状语从句等从句:

I wish you would/could stay a little longer.(或I wish you could have stayed a little longer!) 我希望你愿意/能多呆一会儿。(或指先时:当时你要是能多呆一会儿多好!)

I wish I might not have my labor in vain.(比较从句用直陈语气的I wish it may not prove a failure.) 我希望我的努力不致落空。(我希望事情不会失败。)

We would that we could believe it. 我们倒希望对这话信以为真,可惜我们无法相信。

Would I could doubt it! 多么希望这并不确实啊!

It's high time I should go/I was going.(多不用I were…) 我真的该走了。(所略关系代词that为定语从句中的状语)

"But I can't."--"It's high time you could." "可是这事我不会干啊。"——“现在你实在应该学会来了。”(以上二例中should/could具同时性)

He talks as if he would help us, but in fact he won't even lift a finger. 他说得似乎要帮助我们,实际上他一点儿也不想管。(as if/though…多表示假想的行为方式,但也可以用直陈语气表示实际的或有现实可能性的状况: He talks as if he will help us. 再比较 He walks as though he were/was drunk. 指假想, 而 He walks as if/though he is drunk. 指实际可能的情况)

as if/though从句修饰实意动词时为方式从句,而用于It is/looks…之类主句后时,因is等已从实意动词(“存在”等)

转联系动词 (“是”、“看来是”等), *as if/though*…应作为表语从句:

Why doesn't she buy me a drink? It isn't as if she had no money/*couldn't afford*. (同时性) 她为什么不给我买一杯饮料呢? 原因不是她没钱/买不起。(It指原因)

It looks as if it *might snow/is going to snow*. 天气看来(象是)要下雪 (It泛指情况, 在此指天气; 后-it指天气; *might*, 同时性与后时性)

但It seems as if…因相当It seems that…, 可看作后面引导主语从句; It为虚化的引导词, that/as if所引导从句为复合句主语。这样的复合句有与其相应的具有复合主语的简单句(参见2.14):

It seems (as if) there will be an election soon. (LDCE) 或It seems (that) there will be an election soon. 看来不久要举行选举。

There seems to be an election soon. (复合主语)

A real nice kid. Seems she never hurt anybody. (Lawrence) (It与that/as if被省略) 或…She seems to have never hurt anybody. 真是个好姑娘。看来她没伤害过任何人的感情。

*as if/though*引导的方式状语从句或表语从句或主语从句中都常用情态动词错向过去型:

She screams and stamps and feels as if she *might go mad* with fury. (同时性) 她尖叫着、跺着脚, 觉得自己就会被气疯了。

As if there were no life beneath the sky save theirs, as if this life *could never die*…好象是天底下除了他们再没有别生命, 好象这生命永远不会消亡……

He talks/talked/will talk as though he *would help us*. 中的*would*为情态动词(愿意); 但Lucy cried as if her

heart *would break*. 句中的*would*为助动词(将要);露希哭得那么悲伤,好象她的心都要碎了。

What was it made her start back and make as if she *would faint* on his arm?(Thackeray;*would*为助动词)是什么使她惊讶后退、使她显得似乎晕倒在他臂膀上呢?

It seems to me as if, haunted by calamity as I have been, I *should never recover* any cheerfulness again.

(*should*为助动词)我觉得,象这样屡遭不幸,我似乎再也不会恢复以前的欢快的精神了。

6.4 *should be/have been*型表示的“假设”(从句)与“推测”(主句)

情态动词/助动词错向过去型的另两种用法是:

3) 表“假设”——情态动词错向过去型用于条件/让步状语从句。两种从句中可用*could*、*might*、*would*(愿意),更常使用*should*(应该;竟会,竟然),都通用于各人称;两种从句因要指出虚拟的语气前提,而不用无情态意义(即无语气意义)的助动词*should*(英国英语用于第一人称的“就将(会)”)与*would*(英国英语用于二、三人称,美国英语用于各人称的“就将(会)”) (那两个助动词错向过去形式可用于条件/让步复合句主句中,见下面第一个例句主句及本节4)例释):

If his father *should* (竟会) *call* him, he *should* (应该) *go*/he *would* (情态动词“愿意”或助动词“就会、就将”) *go*. 如果他父亲竟来叫他,他应该/要/会走。

I shall stand by him, though you *should* (竟会) *not*. 即使你竟然不支持他,我仍将支持他。

They *wouldn't stop* halfway though there *might be* great difficulties/however great the difficulties *might be*. 尽管会有很大困难/不管困难多大,他们也不肯半途而废的。

If only she *wouldn't play* the violin in the middle

of the night, she'd be an ideal guest. 如果她不是总要半夜拉小提琴, 她就会是个理想的客人的。(主句用了虚拟将来时助动词)

If he *could hold out* a little longer, he might succeed. (指将来) 如果他能多坚持一会儿, 他会成功的。

I would have denied it if I *could*. (= ...if I *could have done so*. 指将来) 如果我能够否认的话, 我本来愿意否认此事的。

I should not buy this medicine if it would upset you. (句中的would为助动词, 但该条件从句实为有所省略的条件复合句, would用于该复合句主句...if it would upset you if you took it.) 如果你吃这种药会使你觉得不舒服, 我就不买这种药。

4) 表“推测”——情态动词或助动词错向过去型用于条件/让步复合句主句:

We *could get married* today if you really want to. (指现在) 如果你真想结婚, 今天我们就能结婚。

It *mightn't be* a bad thing if we took a holiday next week. (指将来) 如果下周我们休假, 可能不是坏事。

I *wouldn't do* this if I didn't have to. (指现在或将来; 如指过去要说I wouldn't have done that if I hadn't had to.) 如果不是非做不可, 我是不愿做这种事的。

If you had the money, you *should pay* him. (指现在) 如果你有钱, 你应该付给他。

Even if he had been there he *couldn't have helped* you. (指过去) 即使他在场, 他也不能帮助你们。

What might have happened or *would have happened* if Dora and I had never known each other? (would, 助动词“将会”, 指过去, “会”) 如果朵拉与我从不相识, 可能怎么样, 会是怎么样呢?

Though he should fail/were to fail, there would (助动词) still be hope. 即使他竟然未能成功, 还将会有希望的。

If you/he/they should be absent, she would be/I should be very sorry. (主句所用皆助动词) 如果你/他/他们竟然不能到场, 她将会/我将会很失望。

If their forecast had been right, they would have won and we should have lost. (主句可用助动词结构should/would have been型指过去) 如果他们的预测对了, 他们就会赢, 而我们就会输了。

这里, 总起来提一下, 条件/让步从句中的were、had、were to、should、could、might可提到句首, 就不再用连词if、though (但was、would不可这样):

Were I in your place/If I were(was) in your place/
If I were you (不说If I was you)...

Were it not (不说Weren't it) for him, I should not hesitate to speak up. 如果不是因为他, 我不会顾虑重重、不敢直言的。

Had it not(不说Hadn't it) been for your knowledge of the language, I should have been completely lost. 如果不是因为你通晓这种语言, 我已经毫无办法了。

I could never respect myself again were I to give way now. 如果我现在退缩下来, 我今后再不能自尊自敬。

Even were I sensible as you are, I should not be able to discover my own faults. (让步从句Even还在were前) 即使我能象你那样清醒, 我也不会发现自己的缺点的。

Should he not (不说Shouldn't he) come, I should have to do the work. 如果他竟不来, 我就得做这一工作。

Could/Might I but see my child once more! (略去主句) 但愿我能再一次见见我的孩子!

○ might I have known it in time! (略去主句; 加感叹

词) 我要是及时知道这事, 该多好啊!

6.5 逆推条件句, 松散条件句

条件复合句从句与主句所指的时间可以是不一致的, 而由从句的条件即原因或理由到主句的结果或结论, 一般是顺时序的, 顺着过去、现在、将来的时间过程:

If he *said* that, he *is* a fool. 如果他说过这种话, 他就是个傻子。

If they *left* at nine, they'll certainly *be* home by midnight. 如果他们已在九点出发, 他们半夜准能到家。

If it *has rained* in the deserts, the flowers *blossom*. 沙漠里下过雨后, 野花都要开放。

If you'd *had* proper lessons (虚拟, 指过去), you *would now be* able to speak English. 如果你曾认真学过, 你现在就能说英语了。

如果从句所用一般现在时形式, 意指包括从过去到现在经常一贯的情况, 那么, 主句即使是指过去, 也还属顺时序的“顺推”:

If he *is* always ready to help, she *must have asked* him to look after the children. 如果他一向愿意帮助别人, 她一定是(当时根据这个)请他照看孩子了。

If he *weren't* always ready to help, I *would no have asked* him to look after the children. 如果他不是一向愿意帮助别人, 我就不会请他照看孩子了。

当从句、主句所述不是客观“因果”, 而是主观推理时, 主句情况可能发生在先, 这就属于“逆推”:

If my son *is* a genius, I've *underestimated* him.

(Leech) 如果我的儿子(现在证实)是个天才, 那么我原来低估了他。

If my son *were* a genius, I'd *have underestimated* him. (ib) 假如我的儿子真是天才, 那么可以说我原来对他的

估价太低了。

If they ever won, they *must have trained hard*. 若是他们果真胜利了, 他们一定曾经进行过很艰苦的训练。

If they ever won, they *had always trained hard*. (Palmer) 或者说If they ever won, it was an evidence that/it was because they had always trained hard. 若是他们胜利了, (说明/那是因为) 他们曾进行很艰苦的训练。

If he *has* a tape recorder, probably he *borrowed* it from his friend. 如果他有个录音机, 很可能是从他的朋友那里借来的。

Should he have/Were he to have a tape recorder, he *would have borrowed* it from his friend. (虚拟, 指将来) 假如他有个录音机, 那将是他的朋友那里借来的。

不仅是条件从句, 而且让步从句及理由从句都可以用于“逆推”, 逆时序做主观的推理 (但原因从句不可, 见5.7)。

我们讲, 虚拟语气的动词诸形式在一般从句中只具相对时间意义, 仅在有特殊先决作用的条件/让步从句中它们才有独立的时间意义 (主句虚拟形式另有独立时间意义); 但应该补充一点: 如整个条件/让步复合句纳入更扩展的更大复合句而作为其中一个从句, 则条件/让步复合句内的从句与主句虚拟形式, 也只具相对时间意义。

He agreed/will agree that it *would be* very fine if it *were* only possible. (were与would be皆只具同时性与后时性) 他同意/将同意, 如果这个计划真有可能, 那倒是很好的。

He promised that if I *should not succeed*, he *would help* me. (后时性) 他答应, 如果我不能成功, 他将会帮助我。

He'll declare that if you *had not succeeded*, he *would have helped* you. (先时性) 他将声称, 假如你未能成功, 他就会帮助你的。

as if/though从句本是“as + 条件/让步复合句主句 + if/though条件/让步从句”, 该as后的复合句是更扩展复合句中的方

式从句或表语从句等，故其中虚拟形式只具相对时间性：

He looked/will look as (he would look) if he were ill. (同时性)

He looked/will look as (he would look) though he were ill. 古 though = if (Curme, chap.16)

条件复合句所述一般都是事物的纵向关系特征，客观因果或主观推理关系。但也有一些条件复合句所述的是“横向”关系特征，非直接的联系，从句与主句之间就没有“顺推”与“逆推”问题，当然从句与主句也就各有独立的时间性，这种条件复合句可称松散条件句：

If he's Marconi, I'm Einstein. (Palmer) (或 If he's a Marconi, I'm/'ll be an Einstein.) 如果说他是马可尼那样的杰出电学家，我将是爱因斯坦式的伟大学者。

If I am wrong, you are wrong too. 如果说我不对，你也错了。(或“虽说我不对……”；并非我错致使你错)

(Even) If I've been a bad wife to you, I'll try to be better, really I will. (RHD) 如果说(即便说)我曾经是你不好的妻子，今后我要尽量好好的，我真要这样做。

If surgery stagnated under mediaeval influences, it revived in the 17th and 18th centuries as human anatomy and physiology yielded their secrets. 如果说外科学在黑暗中世纪的影响下曾停滞不前，到十七、十八世纪由于人体解剖学与生理学揭示了各自的奥秘，外科学又蓬勃发展起来。

Could I have a word with you, if you please/don't mind? 您如果同意，我与您谈几句话好吗？

You might stay a little longer, if you please/wanted. (为表委婉，可用错向过去型指现在、将来) 您愿意的话，请多呆一会吧！

And now, if you please, I am to get nothing for all my work! (ALD) 您听听，怪事不怪事，我干了这么多工

作，竟会一无所得！

If you're going out, it's raining. (If...it is relevant to say that it's raining. Palmer) 如果你要出去，(我应该说) 外头下雨呢。

If you want to know, (I can only tell you) I haven't seen him. 如果你想知道，(我只能告诉你) 我没看见他。

She and I are just friends, if you follow me. (GCE; 应相当 I'd like to tell you that she and I are just friends, if you follow me.) 如果你相信我的话，(我愿告诉你，) 她和我只是朋友关系。

6.6 “含蓄结果”与“含蓄条件”(should be/have been 型虚拟独立句三用法)

条件句可单用从句，或单用“主句”使成为独立句。

上节最后三例中，条件复合句省略了与条件直接联系的情况，使句子成为松散条件句。条件复合句更常略去整个主句、单留从句，或略去整个从句、单用主句，所含意义自明。这就是“含蓄结果”与“含蓄条件”表现法。

含蓄的结果常见这几种意义：“那会怎样？我（们）怎么办？他/她（们）会怎么想？”、“那就好了/那该多好！”、“不是才怪呢！不……才怪呢！”

“会怎样？……怎么办/想？”：

Then suppose he *should* refuse? 那么要是他拒绝，怎么办呢？

Suppose Mirah *knew* how you are behaving! 米拉如果知道你有这种行为，她会怎么想啊！

Suppose some of the boys *had* seen me and *should* find me out? (*had* seen 指过去；*should* find 指将来) 如果有的孩子看见我了，如果他们找到我，怎么办呢？

“那就好了！那该多好！”：

If only he *comes* on time! 他如能按时来就好了!

If somebody *will come* here and *sit* with him. (RHD)
如果有人愿来陪他坐坐就好了。

If that *were* all! 假如问题到此为止, 那可好了!

If only Dad *could see* me now! 如果爸爸现在能看到我 (这么幸福), 那该多好!

Had I but taken your advice! 我若是听你劝就好了!

“不是才怪呢! 不……才怪呢!”

If that's *not* what I want! 这正是我所要的!

Well, if it *isn't* Aunt Jane! 啊, 那准是珍妮姨!

If you ever *speak* to me like that again! 如果你再这样跟我说话, 我不教训教训你才怪呢!

比含蓄结果的表现法用得更多的是含蓄条件句。这里不是指用副词、介词短语等表示条件的句子 (*Otherwise/Under unfavourable conditions/Without your guidance they would not have succeeded*. 否则/如在不利条件下/如没有你指导, 他们是不会成功的。He'd be stupid not to accept that offer. 他如不肯接受, 那就太愚蠢了。The same thing, happening in wartime, would amount to disaster. 同是这种事如发生在战时, 那足足是一场灾难。), 而是指条件全未表明、仅属暗寓条件的句子, 这种含蓄条件句更确切地说就是虚拟独立句——因为, 这些句子大都使用情态动词错向过去的虚拟形式, 象是虚拟条件句主句略去所接条件从句, 实际上却被非常广泛地独立使用, 多不必、不宜、甚至不可加上一个虚拟条件从句。

[表示委婉] *Could/Might* I use your phone? (不必加 if you wouldn't mind. 之类; might比could更正式些而用得较少; can (较随便)/may (较正式) 不如 could/might 委婉) 我可以用您的电话吗?

肯定回答只能用直陈语气: Of course you can/may. 不可答 You could/might.

〔表示估计〕 *That happened a long time ago. I'd have been about twenty at the time. (Hornby) (should have been* 指过去“应该是”；句后不宜加 *if I were not mistaken.*) 事情发生在很久以前。那时我应该是二十岁左右。——“委婉”、“估计”是“推测”用法的引申。

〔表示意外或不满〕 *Why should he worry/should have worried about a little thing like 5 pounds? (不可加 if he were/had been so rich 之类)* 他怎么竟会为五英镑这点小事伤脑筋呢？——“意外、不满”是“假想”用法的引申。

下面就按这三个例句代表的虚拟独立句三种用法，进一步讨论一下。

1) 委婉的询问、请求、建议、表白及评论：

Can/Could we meet again tomorrow? (can 不够礼貌)
我们明天可以再次见面吗？

Could/Would you see him now? 现在你能/愿见他吗？

Might I trouble you for a light? 麻烦您借我个火儿吧！

He may/might (重读) leave tomorrow. (重读的 may/might 表估计；might 较没把握) 他明天可能走/走吧！

He may/might (不重读) leave tomorrow. (许可或建议) 他明天可以走。(might 较委婉：他明天可以走吧！)

You should/ought to go. (Swan; should 实属虚拟语气，表示说话人委婉提出主语“应该”；而直陈语气的 shall 表示“一定要”；You shall go, or you shall suffer for your indiscipline. 你一定要去，不然你定要因为不守纪律而吃苦头。ought 在历史上亦属虚拟语气，现 ought to 表示按规矩或习俗等“应该”) 您应该去。

I'd better go and so had you. 我最好走，您最好也走。(比较直陈语气的 have to go 必须走，不得不走)

In the interest of society they had better not have

been born (NDEC) (指过去) 为了社会利益, 他们不出生才好。

You'd better have changed your mind when I call tomorrow. (受从句影响指将来完成) 明天我来的时候, 您最好已经把主意变过来了。

虚拟助动词 *should* 除在 *I should like/think/say* 等惯用语保留 (无情态意义) 外现较少用, 多以 *would* (情态动词“愿意”) 代替: *I would like to have Clive married to her. I should like to see Clive happy.* (Thackeray) 我愿让克利弗和她结婚。我愿看到克利弗过上幸福的生活。

2) 没有把握的估计:

There could be trouble at the match tomorrow. 明天的比赛可能出麻烦事。

Anyone might do the same. 谁都会这么做的。

That would be his mother. 那可能是他母亲。(比较更有把握的估计: *This will be just what she wants.* (LDCE) 这准是她所要的那个。)

The weather should be fair most of the day. 全天大部分时间可能是晴天。(用 *would*, 根据主语本身情况; 用 *should* 根据外界情况或说话人看法)

We needn't get ready yet; the guests shouldn't come for another hour. (LDCE) 咱们还不必先做准备, 再过一个小时以后, 客人才会到呢。(一小时内不会到)

“Could you have left your umbrella at the bus-station?”——*“I could/might have.”* “你可能把雨伞丢在汽车站上吧?”——“可能是。”

She can't have gone to school--it's Saturday. (有把握) *She could have gone off with some friends.* (没把握) (Swan) 她不可能是上学去了。今天星期六。她可能和伙伴们出去了。

指过去情况时，属于1)的“评论”用法和属于2)的“估计”用法可有大不相同的意义：

<p>只有势态，论其未真发生</p> <p>You <u>could/might have broken</u> your leg. A miss is as good as a mile, though. 你差点儿把腿跌断了。不过，勉强脱险也就等于安度难关了。</p> <p>In fact, the first overshoes and raincoats <u>might almost have been made of wax</u>, only they were a bit stronger. 事实上，那些最初制成的套鞋和雨衣几乎就象蜡做的，不过只比蜡的结实一小点。</p> <p>I <u>would have liked/preferred</u> to go yesterday, but I didn't have the chance. 我本想昨天走，可是没得机会走开。</p> <p>You <u>should/ought to have got</u> here earlier. (Swan, 390) 你本来应该早一点来到这里的。</p>	<p>有可能，估计或已发生</p> <p>Haven't you heard the crash? He <u>could have broken</u> the pot. 你听见叭嚓一声没有？他可能把坛子摔碎了。</p> <p>(肯定一时的势态、可能，不用 can, 否定可用 can't; can have broken 指过去经常发生的可能已完成情况)</p> <p>It may / <u>might have been</u> a cat. (Swan, 377) 那可能是一只猫吧！</p> <p>I met her soon after the war. Yes, that <u>will/would have been</u> around March, 1946. 战后不久我遇到了她。是啊，那大约是一九四六年三月。</p> <p>They left at 9, so they <u>should /ought to have arrived</u> by now. (Hornby, p.199) 他们是九点出发的，现在应该已经到了。</p>
---	---

3) 意外或不满：常用 should, 可用 could, 偶尔用 would; 多用疑问句与感叹句；

Would you be so unkind? (RHD) (would 为情态动词)
你竟要这样狠心吗？

Who would have thought it? (Franklin) (would 为助动词) 谁会想到这一点呢？

How should/could I know? 我怎么会知道呢？(could 一般限于指人主语，语气更重些；“could + 不定式”既可能是直陈语气指过去，又可能是虚拟语气指现在或将来；*How could you do it?* 直陈意为“你是怎么能够做好这件事的呢？”虚拟意为“你怎么会做这种事呢？”

How could you be so silly? (直陈过去或虚拟现在与将

来, 比较虚拟过去的*How could you have been so silly?*)
你怎么能干这种傻事呢?

What could they be doing at this time of day? 这个时候了, 他们会在干什么呢?

Why should (不用*could*) *it get colder when you go up a mountain? You are getting nearer to the sun.* 你登山时为什么越往上越冷呢? 你是离太阳越来越远啊!

Who should be his wife but Barbara? (过去、现在或将来; 比较*Who should have been...*) 除了巴巴拉, 谁会嫁给他呢?

With all his money he should worry/should have worried about 3 dollars! 他那么有钱, 居然会为三块美元发愁!

I should/You would (二者助动词) *have thought it was colder than that.* 我本以为/你本来会以为那里比那更冷。

That you/he should think me capable of it! (略去主句的宾语从句) 你/他竟认为我能干出这种事来!

That it should have come to this! 事情怎么就会闹到这个地步! (略主句的虚拟从句中相应形式表意外)

第七章 多功能词that、it、as、 while、when、where的用法

7.1 that与It从实词到虚词

除that可用作副词外(You shouldn't go that/so far. 你不应该那么过分。), that与it在以下各方面相似而又相异。

that 为远指指示代词, 指抽象事物用于前指:

They will probably win the match. That will please him. 他们多半要在比赛中取胜。这将使他很高兴。(比较 this 为近指指示代词, 可用于前指; 后指几乎专用this; This I can tell you—they'll probably win the match. 有一点我可以告诉你—他们多半要在比赛中取胜。)

that 为关系代词, 引导定语从句, 任从句中一成分:

That/It was the dog (that) I gave the water (重读) to. (先行词为 dog) 那是我给了它水喝的那只狗。

that 虚化为连词, 引导各种名词从句与几种状语从句:

That they're going to win will please him. (更常说 it will please him that they're going to win.) (主语从句) 看来他们要取胜, 这将使他很高兴。

They have trained hard that they may win the match. (目的

it 为中性人称代词, 可用于前指, 亦可用于后指:

"You are late."—"It/ That is not my fault." (that 语气较重)
“你迟到了。”—“这不怪我。”

He is thirty years old, and looks it. 他三十岁, 看着也就是这么大年龄。

It was unbelievable — they actually welcomed me. (Schib-sbye) (比较...that they... 主语从句) 这真难以置信——他们真是对我表示欢迎。

it 任分裂句主语 (that 定语从句的先行词):

It was the dog (重读) (that) I gave the water to. (The animal I gave the water to was the dog.) 我给水是给了狗了。(没给猫等)

it 虚化为引词(形式主语、宾语等), 使较长主语、宾语等(不定式/动名词短语、名词从句)居句子后部:

It wouldn't do your going alone. (RHD) 你自己去不行吧!

I take it that you will start

续表

<p>从句) He'll be pleased <u>that</u> they are going to win. (原因从句) 他们训练很下功夫以求取胜。因为他们看来要取胜, 他会感到很高兴的。</p>	<p>at once. 我想你马上要走了。 虚化的 <i>it</i> 可作某些动词 (特别是不及物动词及由名词转用者) 的形式宾语: We would sleep out on fine nights, and hotel <u>it</u> and inn <u>it</u> and pub <u>it</u> when it was wet. 晴天的夜晚我们将露宿, 下雨天就在旅店、在客栈、在酒馆过夜。</p>
---	--

因为 *that* 引导名词从句、定语从句 (包括分裂句中的定语从句)、状语从句的用法已在有关章节论述, 比较容易联系对比, 这里着重归纳一下零散提及或尚未提及的 *it* 的功能。下列十种功能中, 前五种为其实词用法, 后五种为其虚词用法。

1) 指人、婴儿、动物、其他事物包括抽象事物,

Go and see who *it* is. (未知的人) 去看看是谁。

It's I/me (非正式说法)。(对听者原属未知) 是我。

As I came up to her little baby *it* stretched its little arms to me. 我走到她那小孩前时, 孩子向我伸出两只小手。

Come on, *it* says to go. (RHD) 走啊, 信号灯放行了。

Where does *it* hurt? (你身上) 哪儿疼?

Tom is a total loss when *it* comes to mechanics. 当话题谈到机械技术时, 汤姆就如堕五里雾中了。

How goes *it* with you? 你那里情况如何?

It's my turn. 轮到我了。

It's all over with him. (对于) 他是万事休矣。

There *it* is, do what you like. 事情就这样吧, 你愿意怎么办就怎么办。

That's not *it*. "Her gown she wore was stained with gore." That's *it*—you missed that. 你唱得不对。“她

的衣衫沾着血迹。”这才对呢——这句你没唱。

It's those that are down (who) would be up and those that are up (who) would be down, if it wasn't for us. (who定语从句的先行词为句首的It; who可改为that) 要不仗着我们,压在底下的就会翻身上来,坐在上头的就会滚到底下。

When it comes to graciousness, she is really it. 要是讲仪态,那么她真是仪态万方。

Zero hour is here. This is it. 到紧急关头了。此其时矣。

2) 指时间、距离、天气、环境:

It will soon be Christmas. (特定时间) 快圣诞节了。

It won't be long before we know. (时间量) 用不了多久我们就会知道的。

From Boston to New York (it) is 200 miles. (GCE) (空间量) 从波士顿到纽约是二百英里。

It looks like snow. 天好象要下雪。

It came on darker and darker. 天色越来越黑暗。

It's rather stuffy/damp in here. 这儿太闷/太潮了。

It's very lonely here with nothing but the moon. 除了月光一无所有,这儿太冷清了。

3) 句中前指(指前词语、主句或并列分句所表事物):

He was dying and he knows it. 他快死了,这他知道。

She's a nurse, and she looks it. 她是护士,看样子也是当护士的。

The child is nine years old, though you'd hardly think it. (Zandvoort) 这孩子九岁了,尽管你不会以为他那么大。

You are much stronger now, though you may not

look it. 现在你身体结实多了, 即使你看样子还不那么结实。

He took the bottle from the cupboard; I saw it myself. 他把瓶子从柜子里拿出来; 我亲眼看见他拿的。

4) 句中后指 (指句后词语或从句所表事物):

It's a nuisance, this delay. 这么耽搁着太讨厌了。

It's quite true, all that you say. 你所说的都很对。

It's very curious, that story. 这个故事很怪。

It's known to none of us, his name and nationality. 他的名字和国籍, 我们都不知道。

How do you like it if I boxed your ears? 你想让我打你两个耳光吗? Why don't you appreciate it when people are nice to you? 大家对你好, 你怎么不领情呢?

5) 作分裂句主语 (that/who定语从句的先行词):

It's I that/who need help. (应用needs, 惯用need; 比较The person that/who needs help is I.) 需要帮助的是我。

It's help that I need. (What/The thing that I need is help.) 我需要的是帮助。

It's him that you must apply to. It's to him that you must apply. 你要申请, 必须找他。

When was it that they were in prison? (When was the time in which they were in prison?) 他们坐牢那是什么时候?

It was with a sigh that he consented. (The manner/way in which he consented was like that.) 他虽然同意了, 却是唉声叹气勉强同意的。

Although the work progresses, it is but slowly. (...it is but slowly that it progresses. 之略) 工作尽管有所进展, 但进展很慢。

6) 从后指用法虚化为引词, 后接动名词/不定式:

It has been just splendid meeting you here. 在这儿见到你，真是太好了。(It, 形式主语; meeting..., 主语)

It was the merest chance my taking these pills. 这种药我吃的时候太少了。

It's absurd talking/to talk like that. 这种说法太荒谬了。*It's no use John's saying anything/for John to say anything.* (Curme) 约翰什么也没用说。

It was careless of you to say such a thing. 你这么说不加小心了。

It rests with you to decide. 怎么决定全在你呢。

You must find it exciting working here. 你一定觉得在这儿工作是紧张热烈的(it, 形式宾语; working here, 宾语; exciting, 宾语补语)

I made it my business to settle the matter. 我把解决这个问题作为我的任务。*I found it quite impossible to read these contributions.* 我发现这些来稿根本看不清。

7) 虚化为引词, 作形式主语, 后接主语从句:

It's no business of yours what I think. 我的想法不关你的事。*It doesn't matter in the slightest degree where you begin.* 你从哪儿开始都毫无关系。*It's uncertain whether she will go or not.* 她去不去不能肯定。

It is said/goes without saying that dead men tell no tales. 据说/不用说, 死人嘴里什么也透露不出来。

It seems that/as if there is something the matter with her. (There seems to be something the matter with her. 复合主语句) 看来, 她是/好象是有些为难之事。

8) 虚化为引词, 作形式宾语, 后接带补语的宾语从句:

I made it a rule that I should side with the weaker party. (比较不定式宾语: *I made it a rule to side with the weaker party.*) 我固定不移地总是站在弱者一边。

I owe *it* to you *that* the jury acquitted me. 陪审团宣告我无罪，我要感谢您。(把此事归功于您)

He took *it* for granted *that* I would come. 他认为我要来是理所当然的。

Something put *it* into his head *that* she was a spy. 某些迹象已把“她是个间谍”的想法印在他头脑里。

9) 虚化为引词，在动词后包括短语动词(带介词)后引导宾语从句，或在介词后引导介词宾语从句：

I take *it that* we are to come early. (ALD) 我认为我们应该早来。Rumour has *it that* the government will be defeated in Parliament tomorrow. (LDCE) 谣传明天的国会会议上现内阁将被反对党击败。He resents *it terribly that* he's ill and I'm well. 他身体不好而我身体很好，他为此非常气忿。

I took his word for *it that* he would make another effort. 我听他这么说，认为他真要再做一次努力。I will answer for *it that* she is honest. 我愿担保她是诚实的。You may depend/rely(up)on *it that* things will come right. 你可以放心，最后一切都会安顿好的。

There is no doubt (about *it*) *that* John will come on time. 毫无疑问，约翰一定按时来到(*that*后为介词宾语从句，并非doubt的同位语从句；比较There is some doubt (as to/about) whether John will come on time. 中如略介词，后面可看作同位语从句)

I saw/can swear (to *it*) *that* he never left my sight. (Close) (介词与*it*可略去，使动词紧接宾语从句)我特别注意让他/我敢断定他一直没逃出我的视线。

We'll see (to *it*) *that* she gets home early. (Hornby) 我们要保证让她早早回到家里。

I must insist (upon *it*) *that* everyone leaves/leave/

should leave the room. (Close) 我必须坚持让所有的人都离开这间屋。但 The teacher insisted (on it) that his students arrived early. 一句, 只是在接有...and they had to之类下文或相应上文的情况下, 才是“老师坚持让……”之意, 否则就是“老师肯定地说他的学生们早早就来到了。”

10) 虚化为某些动词 (包括不及物动词及由名词转作动词者) 无意义的形式宾语, 构成惯用语:

You'll catch it. 你要挨骂 (打) 了。

I'll give it him hot. 我要好好教训他一顿。

Go it while you're young. 趁年轻, 快努力。

You can hardly come it too strong when warning children of traffic dangers. 警告儿童防止被车辆撞上, 怎么说也不会过分。

I must have it out with/of him. 我一定跟他辩个明白/找他算这笔帐 (报仇)。

We footed it all the way. 我们一路走着来的。

They lorded it over us. 他们仗势欺压我们。

7.2 as从副词到连词、关系代词, 从连词到介词

as与also同源, 最初为副词, 如在 I don't run as/sn fast. (LDCE) 句中。

as 虚化为连词引导多种状语从句的用法已见于第五章; 由连词转作关系代词的用法 (She's a fine singer as her mother used to be. (Swan) 她象她的母亲一样, 也是一名好歌手。) 见3.3。

这里着重讨论as由连词转作介词的多种用法。从下列四句可以看出as是怎样由连词转为介词的:

She's not as experienced as I/me. (as I 为as I am之略) 她不如我这样有经验。

The boy does his job as a skilled worker (does

it).这孩子干活象个熟练工人。

His mother still treats him *as* (she treats) *a child*.他的母亲还象对待小孩一样对待他。

A loaf goes into the oven *as* (it is yet) *dough* and comes out *as* (it has become) *bread*.一块面包进烤炉时还是面团,出来时就成了烤熟的面包了。

*as*构成的介词短语可担任几种状语,还可担任定语、同位语、表语。注意,因其原为连词(所连接从句被省略到只剩一个成分),故“介词”*as*有时以形容词、分词、介词短语为其“介词宾语”。

1) 介词短语作时间状语:

As a girl, she was rather delicate.她小时候身体很单薄。

As a boy he had been too idle, *as a man* he soon became too busy.小时候他太懒散了,长大后很快又忙得太忙了。

比较: She showed me a portrait of her mother *as a young woman*. (她把她母亲年轻时的一张照片拿给我看。)句中*as a young woman*为定语

2) 介词短语作方式状语:

She spoke of me *as her dearest friend*.她谈起我就象谈起她最好的朋友那样。

He behaved *as one drunk*.他的举动象醉汉。

The audience rose *as one man*.观众一致起立。

The ship first appeared *as a mere speck* on the horizon.那船开始出现在海空交界线上象个小小的斑点。

In Greece, *as in Italy*, they use a lot of olive oil in cooking. (Swan)(*as in Italy*应是*in the same way as people do in Italy*之类之略,为方式状语)在希腊,象在意大利那样,做菜时用大量的橄榄油。

3) 介词短语作原因状语:

The criminal was ordered to be deported *as (being) an undesirable alien*. (Wood) 那罪犯作为一个不受欢迎的外国人被遣送出境。

He is the dean, and *as such* has to sign the paper. 他是系主任, 因此他要在那份文件上签字。

He wished to join the army, but was rejected *as (being) medically unfit*. 他想参军, 但因身体不合格未被接纳。

Our remaining horse was utterly useless *as wanting an eye*. 我们剩下的那匹马因瞎了一只眼根本用不上。

4) 介词短语作依照状语 (参见5.3,4):

As scheduled, they met on January 20. 他们按预定计划在一月二十日见了面。

He repeats that he is telling the story *as seen by himself at the time*. 他反复说他讲的情况是当时亲眼所见。

As variously estimated, the Indians numbered from 14 million to 40 million in Columbus' time. 据不同的估计数字, 哥伦布时代, 印第安人有一千四百万到四千万。

5) 介词短语作职能状语 (adverbial of capacity; 回答In what capacity/role? 的问题, 参见 Wood, EPI), 说明事物 (句中名词性成分) 在运动或联系中一时或一个方面的职能特征 [(比较下面6)中as介词短语作定语说明事物本身的固有属性]:

He only said it *as a joke*. 他是当作玩笑这么说的。

It serves *as a reading-room*. 这间屋用作阅览室。

As a work of art it is very poor. 作为一件艺术品, 这东西太差了。

Would you mind if I took one of these books *as a keepsake*? 我想把其中一本带去作为纪念, 你没意见吧?

He tries *as an experiment* a short story. 作为试验，他写了一个短篇小说。

I had no success *as a novelist*. 作为小说家，我毫无成就。

She was given to another family *as a child bride*. 她被送给另外一家去当童养媳。

I don't think much of him *as a musician*. 他作为一个音乐家，我对他评价不高。

6) 介词短语作定语:

I got a job *as a carpenter* with a ship builder. (比较 I was given the job of ship's carpenter. (Hill)) 我找到了工作，在一个造船商那里当木工。

His career *as a lawyer* (His lawyer career) was short but brilliant. 他当律师的经历虽短却是很有作为的。

You are to be responsible for the work *as a whole*. 你要对整个这项工作负责。

A country so large/so large a country *as the US* (A very large country like the US) usually has quite different climates in its different parts. 象美国这样大的国家，一般是不同地区有大不相同的气候。

men *as different from animals* 不同于动物的人

the church *as separate from the state* 与政权分开的教会

7) 作为介词引导同位语:

In some words in English the initial "h" is not sounded, *as honour, honest, hour, etc.* (some words 就是 honour、honest、hour 等; 而上面6) 第四句中的 so large a country 并非就是 the US) 某些英语词中，开头的字母 h 不发音，如 honour、honest、hour 等词。

Such dictionaries/Dictionaries *such as those* are

very valuable, 那些词典很有价值。

8) 介词短语作表语:

The world is *as a stage*. 世界象座大舞台。

He was *as a man in a trance*. 他象个失去神智之人。

Knowledge is *as nothing* compared with doing. 同实践比较起来, 知识算不了什么。

7.3 as引导宾语补语和主语补语

宾语补语和主语补语分别是复合宾语和复合主语中不可缺少的组成部分。

He openly criticized her/the plan. (他公开批评了她/这项计划) 是个完整句。因而 He openly criticized the plan *as unworkable* (行不通的)。中的 *as unworkable* 就不是宾语补语而是方面状语; 与此相似, He criticized her *as showing no interest in her work*. 中的 *as showing no interest*... 也不是宾语补语, 而是原因状语 (或方面状语)。

但如只说 I count him, 就不是完整句了。可以说 I count him *(as) my friend*. (GCE); 我把他看作我的朋友。句中 him 与 *(as) my friend* 构成复合宾语, 而 *(as) my friend* 为宾语补语。

下列动词所接宾语补语或主语补语要由 *as* 引导: accept, acknowledge, assume, look upon, recognize, regard, see, take, treat (部分“认识”、“态度”动词), define, describe (“表述”动词)。

有些动词所接宾语补语或主语补语前可以加 *as*, 也可不加 *as*: choose, elect, name, appoint (部分“使任”动词), consider, count, imagine (部分“认识”动词) 等。

本节最前边一组例句中的 *as unworkable* 与 *as showing no interest* 以及前一节提到作状语、表语等的“介词”短语 *as (being) medically unfit, as different from animals,*

as seen by himself, as in Italy等, 都表明as可以接用形容词、分词或另一介词短语。这一节讨论as引导宾语补语和主语补语, 将更多见到as接用的这几种非名词性词语。

1) 引导名词/代词宾语补语/主语补语:

I consider him (to be/as) a swindler. (I consider him as nothing more than a swindler.) 我认为他(不过)是个骗子。(指简单关系不用as:I consider it a good thing. 我认为这是好事。)

I appointed/named him as Secretary of State. (简单命名不加as:I named him Henry.) 我任命/提名他为国务卿。

How can one define visual beauty as something which arouse pleasant sensations? 我们怎能给视觉美下定义只说它是引起快感的东西呢? The children accepted him as one of the group and played with him. 孩子们承认他是他们的一员, 也和他一起玩。

Here ambition is presented as a vice to be avoided. (as a vice为主语补语; ambition与as a vice构成复合主语) 这里, 有雄心被说成是不该有的坏事。

He wasn't recognized as (being) a great writer until after his death. 直到死后, 他才被人们承认为伟大作家。

He strikes me as an honest man. (主动句复合主语He与as an honest man) 我觉得他是个老实人。

2) 引导形容词宾语补语/主语补语:

I consider it (as) preferable/necessary. 我认为这样更好/很必要。

I see it as (being) quite possible. 我看这很可能。

I hesitate to describe him as really clever. (ALD) 我不敢说他真是聪明。

He took/accepted it as true. 他以为/相信了那是真

的。

The rules strike me as comical. (RHD; 主语补语)
我觉得这些规矩很可笑。

She was assumed/counted as dead. 人们认为她死了。

3) 引导现在分词宾语补语/主语补语:

I imagined him (as being)/ (to be) older. 我原以为他的年龄比这要大些。

I took it as meaning yes. 我以为这是同意的意思。

We see all matter as changing. 我们认为一切物质都在变化。

He described the room as resembling an attic. 他把那房间说得象是个小阁楼。

They supposed they must look upon Mr Bosinney as belonging to the family. 他们认为他们必须把伯辛尼先生看作这个家庭的成员。

This remark should not be taken as implying agreement with any of his conclusions. (主语补语) 这个说法不应该被看成是对他的任何一项结论表示赞同。

4) 引导过去分词宾语补语/主语补语:

I regard it as lost/settled. 我认为这东西丢了/这事已经解决了。

She had taken it as established that he and she would spend the evening together. 她原以为他要和她一起度过这个晚上, 这是肯定的。

The division of domestic duties between males and females is accepted as wholly given. (主语补语) 男女之间家务的分工被认为完全是既定的。

5) 引导不定式宾语补语/主语补语:

I regard myself as very much to blame. (Snow)
(比较: *I am regarded as very much to blame.*) 我认为

自己有很大责任。

6) 引导介词短语宾语补语/主语补语:

I regard him *as among my friends*. 我认为他是我的朋友之一。She regards him *as (being) without principles*.

(LDCE) 她认为他没有原则。

Her account of the accident was regarded *as of little value*. (主语补语) 她对于这事故的陈述被认为没什么价值。

另外, 有一种和复合主语中的主语补语相似的成分, 却因并不构成复合主语而只应看作表语。I came into this city *(as) a hero*. (Curme) (我进入这座城市时是个英雄。) He died six years later *(as) a poor, aged, lonely man*. (ib)

(六年后他死去时, 贫困、衰老而孤独。) 二句谓语可称为“动词、表语复合谓语”, 而 *(as) a hero/a poor...man* 即为复合谓语中的表语。复合谓语中也常不用 *as*:

They went *enemies* and returned *friends*. (井上)

7.4 while, when, where各有十来种句法功能

*while*最常用作主从连词, 有引导时间从句、条件从句、让步从句、对照从句等几种功能(参见5.3):

While I breathe, I hope. (时间或条件) 只要我一息尚存, 我总抱着希望。

While I understand what you say, I can't agree with you. (LDCE) (让步) 我虽理解你的话, 却不能赞同你。

The quotas were constantly increased, *while* wages were lowered. (对照) 定额不断增加, 工资却被减少。

While the book will be welcomed by scholars, it will make an immediate appeal to the general reader.

(WNCD) 此书一方面将为学者欢迎, 同时将立即引起普通读

者的兴趣。

对照的意义可能减弱，使while成为并列连词：

Sandy comes from Chicago, *while/and* Bill from New York. 山迪是芝加哥人，而比尔是纽约人。

One sang, another danced, *while/and* a third played the piano. 一个唱歌，另一个跳舞，还有一个弹钢琴。

但while在作连词（十二世纪）前古英语中原是名词，现仍常用作名词；在近代它还被转作动词：

She makes a mistake only *once in a great while*. 她出错的时候很少。

No reading is *worth your while/worth while* unless you enjoy it. 如果书读得没兴趣，就不值得费这个工夫。

We *whiled* away a couple of hours looking at the pictures. 我们看画，消磨了几个小时。

疑问副词when与where能引导名词性问题从句；失去疑问意义作为连接代词，能引导名词性关系从句（2.3）：

None but the wearer knows *where* the shoe pinches. (谚语) 只有穿那只鞋的人知道鞋什么地方挤脚。不当其事，不知其苦。

That's *where* it is/we differ. 关键/我们的分歧就在于此。That's *when* silence may be the most considerate form of communication. 就是这种时候，沉默可能是传达心声的最亲切的方式。It makes you think of *when* you were a boy. 这使你想起你小的时候。

上句中的when如改为the days when, when就转为关系代词，引导定语从句了。比较：

I hope the day is not far distant *when* I shall realize the desire of my heart. 我希望，我心底宿愿能得实现的日子为期不远了。

转作主从连词的when和where能分别引导多种从句。when引导时间从句、条件从句、让步从句、原因从句，where引导处所从句、条件从句、方面从句、对照从句：

He looked in *when* (he was) passing. 他经过时往里望了望。How can he succeed *when* he won't work? (条件或原因) 如果/既然他不肯干，他怎能成功呢？He keeps on talking *when* he knows it annoys us. (让步) 他虽然知道那么谈话会烦扰我们，却继续谈个不停。

I'll go *where/wherever* you go. 你到哪儿去我就到哪儿去。*Where* there is a will, there is a way. (条件) 有志者事竟成。The prospects were hopeless, *where* England was concerned. (方面) 就英国说来，前景是毫无希望了。They want a house, *where/whereas/while/and* we would rather live in a flat. (对照) 他们想住单独的一所房子，而我们愿意住楼房里的一套房间。

如把I (suddenly) came across him *when* I was taking a walk. 的主、从句颠倒过来说I was taking a walk, (多有逗号) *when* (suddenly) I came across him. 句中*when*就不是主从连词引导时间从句了，这里不是at the time that “当……的时候”之意。这个*when*原是关系副词引导非限制性定语从句，修饰整个主句，但按其与主句关系的松散程度说来，有人称这里*when*所引导的为并列分句，说这个*when*是并列连词，意思是and/but then “而这时”。再比较：

The thunder was roaring and the wind blowing a gale, *when* we all listened and couldn't go to sleep.

(接整个前一分句) 雷在轰鸣，风在狂吼，而我们都听着，睡不着觉。

It was his custom to sit by the fire till twelve, *when* he would go soberly to bed. (修饰一先行词twelve (o'clock)) 他惯于在炉边坐到十二点，这时才平静地就寝。

下面句中when后面与其说是从句，不如说是“主句”，是全句最主要部分；而when前面倒是从属部分，说明主要事件发生的时间：

I was about to turn away *when* suddenly he rushed up and fell upon me/and dealt me a blow. (but just then) 我正要走开，但他突然冲上来动手就打给了我一下子。

Hardly had I opened the door *when* he struck me. (LDCE; *when*前部分相当一从句:The moment (that)/As soon as I opened the door…) 我刚一开门，他就向我打来。

*when*与*where*作介词宾语时是用作代词，二者偶见加定冠词则是其名词化用法：

We came a week ago, since *when* (that time) the weather has been bad. 我们是一周前来到的，从那时起天气一直不好。

Where are you going (to)? 你到哪儿去?(可为介词宾语)

I know *the when and where* of his arrest. 我知道他是在何时何地被捕的。

while、*when*、*where*的功能可归纳、对比如下：

句法功能	<i>while</i> 原名词	<i>when</i> 原疑问副词	<i>where</i> 原疑问副词
名词/代词	a/my <i>while</i> 一会儿/我的工夫	Till <i>when</i> will you wait? 你要等到何时?	<i>Where</i> do you come from? 你 是哪儿的人?
动词	<i>while</i> away the tedium of a journey 消磨 旅途的烦闷		
疑问副词		<i>When</i> = <i>What</i> time? 可引导问 题从句	<i>Where</i> = <i>What</i> place? 可引导问 题从句

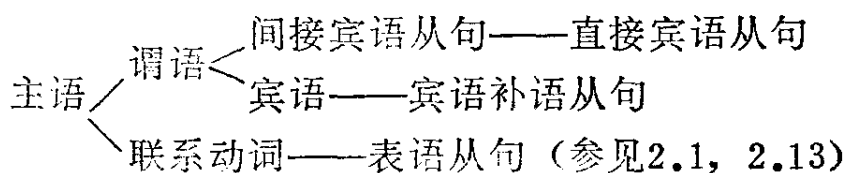
续表

连接副词：引导 名词性关系从句		when = the time when	where = the place where
关系副词：引导 定语从句		when = at which time	where = at which place
主从连词：引导 状语从句	while 引导时 间/条件/让步/对 照从句	when 引导时 间/条件/让步/原 因从句	where 引导处 所/条件/方式/对 照从句
并列连词：引导 并列分句	while = whereas	when = and/but then	where = whereas

第八章 从句语序、从句时态的 简化以及词语的省略

8.1 从句位置与主、从句中的倒装

从句位置一般相当相应成分的句中位置：



He will convince *whoever comes to him* (间接宾语从句) *that another united effort will certainly bear fruit.* (直接宾语从句) 他将说服所有到他那里去的人，让他们相信，再一次一致努力一定会取得成果。

We'll make him *whatever he is fit for.* (宾语补语从句) 他能成为什么材料，我们就把他培养成什么材料。

定语从句象各种短语定语那样，位于所修饰的名词性成分后面：

It is a game at which two can play. 那一套你会，我也会。

状语从句大都象各种短语状语那样，位于句子后部即修饰的动词、形容词等词语后面，或位于句子前部，或者插于句子中间，但结果状语从句只能位于句子后部：

He managed to devise some effective means, *so that he accomplished his purpose at length.* (结果从句) 他想出了一种很有效的办法，终于达到了目的。

So that he accomplishes his purpose, he is indifferent to the means. 或 *He is indifferent to the*

means so that he accomplishes his purpose. (目的从句或条件从句) 为了/只要能达到目的, 他不在乎采用什么手段。

He doesn't think it anything the matter, so that he accomplishes his purpose, whatever means to employ, as the saying goes, by hook or by crook. 只要能达到目的, 他不在乎采用什么手段, 正象俗话说的, 怎么方便怎么干。

但主语从句多不在谓语前; 带宾语补语的宾语从句多不在其补语前: 这和一般主语或带补语的宾语不同。这是因为较长成分多置句末。该成分原位置使用引词it作为形式主语或形式宾语。比较:

It was generally believed that he had gone abroad. (很少说 That he had gone abroad was generally believed.) 一般人都相信他出国了。

I heard it said that he had gone abroad. 我听说他出国了。

They don't think it of any importance what you urged again and again. (很少说 They don't think what you urged again and again of any importance.) 他们认为你一再叮嘱的那些话无关紧要。

从句中的关联词作为实词的, 如连接代词/副词、关系代词/副词等, 担任从句各种成分。但因其固定位于从句开头, 常不合相应成分的一般位置, 不过这种位置异常可以不看作是倒装:

He was a Catholic, as (定语从句表语) most of his friends were. 他的朋友多是天主教徒, 他也是天主教徒。

She travelled a great deal, as (从句宾语) most of her relatives did. 她的亲属大多数都到过很多地方, 她也到很多地方去过。

然而应当注意, 某些从句中因关联词居于前位, 可使从句主语和谓语倒装:

He was a Catholic, as were most of his friends.

She travelled a great deal, as *did most of her relatives*. (Swan) (这也是为了把较长成分置于句末)

the...the...形式的比例复合句中,却是主句(该句型主句在后)中可因“the+比较级(+所修饰词语)”不是主语,而使主语和谓语倒装(参见5.6,3):

The smaller the assembly (is), the more adaptable is its manufacture to automated techniques. 装配件越小,其制造过程就越易于适应自动化技术。

The higher the speed of the space vehicle (is), the greater will be its power consumption. 宇宙航行器的速度越高,其能量消耗就会越大。

以上两句是主句倒装,因为主句在后,主句主语较长,其谓语动词is/will be较短,这样做可使较长成分位于全句句末(其中第一句主句状语to automated techniques最长,故在最后)。

定语从句中,也常见把较长主语和较短谓语动词的位置颠倒过来,使较长成分位于句末:

He is a man on whom/on whose shoulders falls a heavy responsibility. (Close)他是个身负重任/肩负重任之人)

较长成分殿后形成的倒装称为稳重倒装,为此修饰主语的定语从句常置简短谓语之后:

It is dogged that does it. (谚语)世上无难事,只怕有心人。

He dances well to whom fortune pipes. (谚语)走运之人,事事顺心。(分裂句属稳重倒装,见4.1)

only、not、no、hardly、so、such等,可为了加强语气,将其所构成的成分或其本身置于简单句或并列复合句句首,其后是主、谓语倒装或部分倒装(Only then and not till then should you be there. 直到那时你才应来到那里)。主从复合

句中也有相应的倒装用法:

1) 从句用*only when*...、*not until*...等引导, 所接主句的主、谓倒装或部分倒装:

Only when all members are present, are they capable of making a feasible decision. 只有当全体出席时, 他们才能作出实际可行的决定。

Only after he entered the room did he realize how chilled he was. (It was only after he entered the room that he realized how chilled he was.) 只是在他进了房间以后, 他才觉出他已冻得浑身冰冷。

Not indeed until it was too late did Wilde himself actually realized the importance of being earnest. 直到为时太晚了, 怀尔德才认识到应当认真抓紧, 那很重要。

比较并列复合句: *No^t only did we lose all our money, but we also came close to losing our lives.* 我们不仅失去了所有的钱, 连性命也差点丢掉。

2) 主句用*no sooner*、*hardly*、*so*、*such*等开头, 主句本身主、谓倒装或部分倒装:

No sooner had he uttered it/He had no sooner uttered it than he fell dead. 这话刚一出口, 他就倒地身亡了。(前面主句实属时间从句性质, 后面从句是全句重点)

Hardly/Scarcely had/was he gone when/before they spoke ill of him. 他刚一走, 他们就说起他的坏话来了。

比较简单句: *Scarcely had he time to finish his dinner.* 他急急忙忙地勉强吃完了饭。

So numerous and so base were his risque stories that everybody began to be disgusted. 他的生活作风问题太多、太卑鄙了, 大家都开始讨厌他。

主句在后, 亦可倒装: *If he is going, so am I.* 如果他去, 我也去。

To such lengths did he go with his risqué stories that everybody began to be disgusted. 他的生活作风问题闹得太严重了，大家都开始讨厌他。

Such noble and manly deeds did he achieve that he was held in high regard by all the villagers. 他做出了非常高尚英勇的事迹，全体村民都很尊敬他。

3) 主句用表语开头，主句本身主、谓倒装或部分倒装；或从句用“表语 + as...”开头，从句本身主、谓倒装或部分倒装；

Great was our surprise when we found the room empty. 我们发现屋里空无一人，大吃一惊。

Terrible as was the storm/Terrible as the storm was, we continued our way. 尽管暴风雨那么凶狂，我们还是继续赶路。

以上三大类主句或从句倒装结构中，有的是起承接作用的，如If he's going, so am I. 中so即承接前句，I为句末重点；如说Now you've told them I am good for nothing, so I am. (既然你对他们说我是废物，我就算是废物吧!)，句中so仍承前，而am成为句末重点。但上列大多数引起主、谓倒装的前置用法还是为了加强语气，为此还可把整个后位从句(宾语从句等)置于主句之前：

Little black figures darted among the smoke but whether one of them wore a red coat I could not see. 浓烟中许多小黑人影在奔跑，但其中是否有个穿红上衣的，我却看不出来。

用来加强语气的“强调倒装”、用来承接前句的“承接倒装”，及使句末沉稳的稳重倒装——简单句(或并列复合句)中的倒装语序就是这样三种，主从复合句中三种倒装的作用与简单句中相同。

8.2 间接引语中动词“错向过去”与否的含义差别，情态动词“错向过去”与否

正如M. Swan (534, 5) 所说，间接引语所用词语和直接引语的不同是自然的，因时因地而宜，不必讲那么多复杂“规则”，做那么多直接“变”间接的练习。汉语间接引语和直接引语的自然区别，也完全适用于英语。掌握了英语各种时态用法，熟悉其陈述、疑问、祈使各句型，自然就会运用间接引语。

例如，处所不变则已，如有变动，原来的“这”自然成为“那”。时间所指不变则已（如原指长远情况的“一般现在”至今仍是现在，或原指的将来至今还是将来），如有变动，原“将来”自然成为“过去的将来”，原“明天”成为“第二天”，原“现在”成为“过去”，原“现已完成”成为“过去完成”，原“过去”成为“过去的过去（用过去完成形式）”，原“昨天”成为“前一天”等等。这就是说，时间如有推移，间接引语中的动词和原话中的动词相比，要“错向过去”（back-shift）：

She told me this morning that she's only twenty.

（今年谈今年情况，间接引语动词不“错向过去”）她今天上午对我说，她刚二十岁。

She told me last year that she was twenty. 她去年对我说，她那时是二十岁。

"I'm blameless." —Socrates said that he *was* blameless. 苏格拉底说，他没有过错。

"I've seen him." —She said she *had seen* him (already). 她说她已见到他。*"I saw him yesterday."* —She said she *had seen* him the day before. 她说她前一天曾见到他。

一般情况下，如当时原话中的“现在”指长远情况，则间接引语中的动词照原话动词现在形式不变；如当时原话中的“现在”仅指一时情况，则间接引语中的动词要“错向过去”，表示至

今已是事过境迁：

I realized that life is a gamble. 我认识到人生就是一场赌博。I realized that life *was* a gamble. (当时那样想，现在知道那种想法不对)

These arguments showed that the world is round. (也可说*was round*强调转述原话) 这些论据表明地球是圆的。These arguments showed that the world *was* flat. 这些论点把世界说成是平的。(现在那种说法已被否定)

Chang was telling me that your favourite composer is Mozart. 老张说你最喜欢的作曲家是莫扎特。Chang was telling me...*was* Mozart. (当时是，现在呢？原话这么说，是真的吗？现在真实性可疑)

但是，英语有种汉语所无的特殊表现法：过去原话所指“现在”虽较长远而且延伸至今仍是“现在”，间接引语中还可对原话中的现在形式改用过去形式来传达，以强调这是转述原话。

“How old are you?” -- “Pardon?” -- “I asked you how old you *were*.” (Swan) “你多大年龄？”——“您再说一遍好吗？”——“我刚才问你你多大年龄。”

如说I'm asking you how old you *are*. (我在问你，你现在多大年龄。) 是指现在的意念。

转述一个人所说自己当年的年龄，为强调仅传原话就会说She told me this morning that *she was* only twenty. (她自称年仅二十，信不信由你。)

再比较He said he *is* looking forward to the year 2000. (他说他盼望着那一年的到来，我相信。) 和He said he *was* looking forward to the year 2000. (他自称盼着，我不加评论。) 而He said he *was* looking forward to the year 1950. 中只能用*was*，因原“现在正在”已成“过去正在”。

Socrates said that virtue is knowledge. 苏格拉底说

善就是真知(我同意)。Socrates said that virtue *was* knowledge. (苏格拉底原论点, 人们未必当作真理。)

转述所说将来(至今仍是将来)情况, 也有“错向过去”与否的两种间接引语:

John said *he's coming*. (约翰说他就要来了, 真的。)

John said *he was coming*. (他说就要来, 真情未测。)

He announced that *he is getting married next June*.

(他宣布六月份将结婚, 理当属实。) He announced that *he was getting married next June*. (他扬言如此, 能照办吗?)

He said *he will visit us when the weather is finer*.

(Palmer) (我相信天气会好转, 他也真的要来。) He said *he would visit us when the weather is finer*. (ib) (天气自然会好转, 但他嘴说要来, 等着看他来不来吧!) He said *he would visit us when the weather was finer*. (ib) (天气会不会好转, 他会不会来, 都未可知。)

但当说话人只是要强调转述的是过去原话时, 即使原指情况至今仍然合适, 也只能用“错向过去”形式:

I always said *he was a liar*. (Leech) (我原来就总说, 他是个骗子, 现在你看, 我过去说对了!)

与间接引语性质相似, 有些引述过去感受、认识、思想的宾语从句, 其中所感与否、所知与否、所想与否的情况即使至今仍继续存在, 该宾语从句动词也多要使用“错向过去”形式:

I forgot you *were* listening. (Leech) 我(刚才)忘了, 你一直在听着。

I didn't know *he was* a teetotaller. (ib) 我原来不知道他是根本不喝酒的。

Little did I think that you *liked* it. 我根本没想到你是喜欢它的。

I knew you *weren't coming*. (Palmer) 我知道你是不会来的。

有些动词形式，因无法或无须在间接引语中“错向过去”，就保持与原话中相同的形式，这些形式包括：1) 动词过去完成时形式；2) 动词虚拟语气“错向过去”形式；3) 已取过去形式的情态动词、助动词（属直陈或虚拟语气的could、might、would、should）；4) 没有过去形式的情态动词（must、ought to）。

1) 原话中的过去完成形式无法再“错向过去”：

“I'd already seen him by then.” — He said he'd already seen that man by then. 他说当时他已见过那人。

如原话中的过去形式意在指明事实而不着重其先已发生，转述中也无须将其再“错向过去”：

He told us he was in his first year at the university when the war broke out. 他告诉我们，战争爆发时他在上大学一年级。

2) 原话中的虚拟语气were型（过去形式）多无须再“错向过去”，仅在强调该情况纯属违反过去实际的假想时，才将其“错向过去”成为had been型（过去完成形式）：

“I wish I were in your place.” — He said he wished he were in my place. 他说他希望处在我的地位。

“I'd rather you left right now.” — He said he'd rather I left right away. 他说他希望我马上就离开。

“It's time we had a holiday.” — He said it was time we had a holiday. 他说我们该休假了。

“If you called on me tomorrow, I could see you for half an hour.” — He said that if I called on him the next day he could see me for half an hour.

(Swan) (原虚拟called情况或已发生，或未发生) 他说，如果我第二天来找他，他可以和我会见，谈半个小时。

“If I had any money, I'd buy you a drink.” — He said if he'd had any money he'd have bought me a drink. (ib) (强调其纯属违实假想) 他说，假如当时他有点

钱，他就要给我买一杯饮料。

原话中的虚拟语气had been型（过去完成形式）无法再“错向过去”。

3) 原话中已取过去形式的情态动词、助动词：

“Peter might phone. If he does, could/would you ask him to ring later?”——He said Peter *might* phone. He asked me if I *could/would* ask Peter to ring later if he phoned. (原表示虚拟语气指将来的过去形式在间接引语中不变仍表虚拟) 他说彼得可能来电话。他问我，如果彼得来电话，我是否可以让他早些时候再打电话来。

“He would go there every day.” ——She said he *would* go there every day. (原直陈语气过去将来时助动词“将”，或指过去情态动词“愿”) 她说他将/愿天天到那里去。(比较：“He will go.”——He said he would go.)

“I ought to/should go.” ——He said he ought to/*should* go. (should为shall错向过去的虚拟语气形式，ought在历史上原亦属虚拟) 他说他应该去。

“I ouhgt to have gone/should have gone.” ——He said he ought to have gone/*should have gone*. 他说他当初本应到那里去的。(实际没去)

“If you/she should (情态动词“竟然”) be absent, we should (一人称助动词“将会”)/they would (二、三人称助动词“将会”) be sorry. ——He said if you/she *should* be absieht, they *would* be sorry. 他说如你/她竟会不到，他们将深感遗憾。

4) 没有过去形式的情态动词must——如在原话中表示主观必然或必要(推断、坚持、命令)，间接引语中照用不变；如在原话中表示客观必要(“不得不”)，间接引语中或照用不变，或改作had to(指过去)/would have to(指过去将来)：

“You must be hungry.” ——He said that they

must be hungry. (推断) 他说他们准是饿了。

“*I must stay.*” ——*She said she must stay.* (坚持)
她说她一定要留下。

“*John must go.*” ——*She said John must go.* (命令)
她说约翰必须走。“*You mustn't go.*” ——*She said I mustn't go.* (禁止, 亦属命令) 她说我绝对不能走。

“*I must/have to walk to work.*” ——*He said he must/had to walk to work.* (客观必要) 他说他不得不走着上班。

另外, 转述疑问句, 一般用以问题从句 (2.4—2.7) 为宾语从句的复合句; 但转述实际只表请求、建议的疑问句, 可象转述祈使句一样, 在简单句中使用不定式或动名词短语:

“*Sit down,*” *I snapped.* ——*I snapped at him to sit down./I told him with a sneer to sit down.* (GCE)
我厌烦地让他坐下。

“*Would you spare me a few minutes?*” ——*He asked me to spare him a few minutes.* 他请求我花几分钟时间跟他谈谈。

“*Shall I run you home?*” ——*He suggested running us home in his car/offered to run us home.* 他提出用车送我们回家。

“*Shall I paint it green?*” ——*He suggested painting it green/that it (should) be painted green.* 他建议把它油成绿的。

8.3 从句指将来动词常用较简便现在/现在进行/现在完成形式

在主句动词的将来形式已表明全句指将来的情况下, 或在主句动词词义已表明从句指将来的情况下, 从句指将来的动词在语法规则上惯用现在/现在进行/现在完成形式, 不可用较复杂 (而

且属于错误的) 将来及将来进行/将来完成形式:

I'll be happy when I'm sitting at home again drinking a pint of beer and watching TV. (状语从句指将来可用现在进行形式) 当我再能坐在家里, 端来一品脱啤酒喝着, 看着电视, 我就会感到很幸福了。

I'll come/I'm coming after I've seen him. (状语从句指将来已完成行为用现在完成形式) 我见他以后就来。

I bet (that) she's married before the end of the year. (Swan) (主句动词词义表明宾语从句指将来, 宾语从句指将来已完成行为用现在完成形式) 我敢断定, 今年年底以前她一定已经结婚了。

从句指将来动词用简便现在一类形式的用法, 适用于大多数各种状语从句、各种名词从句, 以及定语从句。现依次分述如下。

1) 时间从句、处所从句中:

When/After/The moment he arrives, the band will play the National Anthem. 他来到时/来到后/一来到, 乐队即将演奏国歌。

I'll be home before you are. 你到家前我就到家了。

I'll tell you as soon as I know. 我知道了就告诉你。

I shan't be forty till I'm nearly twice as old as I am now. 直到我的年龄比现在大到将近一倍时我才四十。

By the time you get it I shall have succeeded. 等你得到这个机会的时候, 我已经大功告成了。

I'll go where you go. (Swan) 你去哪儿我就去哪儿。

比较: It will require a lot of persuasion before she will go. 句中后一个will是情态动词“愿意”, 不是将来时助动词(要费很多唇舌劝她, 她才会愿意去的)。

2) 条件从句、让步从句中:

I'll come to your house if you don't come to the

office tomorrow. 如果你明天不到办公室来, 我将去你家。

Supposing it *snows*, what shall we do? 如果下雪, 咱们怎么办?

Even if tomorrow's match is *cancelled*, Lancashire will still be top of the league. 即使明天的球赛不再举行, 兰开夏队也将是联合会联赛的冠军。

I'll have a good time whether I *win* or *lose*. 不管我是胜是负, 我都会玩得很高兴的。

比较: There will be no trains tomorrow unless they will call off the strike. 句中后一个 will 是情态动词“愿意”(除非他们肯停止罢工, 明天将没有火车)。如不用情态动词, 可以说: Unless the strike *has been called off* (从句用现在完成形式), there will be no trains tomorrow. (GCE)

条件/让步从句表示事物间的纵向关系特征, 从句情况发生的时间可能与主句情况发生的时间不同; 如主句不指将来, 从句动词指将来, 则从句动词还必须单独使用将来时形式 (见 6.1 中间有关例释)。

3) 方式从句、比较从句中:

Next time I'll do as he *says*. 下一次我将照他说的那样行事。

You can drink as much as you *like* tomorrow, but not tonight. 明天你愿意喝多少就喝多少, 可是今夜不行。

方式/比较从句表示事物间的横向关系特征, 主、从句情况发生的时间多在同时, 但也可能时间不同。主句指将来, 从句不一定也指将来:

As you *sow*, you shall *mow*. (谚语) 种豆得瓜, 种豆得豆。(该 *shall* 为情态动词“必须(照那样收割)”; 全句可指: 现在种, 将来收; 将来种, 将来收; 经常种, 经常收)

It will be as you *wish*. (RHD) 事情将会让你随心所欲。(可指现在希望那样, 或将来希望那样)

They hunted/are hunting/will hunt him as a tiger stalks his prey. 他们追捕他/正在追捕他/将追捕他, 象老虎追踪猎物一样。(指老虎平常追踪猎物那样)

因而, 在方式/比较从句中, 为了明确时间性, 也可以使用动词将来形式 (尽管主句已有动词将来形式):

They'll be on the same plane as I am/as I will.
(Swan) 他们将与我乘同一架飞机。

We'll probably drive faster than you do/than you will. (ib) 我们的车开得很可能比你们的车要快。

但如从上、下文中可以清楚理解从句也指将来 (主句已用动词将来形式), 则方式/比较从句中, 动词还是多用现在形式:

She'll be on the same plane as I am tomorrow.
(ib) 她明天将与我乘同一架飞机。

We'll probably drive faster than you do, so we'll get there first and buy the tickets. 我们的车开得很可能比你们快, 这样我们会先到那里买好票。

4) 目的从句中:

He will come in case he's wanted. 他是要来的, 以准备人们可能需要他。(这是英国英语该句含义; 在美国英语, 句中in case相当if, 全句意义是: 如果有人需要他, 他就来。)

表示因果关系 (直接纵向关系) 的原因从句、结果从句及目的从句 (主观上要达到某结果) 所述情况, 与主句情况多不是同时发生的, 因而主、从句动词一般都各取独立的时态形式, 其中目的从句中多用can/could/may/might/should等情态动词 (很少用shall):

Yesterday I sent/I've already sent/I'm now sending him our proposal so that he can/could/may/might/should have time to consider it before the

meeting. 昨天我给他寄去了/我已给他寄去了/我正在给他寄我们的提议草案, 以便开会前他有时间加以考虑。

I won't mind the heat in Greece because I won't have to move about much. (Swan) 希腊天热, 我不在意, 因为我用不着常常各处走动。

It was such a terrible experience that I will never forget it. 这番经历太可怕了, 我永远不会忘记。

仅在in case引导的目的从句(想达到防止、防备或准备某种情况的目的), 指将来的从句动词常用现在形式:

Take your coat in case it rains/it should rain. (LDCE) (主句指现在或将来, 从句指将来) 拿着你的雨衣, 以防下雨。

I've got my tennis things in case we have time for a game. (主句指现在, 从句指将来) 我把我那些打网球用的东西带上了, 准备或许我们有时间玩一场网球。

5) 名词性问题从句中:

I'll always know where you are. 我要总能知道你去到什么地方了。(比较: I'd like to know when John will be back. 主句动词不属将来时, 从句指将来要用独立的动词将来形式: “我想知道约翰何时回来。”))

I shall ask him what he wants tomorrow. (GCE) 明天我将问他, 他要什么。(比较: The question is what he will want tomorrow. (ib) 主句动词不属将来时, 从句动词用将来形式: “问题是明天他将要什么。”))

If you don't come to the office tomorrow, I'll come to your house and find out why you're not at work. 如果明天你不到办事处来, 我将去你家了解你为什么不上班。

有时主句动词虽不属将来时, 但该动词词义能显示从句指将来, 特别是在一定上下文中, 则从句动词还是只用简便的现在形

式:

Let me know *how you are* from time to time. (from time to time 帮助显示从句指将来) 随时把你的情况告诉我。

I don't care what we *have* for dinner today if I don't have to cook it. 只要不用我做饭, 今天晚上吃什么, 我都无所谓。

It doesn't matter where we *go* on holiday this summer. 今年夏天咱们去哪儿度假都是一样。

It matters little/a great deal whether I *succeed or not*. 我是否将能成功没什么关系/关系重大。

6) 名词性关系从句中:

I'll always do what I *think* is best for everybody. 我将永远为大家做好事, 我认为最有利于大家的事。

They will be thankful for what(ever) *help* you offer them. 不论你能给他们什么帮助, 他们都会很感激的。

She will give whoever *needs* help a warm support. 任何人需要帮助, 她都会给以热情的支持。

7) 名词性 *that* 从句中:

If the police stop me, I'll pretend (that) I *don't understand*. 如果警察们拦住我, 我将假装我不懂他们的意思。

(比较: I know I won't understand. 主句动词不属将来时, 从句动词用将来形式: “我知道我将不会懂的。”)

有时主句动词虽不属将来时, 但该动词词义能显示从句指将来:

I hope you *sleep* well. 我希望你睡得好。

I bet you *don't get up* before ten tomorrow. (Swan) 我敢断言明天十点以前你起不了床。

Suppose he loses his way 也许他会迷路的。

Let's assume our opponents *win* the election. 咱们设想一下咱们的对手在选举中获胜。

但另一方面，即使主句已属将来时，如从句指将来更晚些，从句动词还要取将来形式：

If she rings, I'll tell her (that) I'll ring back later.
如果她来电话，我将告诉她，我将过后再给她打电话。

8) 定语从句中：

I'll give a pound to anybody who washes my car.
谁刷洗我的汽车，我将给他一个英镑。

There will be a special price for anybody who orders a suit in the next two weeks. 任何人在此后两周内订做套服，都将享受特别优惠的价钱。

The first person who opens that door will get a shock. 第一个打开那扇门的人将大吃一惊。

The man who marries my daughter will need to be tough, fast-moving and quick-thinking. 和我的女儿结婚的男子必须是吃苦耐劳、行动迅速、思想敏捷的。

与上述各种在从句中使用简便现在形式的情况不同，下列句中，主句虽实指现在或将来，但因采用了“错向过去”的虚拟形式，所接从句中指现在或将来的动词也要“错向过去”，使其亦属虚拟语气：

Would you follow me wherever I went? (处所从句中) 无论我去哪里，你都愿跟我去吗？

If we both got the same job, you would earn more than I did because of your degree. (比较从句中) 如果我们二人谋得同样的职业，你因有学位将比我挣得多。

In a perfect world you could say exactly what you thought. (名词从句中) 在最理想的社会中，你想什么就可以说什么。

If I were rich, I'd give money to anybody who asked for it. (定语从句中) 我如能致富，谁向我要钱，我都供给。

I would never do anything that *went* against my conscience. (定语从句中) 任何违背良心的事我永远也不会做。

3.4 从句略去与主句词语重复或可以理解的词语

先让我们观察一下下列主从复合句各从句中省略了哪些成分:

I shall not fail to help you *when(it is) necessary*. (可理解主语 *it* 与联系动词 *is*) 必要时我一定帮助你。

When (we are) speaking about English people in general, we can say either "the English" or "Englishmen". (与主句重复的主语 *we* 与进行体助动词 *are*) 我们笼统地谈到英国人时, 可以说 *the English* 或者 *Englishmen*。

A fortress is most vulnerable *when (it is) attacked from within*. (指主句主语的从句主语 *it* 与被动语态助动词 *is*) 堡垒最容易从内部攻破。

Any government, *however (it is) constituted*, must respect the people's wishes. (省略成分同前) 一个政府, 不论是如何组成的, 必须尊重人民的意愿。

If (you are) in doubt, don't hesitate to ask me. (与主句暗含主语重复的主语 *you* 与联系动词 *are*) 如果有不明白的地方, 别顾虑, 快问我。

There are few, *if (there are) any*, mistakes. (与主句重复的形式主语 *there* 与实意动词 *are*) 错即使有, 也很少。

I shall go there by four, *if (I do) not (go) sooner*. (与主句重复的主语 *I* 与否定助动词 *do* 及与主句重复的实意动词 *go*) 如果我不是去得更早的话, 四点前我准去。

可以看出, 最常略去的是与主句重复的主语和动词 *be* (实意动词、联系动词或助动词), 有时是其他助动词及与主句重复的动词。但应注意, 从句主语和 *be* 等动词必须一起略掉, 不能只略

其一，如不能说If you in doubt, … (参见10.6)

与从句时态的简化相似，从句词语的简化也最常见于某些状语从句。as作为连词所引导状语从句（表示时间、方式、原因、依照等）常简略到只剩一个成分而使as成为介词（见7.2）。as与than引导的比较状语从句尤其多属省略句，常使从句形成as/than短语（见5.5）。这里再把多种状语从句及其他类别从句中的省略情况归纳一下，可注意所略的都是与主句重复的或可所理解的词语。

1) 时间、处所从句：

He was fond of swimming *when* yet a child. (比较As a child, he was fond of swimming.) 他还是个孩子的时候就喜欢游泳。

Experience, *when* dearly bought, is seldom thrown away. 付出很大代价取得的经验教训是很少会忘记的。

They're making a feint to the east *while* attacking in the west. 他们这是声东击西。

I got acquainted with him *while* on a visit to Beijing. 我访问北京时认识了他。

Once published, the book caused a remarkable stir. 这本一出版就引起很大震动。

I didn't notice it *till* too late. 我注意时已经晚了。

Please write to me at the above-mentioned address *until* otherwise advised. 在另行通知以前，请按上述地址给我来信。

The river is most smooth *where* deepest. 这条河最深的地方，水面最平静。

Build mainly small projects, supplemented by medium and large ones *where* necessary and feasible. 主要修建小型工程，仅在必要而可行的地方修些中型与大型工程加以补充。

2) 条件、让步从句:

You can do it *if/when* at leisure. 如果你有空闲/当你有空闲的时候, 可以办这件事。

We must go now, *if ever*. (if we are ever to go) 如果我们要去, 必须现在就去。

We shall fight *if necessary*, alone; *if necessary*, forever. 如有必要, 我们将单独作战; 如有必要, 我们将永远打下去。

Conferences are necessary and good, but only good *if followed by action*. 开会是有必要而且有好处的, 但只是跟着采取行动时才有好处。

In this article this word is used in its original sense *unless otherwise stated*. 除非另有说明, 本文中此语仅指其本义。

Frost is possible, *though* not probable. 霜冻的可能性虽然不大, 但还是有可能的。

I must get it done, *whatever* the cost (may be). 无论要付出多大代价, 我也必须完成此事。

No sowing, no reaping, *however* warm the sun, gentle the rain, congenial the soil. 无论太阳多么温暖, 雨水多么调和, 土地多么相宜, 不播种就没有收获。

Stable, high yield fields have been ensured, *no matter what* the weather conditions. 不论碰上什么气候条件, 都保证了这些土地是稳产高产田。

3) 方式、比较从句:

Flowers danced in the gentle breeze *as if* giving us encouragement. 鲜花在微风中舞动, 好象在激励我们。

He shaded his eyes *as though* dazzled by the light. 他用手遮住眼睛, 好象是被这光线把眼照花了。

He was walking up and down *as if* in search of

something. 他来来去去地走, 象是在找什么。

She opened her lips *as if* (she was going) to say something. 她张嘴象是要说什么。

The price is the same *as* before the war. (*as it was before the war*) 价钱和战前一样。

4) 原因从句:

He is a more dangerous, *since* unknown, foe. 由于他是隐蔽的敌人, 所以更加危险。

The position, *as such*, does not appeal to him, but the salary is a lure. 这一职位因为这种情况, 并不是他最喜欢的, 但那薪金颇有吸引力。

5) 名词性问题从句、名词性*that*从句:

Please hand me one of those books. I *don't* care *which*. (*which* you hand me) 把其中一本书递给我。哪本都行。

He'll come back, but he doesn't know *when*. 他是要回来的, 但他不知道什么时候回来。

I've read *that* in some book, but I don't remember *where*. 我在某一本书上曾读过这个, 但不记得在哪儿了。

Will it rain tomorrow? I hope not. (I hope it will not rain, 或 I hope *that* it won't rain.) 会下雨吗? 我希望不要下。

6) 定语从句:

He gave the same answer *as* before. (He gave the same answer *as/that* he had given before. 句中*as/that*为关系代词, 定语从句宾语) 他的回答和以前一样。

She was as fine a ship *as* ever walked the waters. (*as*为定语从句主语) 它是曾在水上航行过的一艘最漂亮的船。
(如说 She was as fine a ship *as* any *that* had ever walked the waters. 则所含从句为比较状语从句)

第九章 选用从句与选用相应结构的比较

9.1 简单句、并列复合句与主从复合句的语体差别

在口语和书面语两大语体中，口语句多较简短，内容多是单一的，故多用简单句；口语中需要说明几个情况间的关系时，常只是用少数并列连词之一把简单句连成并列复合句，表示的只是联合、对立、选择、因果等几种基本关系。而书面语句子多较长，多用较繁杂的结构把互相关连的多种情况综合起来；为了区分主要与次要，确指特定联系的方面、性质、特征等，常用种类繁多的主从连词，把各分句联接成主从复合句。比较：

口语，简单句	书面语，主从复合句
<p>Go straight ahead for a mile. Turn to the right. Then you'll find the house. 一直走一英里。往右拐。你就找到那所房子了。</p> <p>In Paris he met Aime Bonpland. Bonpland was 25. He was well educated, well built, good-looking, in every way comparable to Humboldt. Bonpland's interest was in botany. 在巴黎，他碰见埃麦·邦波朗。邦波朗二十五岁。他教养有素，身体强壮，相貌英俊，各方面都比得上汉勃尔特。邦波朗喜爱植物学。</p>	<p>If you go straight ahead for a mile, turning to the right, you will find the house. 如果你一直往前走，走一英里，你往右一拐，就会找到那所房子。</p> <p>In Paris he met Aime Bonpland, a young man of 25, who was like Humboldt, well educated, well built and good-looking, whose interest was also in scientific expedition, particularly in botanical discoveries. 在巴黎，他碰见埃麦·邦波朗，一个二十五岁的青年，象汉勃尔特一样，也是教养有素，身体强壮，相貌英俊，而且也喜爱从事科学考察，特别想在植物学方面做些新发现。</p>

口语, 并列复合句

Speak the truth and you need have no fear. (联合) 说实话, 就不用怕。

Murder has no tongue, but it will some day speak. (对立) 谋杀案本身不会说话, 但总有一天它要把一切说明。

Hands up or I'll fire. (选择) 举起手来, 不然我要开枪了! (Drop that, or I'll kill you. ≠ Drop that, and I'll kill you. (Close))

Keep in bed for a couple of days, or the cold is hard to shake off. 卧床静养几天吧, 不然这感冒很难摆脱。

The law protected him, or he would have come to a miserable end. 法律保护了他, 不然他会落个很悲惨的下场。

He fell sound asleep, for he was very tired. (因果) 他睡着了, 睡得很香——他太累了。

He was very tired, (and) so he fell asleep. (因果) 他太累了, 就睡着了。

书面语, 主从复合句

If you speak the truth, you need have no fear. 如果你说实话, 你就用不着害怕。

Murder, though it has no tongue, will some day speak. 虽然谋杀案本身不会说话, 但总有一天它要把一切说明。

I will bring the scandal to light unless you hand him over to the police. 除非你把他交给警察, 我要揭发这一丑事。

Unless you keep in bed for a couple of days, the cold is hard to shake off. 除非你卧床静养几天, 这感冒很难摆脱。

Had not the law protected him, he would have come to a miserable end. 若不是法律保护了他, 他会落个很悲惨的下场。

As/Since/Because he was very tired, he fell sound asleep. 由于/因为太累了, 他沉沉睡去。

He was so tired so that he fell asleep. 他太累了, 以致/结果就睡着了。

9.2 选用从句或选用非限定形式短语的语体因素

动词非限定形式短语常可相当从句, 而比从句简洁。无论是口语或书面语中, 都常选用一些不定式短语、分词短语或“介词+动名词”构成的短语(有时还会选用这些非限定形式带逻辑主语的复合结构), 而较少用相应的从句:

Drinking at the spring, the hunter saw a huge lion. (While (he was) drinking at the spring, the hunter saw a huge lion.) 在泉边喝水的时候, 猎人看见一只大狮子。

The hunter saw a huge lion *drinking* at the spring.
(The hunter saw that a huge lion was drinking at the spring.) 猎人看见一只大狮子在泉边喝水。

Painted white, the house looks bigger. (Now that the house has been painted white, it looks bigger.) 这所房子油成白色的，看着大了些。

You lock this door *by turning* the key twice to the left. (You can lock this door as/if you turn the key twice to the left.) 你把钥匙向左转两圈，就把门锁上了。

He never borrowed money *without repaying* it. (He never borrowed money that he did ~~not~~ afterwards repay.) 他没有借钱不还的时候。

He was not a man *to tell* a lie. (He was not such a man as would tell a lie.) 他不是说谎的人。

His mother will be much consoled *to hear of* the escape of her son from so many dangers. (His mother will be much consoled when she hears that her son has escaped so many dangers.) 他母亲听说儿子逃脱了这么多危险，将感到非常欣慰。

There is nothing *to do* for the time being. (不定式主动形式可表“须要”，比较 There is nothing that we should do now.) 目前没有什么要做的事。

There is nothing *to be done* about it. (Schibsbye) (不定式被动形式可表“可能”，比较 There is nothing that we can do about it.) 对此，我们是无能为力了。

It's bad *of you to smoke* before the old ladies. (of 引导带逻辑主语的不定式复合结构) 你在那些年长的夫人面前吸烟，这样做太恶劣了。

It's bad *for you to smoke*. (小西) (for 引导带逻辑主语的不定式复合结构) 你吸烟可不好。(你如果常吸烟或已开始吸

烟，对自己或对别人不利)

Everything taken into consideration, her proposal seems more practicable. (带逻辑主语的分词独立结构; 不必说 *If everything is taken into consideration, her proposal seems more practicable.*) 全面考虑一下, 她的建议看来是比较可行的。

但因动词非限定形式缺乏语气、时态形式, 某些从句的语气或时态意义用非限定形式短语来表达, 可能表达不清, 或者不能表达 (现在分词不等于从句现在时, 不定式不等于从句虚拟语气等);

Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown. (不宜说成 *Uneasy lies the head wearing a crown.*) 戴王冠的头躺下休息也不得安宁。

The dog that fetches carries. (谚语) (*Who chatters to you will chatter of you.*) (不能说 *The dog fetching/ The fetching dog...*) 当着你议论别人的人也会把你的事当着别人议论。(“拿来/带走的狗”指说三道四者)

比较: *A drowning man will clutch at a straw.* 相当于 *A man who is drowning...* (从句现在进行时) 就要淹死的人抓住一根稻草也不放。而 *Barking dogs seldom bite.* (谚语) 相当于 *Dogs that bark at every stranger...* (从句一般现在时) 总是汪汪叫的狗很少真咬人。

比较: *A scalded cat fears cold water.* (谚语) 相当于 *A cat that has once been scalded...* (从句现在完成时) 热水烫过的猫见了凉水也害怕。然而 *The castle, burnt down in 1485, was never rebuilt.* 相当于 *The castle, which was burnt down in 1485, ...* (从句一般过去时) 这座城堡, 一四八五年被烧毁, 一直没有重建。

I wish I had been there. (指过去, 不能说 *I wish to have been there.*) 我希望我原来在那里/到那里去过。(但可

把从句虚拟语气移到前边动词上，后边从句改用不定式：I'd like to have been there. (Hornby)

比较指将来的希望：I wish John to have finished before she comes. (小西)我希望在她来到以前，约翰就已经做完了。

口语倾向简单明了，但不是只追求简短。并不很长而比较明确的从句，在口语中也常使用，而相应的动词非限定形式倒不一定常用。如非限定形式的完成形式与被动形式短语、介词加动名词等构成的短语，就不常见于口语，而常属书面语。特别是非限定形式带逻辑主语所构成的复合结构或独立结构，一般多出现于书面语中。比较：

口语体——用较规、较明确从句	书面语体——用非限定形式短语/结构
<p>When the trick was found out, the master ordered <u>that</u> the man should be dismissed at once. 诡计被识破后，主人下令马上把那人撵走。</p>	<p>On finding out the trick, the master ordered the man <u>to be expelled</u> from the house at once. 诡计被识破后，主人下令立即把那人逐出家门。</p>
<p>As I was suddenly pressed to give an answer, I found myself at a loss. 突然催促我回答，我不知说什么好了。</p>	<p>Suddenly <u>being pressed</u> to give an answer, I found myself at a loss. 突然被催促做出回答，我不知所措了。</p>
<p>It's silly <u>that</u> you didn't go after you had accepted the invitation. 你接受邀请之后却没有去，这太愚蠢了。</p>	<p>It is silly <u>not to have gone</u> after <u>having accepted</u> the invitation. (LDCE) 接受邀请而未赴会，这太愚蠢了。</p>
<p>As soon as you have reached manhood, you'll have to work for your living. 你一旦成年了，就必须干活谋生。</p>	<p>On reaching manhood, you will have to work for your living. 你一到成年之时，就必须工作，以谋生计。</p>
<p>Abide by your promise, <u>as</u> you value your good name. 既然你爱惜你的名誉，就要信守你的诺言。</p>	<p>Abide by your promise <u>or</u> <u>pain of forfeiting</u> your good name. 你要恪守你的诺言，以免丧失你的信誉。</p>
<p>I was afraid <u>(that)</u> John might have an accident. 我很害怕约翰他会发生事故。</p>	<p>I was afraid of John's/his <u>having</u> an accident. (口语可说 of John/him having...) 我恐怕约翰他会发生事故。</p>
<p>Now that the case is hopeless,</p>	<p>The case now <u>being</u> hopeless,</p>

续表

<p>we must change our plans. 此事既然没希望了, 计划得变。</p>	<p>we must change our plans. 此事现已无望, 我们得改变计划。</p>
<p>As there were no further discussions, the meeting was brought to a close. 因为再没有人发言, 会议结束了。</p>	<p>No further discussions arising, the meeting was brought to a close. 再没有人发言议论, 会议就宣告结束。</p>
<p>We have read that some savages can produce fire by the friction of two pieces of wood. 我们看过记载, 有的野人能摩擦两块木头来引火。</p>	<p>We have read of savages being able to produce fire by the friction of two pieces of wood. 我们曾读过有关记载, 野人能摩擦二木块以取火。</p>
<p>We shall assemble at 10:50, and the procession is to start moving at eleven. (并列复合句) 我们十点五十集合, 而队伍十一点出发。</p>	<p>We shall assemble at 10:50, the procession to start moving at eleven sharp. (不定式独立结构) 我们将于十点五十集合, 而队伍十一点准时出发。</p>
<p>I don't think it possible that Colonel Brandon should give me a living. 布兰敦上校给我解决生活问题, 我认为不可能。</p>	<p>Colonel Brandon give me a living—can it be possible? (无to不定式独立结构) 布兰敦上校给我解决生活问题, 这可能吗?</p>

有些句子, 把常用从句表达的意义用介词短语或形容词短语来表达, 亦属书面用语:

In the performance of duty no one should feel afraid. (口语可以说 *No one, as long as he performs his duty, should feel afraid.*) 只要是在尽自己的责任, 任何人不应该有所顾虑。

Every precaution was taken against the failure of the plan. (*Every precaution was taken so that the plan might not fail.*) 为了这一计划不致失败, 采取了一切应采取的防患措施。

Her home is completely expressive of her personality. (*If you look at her house, you'll see quite clearly what kind of person she is.*) 看到她的家, 就能十分清楚地

了解她是怎样一个人。

9.3 选用从句或选用非限定形式短语的语义因素

除语体因素外，语义因素也能决定我们选用从句或选用动词非限定形式短语。在表示句中谓语所指情况（运动或联系）以外的另一情况时，如其时间关系比较复杂（如与谓语所指时间不是同时或衔接于其前、其后时），或其主动者、受动者等方面的关系比较复杂（如其主动、受动者不是句子主语所指的人或事物，也不是在场的或有关可理解的人或事物），则多使用从句；如果该情况的时间关系及相关方面都很简单明了，则多使用动词非限定形式短语：

(After) Taking a deep breath, she dived into the water. (Taking的主动者即句子主语) 深吸了一口气，她潜入水中。

Taken as a whole, the work was fruitful. (Taken的受动者即句子主语) 整个看来，这一工作是颇有成果的。(具被动意义过去分词的受动者即其逻辑主语)

You're all so easy to take in. (ODCIE) (也可以说... to be taken in; to take in的受动者或to be taken in的逻辑主语，即句子主语) 你太容易受骗。

带自己的逻辑主语的非限定形式复合结构（包括独立结构）有时相当从句，但所表示的时间等方面的关系还是不大清楚。如下列二句中的to tell/to take, 仅在一定情景或一定上下文中才能弄清其时间性：

It is wrong for/of you to tell her a lie/to take his book. (RHD/Horizon) 你对她撒谎/你拿他的书，这是错误的。

(for sb. to do sth. 多指可能的、未完成的行为，但也可指已完成的；of sb. to do sth. 多指已完成的行为，但也可指即将完成的行为)

It was foolish for/of him to take that expensive

house. (NDEC) 他买那所价钱昂贵的房子, 真太傻了。(在谓
语动词was foolish所指的过去当时, to take的行为或许尚未
发生而仅属可能, 或许即将发生, 或许已经完成)

如无一定背景或上下文, 要明确表示to take行为的时间性,
就得使用从句:

It would be a foolish thing if he *would/should take*
that expensive house. (该行为当时尚未发生)

It was a foolish thing that he *took* that expensive
house. (该行为当时正在发生或已经完成)

It's...of sb. to do sth. 限用于对人的心意、性能的评论(主
动语态), 多指已完成的行为、已有的联系:

It's good/very kind/clever/stupid/nasty of you to
come again. 你又来了, 你真好/太好了/真聪明/真愚蠢/真卑鄙。

It's...for sb./sth. to/to be... 不限于对人的评论(主动或
被动语态), 可指经常的情况、可指可能(尚未发生)的一时情
况, 也可指已完成的一时情况(包括行为):

It's not good for a man to be alone. (泛指经常的一
般情况) 一个男人单身生活是不合适的。

It's satisfactory for murderers/the murderer to be
hanged. (泛指或特指) 凶手被绞死, 人们是满意的。

For me to live with her was intolerable. (RHD) (of
me to live/do之类不可前置) (过去) 和她在一起生活, 我真受
不了。

It's impossible for the car to be ready by five. (将
来) 五点以前, 汽车不可能备好待发。

比较下列各句, 更能看出动词非限定形式所表示的各种关系
都不如具有时态、语气形式的从句谓语那么明确:

You are right in doing so. 可能指经常的行为, 也可能
指一次的行为(多半已完成, 但也可能未完成)

You are right to do so. 可能指已完成的行为, 也可能指

未完成的（即将完成的）行为

<p>It's right of you to do so. 多指已完成，也许即将完成；of you 强调其心意</p> <p>It is/was right that you <u>did</u> so. 过去实际情况</p> <p>It's right that you <u>have done</u> so. 现在完成的实际情况</p>	<p>It's right for you to do so. 多指未完成，也许已完成；for you 不强调其心意</p> <p>It's right if you <u>do</u> so. 将来可能情况</p> <p>It would be right if you <u>should/were to do</u> so. 将来虚拟可能情况</p>
--	--

Anne was cruel/awful/careless in *leaving/to leave* her child on the train. 指经常或指一次

<p>It was cruel/awful/careless <u>of</u> Anne to leave her child on the train. cruel of... 强调其心意; awful/careless of... 强调其性质</p> <p>It was too cruel that Anne <u>should leave/should have left</u> her child on the train. 评论其心意</p> <p>It was awful that Anne <u>should be/have been</u> so careless as to leave her child on the train. 评论其性质; should be 指经常或亦指已完成情况</p>	<p>It was/must be/would be awful <u>for her child to be left</u> on the train. 过去实际情况或可能情况（可能性或大或小）</p> <p>It must have been awful if her child <u>was left</u> on the train. 过去可能情况，估计已发生</p> <p>It would have been awful if her child <u>had been left</u> on the train. 过去虚拟可能情况，实际并未发生，全属假设</p>
---	---

以上例句中“介词 + 动名词”或不定式作状语，或由不定式复合结构作主语。以下各句中动名词、不定式短语或复合结构作宾语，所表示的时间关系同样不那么明确，有时只能在一定背景或上下文中才能理解：

Thanks for reminding me. I'd forgotten all about *him coming* this afternoon. 动名词可指过去当时未发生的行为（forget about 可看作短语动词；him coming 动名词复合结构）

“I hope you didn't forget about *posting* my letter.”
— “No, I remembered *to post* the letter. I didn't forget

to post it.”动名词、不定式都可指过去当时未发生、将发生的行为(相当: I remembered/didn't forget that I should post the letter.)

I forgot about *the food cooking on the stove*. 动名词可指过去当时正在发生的行为或运动。

I remember *posting your letters / meeting him in Rome two years ago*. I'll never forget *hearing him playing Chopin*. (Hornby) 动名词还可指谓语所指时间(在此为现在)已经完成的行为或运动(后一句相当 I'll never forget with what delight we heard him playing Chopin. 之类的主从复合句)。

表示句中谓语所指情况以外的另一情况时, 除根据时间关系复杂与否选用短语或从句外, 还常根据该情况主动、受动关系的复杂与否: 如该运动或联系的逻辑上的主语即句子主语, 常选用动词非限定形式短语; 其逻辑上的主语是说话人本人或所指自明的在场者时, 也常选用非限定形式短语; 否则, 如主动、受动关系较复杂时, 则常选用从句(或选用时间、语态意义可较为明确的非限定形式复合结构):

<p>其逻辑主语(不必指明)即句中主语:</p> <p>She hurried so as to be in time for the lecture. (不常说 so that she could be...) 她赶紧走, 以便赶来听讲, 不致迟到。</p> <p>We think it wrong to punish him. (不常说) for us to/that we should punish him). 我们认为, 要惩罚他是错误的。</p> <p>I don't know whom to ask. (不常说...I should ask.) 我不知道应该问谁。</p> <p>Finding him a bore, I kept</p>	<p>其逻辑主语非句中主语, 以从句、复合结构表明:</p> <p>She hurried to open the gate so that <u>his car</u> might rush straight out. (for <u>his car</u> to rush...) 她赶紧去打开大门, 以便他的汽车能一直冲出门去。</p> <p>We think it wrong that <u>they</u> should punish him/<u>he</u> should be punished. (for <u>him</u> to be punished) 我们认为, 他们要惩罚他/他要受惩罚是错误的。</p> <p>I don't know whom <u>my son</u> should ask. (...the right person for him to ask.) 我不知道我儿子该问谁。</p>
---	--

续表

<p>out of his way. (比较 Friends finding him a bore, I too, ...) 发现他很讨厌, 我在躲着他。</p> <p><u>Painted white</u>, the house looks bigger/a bit more lovely. 那房子刷成白色的, 看着大了些/更好看了。</p> <p>其逻辑主语(不必指明)即说话者本人或在场的人:</p> <p>What are the main measures to take/to be taken? (不常说 for us to take) 应该采取什么主要措施呢?</p> <p>The question now is how to carry out the plan. (不常说 how we are to carry...) 现在的问题是如何执行这一计划。</p> <p>The way to start it is to give it a push. (不常说 The way for us/you to start it...) 开动它的方法是推它一下。</p> <p>I suggest setting up more nurseries. (不常说 that we should ...) 我建议建立更多的托儿所。</p>	<p>As my friends told me he was a bore, so I was keeping out of his way. 因为朋友们告诉我他很讨厌, 我一直躲着他。</p> <p>Now that the house's been painted so beautifully, she'll like it very much. 既然房子油刷得那么漂亮, 她会很喜欢。</p> <p>其逻辑主语是另外的人或事物, 以从句、复合结构表明:</p> <p>What are the first measures that the newly arrived brigade should take? 新来的工作队应该首先采取什么措施呢?</p> <p>The question now is how the grass-roots units are to carry out the plan. 现在的问题是各基层单位将如何执行这一计划。</p> <p>I don't understand why they shouldn't start it now. 我不能理解, 他们为什么现在不把它开动起来。</p> <p>I suggest that the municipal government should set up more nurseries. 我建议, 市政府应建立更多的托儿所。</p>
---	---

9.4 “无依着修饰语”多应改为从句或以其他方法改正

从上节最后左栏后四个例句中看出, 作名词性成分的不定式、动名词, 或作定语的不定式, 当其逻辑上的主语不提自知时, 可不指明。泛指的不定式、动名词亦可不带逻辑主语:

· *To see is to believe.* (比较 *For us to see is for us to believe.*) *Seeing is believing.* 眼见为实。

作定语的分词的逻辑主语即所修饰名词。作表语的分词的逻辑

辑主语即句子主语:

I feel/am much/very concerned about him/his illness. (NDEC/Wood) 对于他/他的病, 我很担心。

但对于作为或构成状语的动词非限定形式(分词、不定式、“介词+动名词”), 如其逻辑上的主语不是句子主语时, 一般都必须指明。否则, 所构成非限定形式短语就会成为属于语法错误的无依着修饰语 (*unattached modifiers*), 而常使意义混乱。要改正用了无依着修饰语的病句, 应改换主语使之兼指非限定形式的逻辑主语, 或使用复合结构指明非限定形式的逻辑主语, 或者使用从句:

To catch the culprits, elaborate plans must be made. 应改用兼指不定式逻辑主语的句子主语: *To catch the culprits, we must make elaborate plans.* 为了抓住罪犯, 我们必须制定周密的计划。

Looking out of the window, the cow was seen chewing the cud. 大概不是说“牛向窗外望时……”, 故应改用兼指分词逻辑主语的主语: *Looking out of the window, I/he/the milkmaid saw the cow chewing the cud.* 我/他/挤奶女工向窗外望去, 见牛在反刍。

(On) *Opening the cupboard, a skeleton fell out with a thud.* 不是说“一架骷髅自己打开柜门时咕咚一声跌了出来。”改为: (On) *The timid girl opening the cupboard, a skeleton fell out with a thud.* 或 *Hardly had the girl opened the cupboard when a skeleton fell out with a thud.* 那胆怯的女孩子刚一打开柜门, 一架骷髅咕咚一声掉了出来。

Hated and despised by so many people, we cannot help, nevertheless, sympathizing with Shylock. 大概不是说“我们受到这么多人憎恨和蔑视, 却……”, 故应改为 *Hated and despised by so many people, Shylock nevertheless*

forcefully arouses our sympathy, 或 Hated and despised as he is by so many people, we cannot help sympathizing with Shylock. 夏洛克虽然受到那么多人憎恨和蔑视, 他却有力地激起我们对他的同情/我们却不能不对他寄予同情。

不过, 在实际应用中, 包括在许多著名作家的作品中, 只要有一定情景或上下文使其意义明确, 所谓“无依着修饰语”也常见到, 不能一概看作错误:

Looking out for a theme, several crossed his mind. (Onions) (his 表明 He looking) 当他寻找主题时, 有几个出现在他的头脑里。

He felt himself gently touched on the shoulder; and looking round, his father stood before him. (Dickens) (上文有 He) 他觉得有人轻轻拍了拍他的肩膀; 他回头一看, 他父亲站在面前。

In the picture this is shown looking at the tail of the airplane. (意指 as we look...) 这张画中, 这是从机尾一端看到的樣子。

Flying through the air at the speed of sound, a sudden thought struck me. (me 表明 I flying) 以声音的高速在空中飞行, 我忽然有个想法。

These prayers are to be said kneeling. (Onions) 这些祈祷词要跪着说。

Since leaving her, the whole of life has seemed pointless. (GCE) 自从离开她以来, 觉得生活完全没有意义了。

不定式前带 in order 时, 可用于以下句中, 句子主语并非不定式逻辑上的主语:

In order to catch the culprits, elaborate plans were made. (GCE) 为了抓住罪犯, 制定了周密的计划。

此外, 还有不少惯用的非限定形式可不问其逻辑主语与句子主语是否相合, 广泛修饰各种句子, 它们已构成语气状语短语(加

于客观陈述的主观说明, 见9.7):

现在分词: *counting*... (把……计算在内), *judging from*... (从……上来判断), *speaking of*... (谈到……), *generally/frankly/seriously speaking* (一般/坦白/严肃地说)

过必分词: *put bluntly/frankly/seriously* (直截了当/坦白/严肃地说)

动名词: *without mentioning*... (不用说, 不包括……)

不定式: *to be blunt/frank/personal* (直截了当地说/坦白地说/就我个人来说), *not to mention*... (不用说, 不包括……), *to say nothing of*... (不用说……), *needless to say* (不用说)

Counting/Including ourselves, ten persons went. 算我们自己, 去了十个人。

(Put) Frankly, he hasn't a chance. 坦白说, 他不可能成功。

Judging from/by the number of cars, everybody else seemed to be out. 从留下的汽车数看来, 别人好象都出去了。

There were three of us, not to mention/without mentioning the child. 我们是三个人, 不算那个孩子。

Needless to say, he kept his promise. 不用说, 他履行了诺言。

另有 *considering*... (惯用为方面状语或理由状语, 不考虑其“无依着”), *allowing for*... (惯用为让步状语, 不考虑其“无依着”), *given*... (惯用为条件状语, 原属分词独立结构), 因作为句子所述客观的不可分离的部分, 并非语气状语: *She looks young considering her age.* (回答 *In what sense does she look young?* 之类问题, 方面状语) 按她的年龄说, 她看着比较年轻。 *Considering how much it costs, the machine is a failure.* (回答 *why?* 等, 理由状语) 从成本看, 这种机器是

个失败。 *Given time/health, I can do it.* 如有时间/好身体, 我也能干。

有些分词惯于用来引导状语从句, 现已转为连词: *granting/granted (that), providing/provided (that), seeing (that), supposing (that)* 等, 其用例见5.9。

9.5 只能使用从句与只能使用动词非限定形式短语、复合结构作状语、作定语的情况

表示句中谓语所指情况以外的另一情况, 常常既可使用从句、又可使用动词非限定形式短语或其复合结构, 其间只有些语体上的差别, 或者根据语义的复杂与否, 分别更常使用从句、复合结构或更常使用非限定形式短语。

但除语体、语义因素外, 所任句子成分也与选用从句、复合结构或非限定形式短语有很大关系。作为这种或那种句子成分, 有时只能用从句形式, 又有时只能用非限定形式复合结构或非限定形式短语。现按作状语、作定语、作宾语的顺序, 分述如下(作宾语情况在下节)。

状语——用不定式短语表示的结果状语, 不能改用从句表示:

I worked late into the night only to find the job not yet half finished. (不能说...*so that I found...*) 我工作到深夜, 结果活计还没有完成一半。

He left his native country, never to return. (不能说*so that he never returned...*) 他离开了故国, 结果再未能回来。

She lived to see her children grown up. (比较: *She lived a long life so that she saw her children grown up.* 意义颇有出入) 她活着看到了她的孩子们长大成人。

但不定式推论状语(似指结果, 实指论据)可改作推论状语从句(见5.3; 5.8, 5):

I must have been blind not to see him through. 或

must have been blind *that I couldn't see him through*.
我竟未能看穿他这个人，我真是瞎了眼睛了。

What have I said to make you so angry? 或 What have I said *that you should be (made) so angry*? 你怎么这么生气，难道我说什么错话了吗？

定语——不及物动词的过去分词作定语的用法很有限，要用该不及物动词修饰名词时多必须用于定语从句中。及物动词的现在/过去分词与不及物动词的现在分词作定语，就没有这样的限制：

及物，现在分词 A cat *stealing* cream would as well shut its eyes. 偷吃奶油的猫也会闭上眼睛，象自欺欺人的人一样。

及物，过去分词 The *scalded* cat fears cold water. (谚语) 猫被热水烫一下，见了凉水也害怕。

不及物，现在分词 One *barking* dog sets all the street a-barking. (谚语) 一犬吠影，十犬吠声。You don't say that a dog *barking* at the moon doesn't bark in vain. 不能说看见月亮也叫的狗不是无谓地乱叫。

不及物动词的过去分词则一般不可用作定语，如不说 You don't say that the dog *barked* at the moon didn't bark in vain. 应改用定语从句：You don't say that the dog *which barked* at the moon didn't bark in vain. 不能说看见月亮也叫的那只狗不是无谓地乱叫。

不及物动词的过去分词仅有少数只可用作前位定语（不可作后位定语），其他既不可用作前位定语也不可用作后位定语（除非带一副词）。

少数不及物动词的过去分词只能作前位定语:

The bushes made good cover for the escaping/escaped prisoner. 可说...good cover for the prisoner escaping from the concentration camp. 不可说...good cover for the prisoner escaped from the concentration camp.

The fallen snow was now frozen hard. 但不可说 The snow fallen during the night was now frozen hard.

可说 a grown man/tree 大人/树
He has a grown up son. 但不可说 He has a son grown up in his native village.

Behold the rising/risen moon! 但不可说 Behold the moon risen high in the sky!

He asked about the vanished jewels. 不可说 the disappeared jewels; 也不可说 He asked about the jewels vanished from her neck.

要用于后位(带状语)只能用在定语从句中:

The bushes made good cover for the prisoner who had just escaped from the concentration camp. 那树丛成为刚从集中营里跑出来的囚徒很好的藏身之处。

The snow that had fallen during the night was now frozen hard. 夜间下的雪这时已冻得很硬。

He has a son who has grown up in his native village. 他有个在故乡长大的儿子。

Behold the moon that has risen high in the sky! 看那已高高升到空中的月亮!

He asked about the jewels that had vanished/disappeared from her neck. 他问起原来她戴在脖子上, 这时已经不见的那些宝石。

除 escaped, fallen, grown, risen, vanished, faded/withered (flowers; 如“凋谢/枯萎的花”), departed (youth; 如“消逝的青春”), retired (teachers; 如“退休的教师”), returned (students; 如“归国留学生”), (much-)traveled (people; 如“经常旅行的人们”) 等可作前位定语外, 不及物动词的过去分词一般不可用作定语:

<p>不可说 the arrived immigrant 也不可说 I've called on the immigrant arrived last night from Italy.</p> <p>比较可作定语的不定式: ① The next train to arrive/that arrived was from York. 随后接 着来到的列车是从约克开来的。</p> <p>不可说 There comes the girl walked all the way from Boston. 在the distance walked中walked 为及物的(走过的距离)</p> <p>不可说 None among us knew the man stood up at that moment. 在Do you see the boy stood in the corner for some new mischief? 中stood 为及物的(你 看见那又因捣乱被罚站在墙角里的孩子了 吗?)</p> <p>不可说 The slept child is now playing with toys.</p>	<p>但前带副词时可说 the newly arrived immigrant或 the immigrant recently arrived from Italy</p> <p>可用于从句: I've called on the immigrant who arrived last night from Italy. 我访问了那位昨 夜从意大利到此的移民。</p> <p>用于从句: There comes the girl who has walked all the way from Boston. 看那从波士顿一路走 来的姑娘来了。</p> <p>用于从句: None among us knew the man who stood up at that moment. 我们当中谁也不认识那个就 在此刻站立起来的男人。</p> <p>用于从句: The child who has slept for 3 hours is now playing with toys. 睡了三个小时 的孩子在玩玩具。</p>
--	---

9.6 只能使用从句与只能使用动词非限定形式短语、复合结构作宾语的情况

句中的动词宾语指运动所及的另一运动或联系状态时, 由从句表示, 还是由动词非限定形式(动名词、不定式)短语或复合结构表示(宾语属名词性成分, 不用分词), 有语体、语义(关系复杂与否)上的原因, 但也有很多情况只由习惯用法来决定。因动词而异的惯用宾语类型必须分别记清。下面按五种情况举例说明。第一种中接用that宾语从句或复合结构, 一般不接用动名词、不定式; 中间三种中一般不接that从句而分别接用动名词、不定式或不定式复合宾语; 最后第五种情况中某些动词接用不同类型宾语时所表意义有所不同。

1) 很多动词接用that宾语从句或不定式复合结构, 一般不

接用动名词、不定式及其短语：

a) 一般可接用**that**从句或不定式复合结构宾语而不接用不定式、动名词的动词（附接用**that**从句、不定式复合宾语又分别兼用不定式、动名词宾语的动词）：

接**that**从句或不定式复合宾语的有使役动词（使某人/某事物做或不做某事）**command, convince, direct, entreat, order, persuade, remind, request, tell, urge, warn**等，还有认识动词（认为某人/某事物曾做、在做、将做某事）**assume, believe, know, suppose, suspect**等，这些动词一般不接不定式、动名词短语宾语。

She commanded/convincing me/reminded me/told me that I should go. She commanded/convincing/reminded/told me to go.她命令/说服/提醒/告诉我到那里去。（不定式复合宾语不同于不定式宾语）

I warned her that she mustn't wait for me. I warned her not to wait for me.我警告过她，不要等我。

We assume/believe/know/suspect that he has done more harm than good. We assume/believe/know/suspect him to have done more harm than good.我们设想/相信/知道/猜测他的所作所为，害多于利。

同是使役动词的**advise**与**recommend**在可接**that**从句和不定式复合宾语的同时，还可接动名词短语宾语（一般不接不定式短语宾语）：

They advise/recommend waiting here/him to wait here/that he should wait here.他们劝他/建议他在此等候。

同是使役动词的**ask**、同是认识动词的**think**以及意念动词**desire, expect**在可接**that**从句和不定式复合宾语的同时，还可接不定式（一般不接动名词）短语宾语：

He asked (用作意念动词) /desired/expected/thought (用作意念动词) to take part in the concert.他要求/希望/

预料将/想要参加这个音乐会。

He asked/desired/expected *that* I should take part/*me to take part* in the concert.他要求/希望/预料我……

John thought *that* the book belonged to Bill./John thought *the book to belong* to Bill. (小西) 约翰以为那本书是比尔的。

但expect的同义词anticipate及同是意念动词的fancy、imagine却是可接*that*从句和动名词短语宾语，一般不接不定式宾语、不定式复合宾语（后二动词可接sb/sth to be型宾语，但很少接用表运动不定式复合宾语sb/sth to do等等）：

He anticipated (*my*) *taking part*.他预料（我）将会参加。He anticipated *that* I should take part.

I can't fancy/imagine *his/him taking part* in it.我不能想象他竟会参加。I fancy (believe)/imagine (suppose)

(*that*) he's very clever/him to be very clever.我想/设想他很聪明。

b) 一般可接用*that*从句而不接用复合结构、也不接用不定式与动名词的动词（附接用*that*从句又分别兼用不定式、动名词宾语的动词）：

除名词、代词宾语外，一般只接*that*宾语从句的有认识动词accept, grant, guess, prove, realize等（其中guess、prove可接sb/sth to be型复合宾语，但不可接表运动的sb/sth to do等普通不定式复合宾语），还有表述动词add, allege, answer, argue, assure, complain, confess, maintain, remark, repeat, reply, state等。

I accept *that*/grant you *that* he wastes his money, but he always spends it on his friends.我承认/承认你说你对，他浪费钱财，但他的钱总是花在朋友身上。

He assured me *that*/stated *that* he had never seen it.他向我保证/他郑重说明，他没见过那东西。

但同是表述动词的**claim, guarantee, say, promise**及意念动词**hope**、态度动词**agree**等却是兼用**that**宾语从句和不定式短语宾语，一般不接用不定式复合宾语和动名词：

I guaranteed/promised (him)/hoped/agreed to finish /that I would finish it in 2 days. (**promised** 后面的 **him** 为可有可无的间接宾语，不构成不定式复合宾语) 我保证/答应 (他)/希望/同意两天内完成这件工作。

I said (to them) to respect/that they should respect their peers. (Green; 常说 I told them to respect... 用复合宾语，无须介词) 我告诉他们要尊敬与他们有同等地位的人。

而同是表述动词的**mention, suggest**等又是兼可接用**that**从句和动名词，一般不接不定式和不定式复合宾语：

I mentioned *having been* there. (一般不说 to have been) I mentioned *that* I had been there. 我提到当时我已到那里去过了。

I suggested (their) *going* together. 我建议 (他们) 一起去。I suggested *that* they (should) go together. 我建议他们一起去。

按惯用法，**suggest**的同义词**propose**却可兼用**that**宾语从句、动名词和不定式宾语：

I proposed (your) *starting* early/(to them) *to start* early/(to you) *that* you (should) start early. (不说 I proposed you/them to start early. 即不用不定式复合宾语) 我 (正式) 提议 (你们/他们) 早早出发。

2) 少数最常用动词总是接用较简便的宾语形式，即动名词、不定式短语或不定式复合宾语，一般不接**that**从句。如**(can't) bear, like, 'd love, need, want**等：

I like/'d love/can't bear *living* alone/*to live* there alone/*him to live* there alone. 我喜欢/我倒很喜欢/我不能忍受单独生活/独自住在那里/让他独自住在那里。

His wife needs tactful *handling/to be handled* tactfully. (Hornby) 他的妻子必须巧妙对待。

The man wants *watching/to be watched*. 此人要严加监视。

I need/want (you) to help him. 我需要/想要(你)帮助他。

need的同义词require却是既可接用这三种宾语形式,又可接用that宾语从句:

Teachers require *warning/to be warned* against shouting. 对教师们需要告戒,让他们不要大喊大叫。I require (of) you to solve the problem. I require (of you) that you solve the problem. (小西) 我需要你来解决这个问题。

3) 较多动词可接用动名词、不定式短语宾语,一般不接用不定式复合宾语和that宾语从句。如态度动词decline, (can't) endure, love, neglect, omit, (can't) stand等,以及施动动词attempt, begin, cease, commence, continue, delay, start, try等:

I couldn't stand *waiting/to wait* for three hours. (Palmer) (或I declined...) 我受不了(拒绝)等三个小时。

The buses have ceased *running/to run*. (Eckersley) 公共汽车不运行了。

但decline的同义词refuse可接不定式而不接动名词宾语; cease的同义词stop可接动名词宾语而不用不定式宾语〔所可接不定式为目的状语: we stopped (in order) to talk. (ALD)]

can't endure/stand的近义词forbid及其反义词permit却是可接动名词与不定式复合宾语,一般不接不定式宾语:

The regulations forbid/we don't permit (you) *smoking here/you to smoke here*. 有规章/我们不许可(你)在此吸烟。

接动名词宾语和接不定式宾语可有或多或少的意义差别: Try

being nice to her.对她态度好些试试看。Try to be nice to her.要做到对她态度好些。

4) 更多动词在动名词、不定式宾语和不定式复合宾语三种中只分别惯用一种宾语形式,一般都不接that宾语从句。

a) 三种宾语中只接用不定式复合宾语——态度动词assist, challenge等;使役动词appoint, bid, call on, cause, compel, enable, encourage, force, have, invite, let, make, oblige, press, send等:

I've had/let/made him go. (不是him to go) 我让他走了。He made to speak, but I stopped him. (LDCE, 句中make 相当be about, 为助动词或情态动词性质) 他要说话, 我没让他说。

I assisted/called (up)on him to keep his promise, (ALD) 我协助/劝告他履行诺言。

但assist的同义词help却可兼用不定式复合宾语和不定式短语宾语: Can I help (you) (to) carry that? (EGS) 我来帮着(您)搬那件好吗? I couldn't help him to make friends with them. 我未能帮他结交他们。

比较I couldn't help his/him making friends with them. (can't help接动名词“无奈……”) 他结交他们, 我无可奈何。

b) 三种宾语中只接用不定式短语——态度动词don't care (不愿), contract (同意、承担), hesitate, refuse等, 意念动词aim, choose, contrive, endeavour, plan, plot, prepare等, 施动动词can't afford, fail, hasten, manage, offer, seek等:

He aimed/prepared/planned to do it. (或planned on doing it) 他打算/准备/计划做这件事。

但aim等的同义词intend可兼用that从句、动名词、不定式和不定式复合宾语这四种宾语形式: We intended doing/to do

it. We intended *them to do it*. We intended *that they shall do it*. (ALD) 我想要(让他们)做这件事。

c) 三种宾语中只接用动名词短语——态度动词 *detest, dislike, excuse, feel like, forgive, pardon, prevent, resent, can't resist, can't tolerate* 等, 施动动词 *defer, escape, finish, give up, keep (on), leave off, miss, postpone, practise, put off, set about, stop* 等, 以及关系动词 *include, involve* 等:

He has stopped/given up/left off *working* there. 他已不再在那里工作/放弃那里的工作/丢下那里的工作。

He detested/resented/prevented/stopped me listening. (LDCE etc) 他讨厌/不满/阻止/不让我听。

但态度动词 *leave* 兼用动名词、不定式复合宾语: I'll leave *buying the tickets to you*. I'll leave *you to buy the tickets*. 买票的事, 我留给你办。

detest 与 *resent* 的近义词 *hate* 可兼用 *that* 从句、动名词、不定式和不定式复合宾语这四种宾语形式: I should hate *to get up early tomorrow*. / I hate *getting up early*. (Schibbye) 明天/(经常情况)我不愿早起。I hate *the door to slam just after midnight*. / I hate *the door slamming all night long*. (GCE) 我讨厌刚过半夜/整个夜间房门砰砰地响。We hate (it) *that you have to put up with so much*. (Bolinger) 我讨厌你必须忍受那么多不痛快的事。

5) 某些动词接用 *that* 宾语从句和接用动名词、不定式、不定式复合宾语时, 所表示的意义有所不同, 例如 *allow, charge, insist (on), learn, mind, object (to), teach* 等,

<p>They don't <u>allow</u> smoking here. They don't <u>allow</u> him to smoke. 允许</p> <p>The judge <u>charged</u> me to be silent. 命令 He <u>charged</u> me to look after her. 责成</p> <p>He <u>insisted on</u> taking the medicine. He <u>insisted on</u> her taking the medicine. He <u>insisted on</u> his original opinion. 坚持</p> <p>She'll be ready to <u>learn</u> to read and write in a few weeks. 学习</p> <p>I don't <u>mind</u> being alone. I don't <u>mind</u> even everything being turned upside down. 在意</p> <p>I <u>object to</u> telling him the secret. 反对</p> <p>He <u>taught</u> reading and writing and that day <u>was teaching</u> me to read Latin. 教</p>	<p>They don't <u>allow</u> that he's a great smoker. 承认 (他们不承认他吸烟吸得太多。)</p> <p>The king <u>charged</u> that his minister had disobeyed instructions. 指责, 指控</p> <p>He <u>insisted that</u> she(should) take the medicine. 坚持 He <u>insisted that</u> she had taken/was regularly taking/would take it. 肯定说</p> <p>I'm sorry to <u>learn</u> that he is ill. I <u>learnt</u> (got to know) it from John. 得知</p> <p>I don't <u>mind</u> that I'm alone. 在意</p> <p><u>Mind</u> that everything is in order. 注意 (做到……)</p> <p>I <u>objected that</u> he is a hypocrite. 提出异议说</p> <p>He <u>taught me that</u> honesty was/is the best policy. 教导说</p>
---	---

不同动词惯用哪几种宾语类型, 同一动词接用不同宾语类型时, 有何意义差别, ALD、LDCE二词典各动词后都一一注明; 较详尽的语法书及惯用法词典也都举例讲述。不过, 归纳与分析似乎都还不够, 如应该全面探讨适于各种用法的动词类别 (认识、表述、意念、态度、使役、施动等), 应该进一步在繁杂语言现象中尽量找出其联系、对比关系, 以利于教学与研究。

9.7 语气从句及短句、短语等形式的语气状语

9.4 中讨论到“无依着的”分词、不定式与“介词+动名词”短语, 指出其可能造成句义混乱, 在语法上是错误的, 多应改为从句或以其他方法改正。即使有时根据上下文或具体情景, 无依

着短语可以理解、可以接受，但初学英语的人仍不宜使用。

然而，某些亦属“无依着的”分词、不定式与“介词+动名词”短语已成为惯用的语气短语，如*so to speak*，其逻辑上的主语是说话者本人，故不必指出。这种语气短语表示说话人附加于所述客观情况的主观看法或说明。

同样，某些惯用的短句也专门表示语气。其中除由主从连词*as*引导的一些可称语气状语从句(*adverbial clause of modality*，见5.3, 9)外，一般只是短句形式的语气状语(*sentence-adverbial of modality*)，既不是从句或分句，也不是主句或独立句。如*as it were*为语气状语从句，而*you know*加于句前、句中或句末(有停顿或书面逗号将其隔开)为短句形式语气状语。从句、短句型的语气状语意义上可相当短语型的，而从句、短句、短语型语气状语意义上皆可相当一个语气副词：

*He is my best friend, my second self, so to speak/as it were/you may say so.*他是我最好的朋友，可以说，与我心心相印、息息相关。

He came home very late last night, to be more exact/or rather, very early this morning. (*rather*, 语气副词)他是昨晚很晚，更确切地说，今天凌晨很早到家的。

*You are new around here, no doubt/I'm sure/I believe. You are doubtless new around here.*你准是新来的，我敢说/我相信。

*Old cars are cheaper to buy, but they tend to use more petrol. Also/Besides/Moreover/Furthermore/In addition/And what is more, there is a greater risk of accidents.*买旧汽车很便宜，但往往比较费油。而且/更有甚者，出事故的危险性比较大。

frankly/frankly speaking/putting it frankly/put frankly(过去分词短语)/*to be frank/to speak frankly/to put it frankly/if I may speak frankly*(如容我)坦白说

语气状语（包括短语型）多修饰全句，是附加于句子所述客观情况的主观看法。而所有句中其他成分都是所述客观的一部分，如其他状语（包括其他状语从句）修饰谓语、表语或一动词、形容词、副词或者全句，表示该运动、联系、属性等的客观特征或关系方面。比较：

He did not die *happily*/He died *unhappily*. 他死得很凄惨。*not...happily*或*unhappily*回答对客观情况所提问题How did he die? 是方式状语

Happily he did not die. 幸而他没有死。*Happily*是语气状语，不回答对所述客观提的任何问题，而是说明说话人的主观感情：“How did you feel when you said that he did not die?” - “I said *happily* that...”

Personally/In person, she is very charming, but will she be a good secretary? 她，人长得很惹人喜欢，但当秘书她能当得好吗？*Personally*修饰前一分句，回答In what aspect is she charming? 是方面状语

He said that he couldn't trust a girl so young to do a good job here. But, *personally*, I see no objection to giving the fresh graduate that post. 他说他不能相信一个这么年轻的姑娘能在这里做好工作。但我个人不反对把这个职位交给这新毕业的大学生。*personally*为语气状语，不回答对所述客观提的任何问题，而是说话人附加的主观说明：“On behalf of whom did you say...?” “Speaking for myself only/Only *personally*, I saw no objection...”

I think/believe he is trustworthy. 我想/相信他是可靠的。*I think/believe*分别为主句主语和谓语动词

He is trustworthy, *I think/believe*. 他是可靠的，我想/相信。*I think/believe*为短句形式的语气状语，相当可

放句前、句中的probably, (most) likely, sure enough等, 表示说话人的主观肯定程度, “How sure were you when you said…?”

除前置时可为主句的I think等, 一般修饰全句的各型语气状语, 位置多较灵活, 可置于句前、句中或句末, 特别是语气副词。语气副词多原属方式副词(如happily)、方面副词(如personally)等常用副词, 或原属其他词类。属该词类时, 它们原不象转作语气副词修饰全句时这样位置常可变动:

Notwithstanding any other agreements, the law will go into force. (LDCE认为该Notwithstanding为介词, 比较The law will go into force, any other agreements notwithstanding. 逗号后边原是以standing为中心的分词独立结构) 不管有任何其他协议, 这项法律也将生效。

He was unknown to most people, *notwithstanding/* although he had lived there a long time. (LDCE; notwithstanding用作主从连词, 非规范用法) 虽然他在那里住了很久, 但多数人都不知道他。

He tried to prevent the marriage, but it took place *notwithstanding/nevertheless.* (LDCE) He tried to prevent the marriage, but, *notwithstanding/nevertheless,* it took place. (notwithstanding转作语气副词) 他力图阻止这件婚事, 但是, 尽管如此, 这婚事还是办成了。

Though/Even though it's hard work, I enjoy it. (Though为主从连词, 置从句前) 尽管这是一件很艰苦的工作, 可是我很喜欢干。

It's hard work. I enjoy it though. (though转作语气副词) 这是一件很艰苦的工作。不过, 我很喜欢干。

He is poor. He is satisfied with his condition, *though.* (GCE) 他很穷。不过, 他对自己的境况还是知足的。

He's a bad President. There's no reason, *though.*

to shoot him. (语气副词though可置句中) 他不是一个好总统。不过, 没有理由打死他。

语气状语虽多修饰全句, 但也有些修饰句中个别成分、个别词语。有的语气状语兼用于修饰全句和修饰个别词语, 例如:

It was futile, *still* they fought. (相当nevertheless, yet, 修饰后一分句) 已经无济于事了, 然而他们还在战斗。

This problem is *still/yet/even* more difficult. (修饰more difficult) 这一问题更加难以解决。

I intended to read the book, *only* I felt too tired. (GCE; *only*修饰后一分句, 原有I would only say之意: 从原修饰一词转而修饰句子) 我想看书, 只是觉得太累了。

John *only/also* phoned Mary today. (句中*only/also*修饰个别词语, 口语中可分别重读John或phoned或Mary或today, 以指示*only/also*所修饰的成分)

但即使是口语也最好把*only/also*紧接于所修饰词语, 书面语中尤为必须:

Only John phoned Mary.	John, also, phoned her.
John only phoned her.	John (wrote her,) also phoned her.
John phoned only Mary/Mary only.	John phoned also Mary/Mary also.
He phoned her only today.	He phoned her also today
He phoned her today only.	He phoned her today also.

动词本身的词形变化表示的语气 (mood) 只限“直陈”、“虚拟”、“祈使”三种。情态动词所表语气 (modality) 扩展到“可能”、“要求”、“必要”几个方面。而语气状语表示最广泛的各种语气意义: 1) 肯定 (必然)、不肯定 (可能) 与否定 2) 说话人对所述情况的认识——类同或转折、局限或超越 3) 说话人对自己谈话的态度——分析或归结、表达特征或感受特征。

	语气副词	形容词/副词/介词/ 不定式/分词/(介词+) 动名词短语	短 句, as语气状语从句
肯定 (必然)	yes, really, indeed, actually, surely, certainly, naturally, undoubtedly,	sure enough, to be sure, as a matter of fact, in fact, of course,	I'm sure/certain (中、后位), (there's) no doubt (前、中、后位),
不肯定 (可能)	perhaps, maybe, possibly, probably, supposedly,	very/quite/most likely,	I'm afraid(中、后位), I hope/suppose, (中、后位),
否定	no, not, never, hardly.	quite unlikely,	
局限	only, just, merely, yet, still(仍), right,	at(the) most, in my opinion,	as far as... is concerned, (前、中、后位)
超越	even, still(更) yet(更), too(太), already, besides, moreover, furthermore.	in addition, better/worse still, even worse, not to say..., without mention- ing..., at least (表示“不局限”)	what's more(前位), what's worse still (前位),
类同	also, too(也), again, similarly, likewise.	as well, all the same,	
转折	only(但), yet(但), however, nevertheless, notwithstanding, rather, instead, though(中、后位),	after all, on the other hand, on the contrary, by(way of) contrast, none the less,	

续表

	语气副词	形容词/副词/介词/ 不定式/分词/(介词+) 动名词短语	短 句, as语气状语从句
分析	first(ly), next, then, lastly, particularly,	first of all, to begin with, for one thing, for example/ instance, to quote only one example/reason, in particular,	shall I/shall we/ let's say(前位), that's to say(前位),
归结	finally, thus, consequently,	all in all, in short/brief/a word, to sum up/conclude, everything considered, (分词独立结构)	
表达	frankly, honestly, strictly, seriously, broadly, simply, generally, personally, confidentially,	to tell the truth, by the way, to be precise/more exact, in other words, so to speak, above all/to top it all,	I think/believe (中、后位), I'd say(中、后位), as it were(中、后位), I say (前位),
感受 (包括 评论)	clearly, evidently, interestingly, strangely, (un)fortunately, (un)wisely, rightly, sensibly, foolishly, (un)reasonably, regrettably,	oddly enough, not surprisingly, more amusingly than wisely, luckily for..., annoyingly for..., quite ironically,	you see/know (前、 中、后位), what's more remarkable (前位),

短句形式的语气状语也是有些修饰全句，有些修饰个别词语，有些兼用于修饰全句或个别词语：

He'll come, I'm sure. She has arrived, I'm certain.

他会来的，我可以肯定。她已经到了，我确实知道。

He meant to help, (*there's*) *no doubt*, but in fact he has been a hindrance. (修饰前一分句) 无疑他本想帮忙，实际却碍事了。

It's a useful book and, *what's more*, not an expensive one. (修饰其后短语) 这本书很有用，而且不贵。

He went to the meeting and, *what was worse still*, (he) insisted on speaking. (修饰后一分句) 他去参加了会议，更糟糕的是，他还坚持发言。

You may learn to play the violin in, *shall I/let's say*, 3 years. 你可以学拉小提琴，比如说，用三年的时间。

He's working as hard as before, *that's to say*, not very hard. (LDCE) (修饰其后短语) 他的努力程度象以前一样，就是说，不十分努力。

I've no reason to doubt it, *that's to say*, I believe his account of the story. (修饰后一分句) 我没有理由怀疑，也就是说，我相信他所讲的事情经过。

Why, no, they're very good eyes, *I'd say*. (RHD) 哪儿的话，不对呀，依我说，他的眼力很好 (看得很透彻)。

"My husband is ill today." — "I say! I'm sorry to hear that," (LDCE) "我的丈夫今天病了。" —— "哎呀! 听你这么说，我很难过。"

I say, I've got a wonderful idea. 我说呀，我想起一个非常好的主意。

You know, it's rather late. We must leave now. 你可知道，够晚的了。现在我们必须走了。(或者说 *It's rather late, you know*. 但在 *You know it's rather late*. 中，前置而后无停顿〔逗号〕的 *you know* 为主从复合句中的主句)

语气从句、短句型语气状语和句子中间都有停顿，书面上有逗号 (短语型语气状语也多如此)，表示其修饰关系比较松散。特

别是位于句后、被停顿（逗号）隔开的语气状语，对句子的修饰关系最为松散，如将该语气状语去掉，并不影响句子的基本含义。

而语气副词则既可作修饰关系松散的非限制性语气状语，又可作关系紧密、必不可少的限制性语气状语（说话人附加于所述客观的限制性说明）。限制性语气状语和所修饰句子或所修饰个别词语中间没有停顿（书面上没有逗号），如将该语气状语去掉，就会影响句子的基本含义。特别是修饰句中个别词语的语气副词多属限制性语气状语。

修饰全句（多属非限制性）	修饰个别词语（多属限制性）
<p><u>Really</u>, I don't like her. 真的，我不喜欢她。</p>	<p>I <u>really</u> don't like her. (修饰谓语较修饰全句关系紧密) 我真不喜欢她。</p>
<p>I don't like her, <u>really</u>. 我不喜欢她，真的。</p>	<p>I don't <u>really</u> like her. (Swan) 我不是真的喜欢她。</p>
<p>I will do it, <u>unless, perhaps</u>, you want to do it yourself. 这事我想做，除非(也许会那样)你想亲自来做。</p>	<p>His absence, <u>occasioned perhaps/ possibly</u> by illness, has caused great uneasiness. 他没有到场，这也许是因为有病了，却使大家非常担心。</p>
<p>What he says is true, <u>perhaps</u>. 他说的是真情，也许吧！</p>	<p>He is no fool. 他才不傻呢！（很精明） (He is not a fool. 他不是傻子。)</p>
<p><u>No</u>, he's a fool, on the contrary. 不，相反，他是个傻瓜。</p>	<p>I never thought of it, <u>still</u> less did I do it. 这事我连想也没想过，更不可能干出此事。</p>
<p>It's a very unpleasant affair, <u>still</u>, we can't change it. 这是一件很不愉快的事，但我们还是无可奈何。</p>	

左边最后一句，可加长中间前一停顿，成为：It's a very unpleasant affair. *Still*, we can't change it. 或可取消中间后一停顿，成为：It's a very unpleasant affair, *still* we can't change it. 这里，可以看出still（及yet等）可有连接作用，可把两个句子连成一句。但该still（及yet等）仍是语气副词，不要误认为连词，也不要误认它引导的后一分句是什么从句。

既可紧连于语、句，又可被逗号（口语的停顿）隔开，这也是语气副词的一个特点。表示“局限、超越、类同、转折”关系的语气副词，因有连接语、句之功能，有人误把它们和连词混为一谈。实际它们性质上不同于连词：1) 连词紧连所引导并列分句

或从句，不能用停顿（逗号）分开，除非中间加了“插入语”；
2）连词固定位于分句或从句前，而语气副词位置多较灵活；3）
在引导一个并列复合句或一个主从复合句时，一般只用一个连词，
不可连用两个连词，如不可说*though...but...*，美国英语不可说
and nor（可说*and neither*，英国英语二者通用）——除非既有主从、
又有并列关系时（如*if/because...and if/because...*）；而语气副词
则可以和连词连用，如可以说*though...yet/still...*，*and/but*还可紧
接*yet/still/besides/nevertheless*等语气副词，还偶见*and also*或
*but only*相连：

Why should he bear the blame who was absent that day? (And) Also, why should he pay for the damage?

（*And*多略去）他那天不在，怎么该他负责呢？而且为什么该他
赔偿损失呢？

I intended to go, (but) only I didn't feel well. (but
多略去) 我本想去，只是我觉得不舒服。

Though he is poor, yet he is (nevertheless) satisfied with his situation. 他虽穷困，
却还是安于他的处境。

Though rebuffed, still he tries/he still tries. 虽然遭到拒绝，
他还要设法办理。（后为主句）

He is very rich, but still he is not contented. 他虽然很有钱，
但还是不能满足。

She is a funny girl, (and/but) yet you can't help liking her. (LDCE) 她是个很好笑的姑娘，
而你却不由得喜欢她。

数例表明，*also, only, still, yet*等语气副词用于句前起连接作用时，
所引导的可能是独立句、主从复合句的主句或并列复合句后一分句，
而都不是从句。

第十章 主、谓深层的一致； 省略与否定

10.1 名词主语“形复实单”或“似单实复”的情况

有些不可数名词以s结尾，如news, mechanics, genius (抽象“天才”)，classics (古希腊、罗马的语言、文学)，但必以单数看待：

Good news is rumoured but bad news flies. (谚语)
好事传得慢，坏事长翅飞。

Mechanics is a branch of physics. 力学是物理学的一个分支。(a mechanic “一个机修工”)

Wuthering Heights is one of the most extraordinary book which human genius has ever produced. (Fox)
《呼啸山庄》是人类创造力的最特异作品之一。(two great geniuses “两位伟大天才”)

Is classics a compulsory subject in your department? 在你们系里，希腊、罗马古典语文是必修课吗?(an immortal classic “一部不朽名著”；modern classics “现代名著”)

也有些可数名词以-s结尾，而复数另加-es，或者其单、复数同形：

a lens—the microscope lenses 一片透镜—显微镜全套透镜

A crossroads is a place where roads cross. (Thorn-dike) (或Crossroads are places where…) 十字路口就是两条道路交叉的地方。

One means has not been tried. (LDCE) 一种手段还

没试过。*There are ways and means of making a living, even in this country.* (DCIE) 即使在这个国家, 谋生还是有各种办法的。

但是, 那些以-s结尾本为单数形式的名词不宜说是“形复实单”。下列句中表示时间量、空间量、重量、数量的真正复数形式, 作为一个单一总量, 通过谓语动词单数形式显示其深层单数意义, 这才是“形复实单”:

Fifteen years represents a long period in his life. 十五年体现了他一生中一个很长的阶段。

Twenty miles is a long way to walk. 如果步行, 二十英里是个很长的路程。

Three pints isn't enough to get me drunk. 三品脱不足以把我灌醉。

Ten pounds is not much for all the trouble we took. (Wood) 我们费了那么大功夫, 给十镑不多。

Sixty people means a huge party. (CGEL) 六十人那就是一大群人了。

谓语表明主语名词复数形式实指单一量的同时, 限定词也用单数: *Where's that five pounds I lent you?* (Swan) 我借给你那五镑哪儿去了?

下面第一句中把“千镑价值”看作一个单一量; 第二句中把“值一千镑的”看作定语、而以其后复数的“纸烟”为名词短语的中心——两句谓语显示了主语深层结构的“数”的概念:

There is nearly a thousand pounds' worth of cigarettes on that shelf. (Wood) 那个架子上有价值将近一千镑的纸烟。

Nearly a thousand pounds' worth of cigarettes were stolen. (ib) 价值将近一千镑的纸烟被偷走了。

以下各句中也是以原为of的介词宾语的复数名词、代词为短语中心, 使似为主语的前面指量、指类单数名词带上of而成为定

语。这就形成了要由谓语表明的主语“似单实复”情况。

A (large) number of people *have applied* for the job. (CGEL) 很多人申请做此工作。(比较: 60 people ~~→ that~~ number of people *means* a huge party.)

A group of us *have decided* to hire a boat and travel through Holland by canal. (Swan) 我们一伙儿已决定租一条船去旅行, 沿运河穿过荷兰。

The majority of criminals *are non-violent*. (Swan) 大多数罪犯是不使用暴力的。

The majority *are* Moslems. (CGEL) (The majority of them/Most of them...) 大多数是伊斯兰教徒。[比较: The majority is always able to impose its will on the minority. (Wood) 多数人总是能将其意志强加于少数人。]

A greater part of the apples *are* bad. (Wood) 大部分苹果是坏的。[比较: The greater part of the land is uncultivated. (ib) 那片土地大部分是未开垦的。(majority不与单数名词或不可数名词连用)]

A lot of problems *are caused* by unemployment. (Swan) 许多问题是失业造成的。[比较: Lots of the stuff is going to waste. (CGEL) 这材料有好多都要浪费掉了。]

This kind of *book* is useful. (小西) 这一句是标准正式说法; 该book单数而无冠词, 有概括意义。又如 the kind of person to talk scandal (ALD), that sort of question is ... (LDCE)。若语序有变: Books of this kind are useful. (小西) 或 Questions of that sort are very difficult. (LDCE) 则是在着重强调该“特定种类”。

另一非正式、不规范说法是 *These kind of book are useful*. (小西) 还可以说 (ib.):

This kind of books *is* useful. (把kind看作名词短语中心, 较正式) 或 This kind of books *are* useful. (让books

作为短语中心; This kind of为其定语; 非正式, 还属规范说法)

指多种时才用kinds/sorts: several kinds of apples/ apples of several kinds (ALD)(后一说法着重强调多种), all sorts of people/people of all sorts (LDCE)(sort可有贬意—WNNCD), These kinds of book(s)(单数无冠词book仍有概括意义)/Books of these kinds(强调特定几种) are useful. (小西)

10.2 集合名词做主语的情况

一方面有些集合名词(包括不可数的和可数的单数形式)总是表示单一的集合总体, 所接谓语动词说明作为主语的这些集合名词的单数意义:

The army was obliged to beat a retreat. 那支军队不得不撤退。(比较: opposing armies “对阵的两军”)

How much new machinery has been installed? 多少新机器设备已经安装好了?

Our clothing protects us from the cold. (Palmer) 我们的衣服保护我们不受寒。

另一方面, 有些集合名词(作为不可数名词)总是表示汇集的成员群体, 所接谓语动词说明作为主语的这些集合名词的复数意义:

The British people(“人们”或“人民”, 不可数) have generally been a scholarly people.(“民族”, 可数; NDEC) 英国人总的说来是个好学的民族。[比较: A people is a national group. (LDCE) 一个民族是同族的一个人群。]

The police are the country's servants, not its masters. (RHD) 警察是国家的仆人, 不是国家的主人。

Cattle feed on grass. (NDEC) 牛吃草。

但是, 更多集合名词(包括不可数的和可数的单数形式),

既可指单一的集合总体、又可指汇集的成员群体，由谓语表明其不同“数”的意义：

The television public is increasing rapidly. (LDCE)
(该集合名词由形容词转成，不可数；在此指整体增长) 电视观众在迅速增多。

These meetings are secret as far as general public are concerned. (NDEC) (general public仍不可数，但在此指群体关系) 对于一般公众来说，这些会议是秘密的。

Some people say that today's youth has no sense of responsibility. (Chambers) (该集合名词由抽象名词“青春”转成，泛指青年或指某处的全体青年，不可数；在此被看作整体) 有人说现在的青年没责任感。

The youth of today are very fond of dancing. (Frisky) (the youth在此被看作群体) 现在的青年们很喜欢跳舞。

The audience was enormous. (CGEL) (该集合名词可数，如an enormous audience/enormous audiences，一处或多处的“极多的听众”；而在此指一处听众的总数非常之多) 听众异常众多。

The audience are requested to be in their seats by 7:25. (Wood) (the audience在此指陆续到来的群体) 观众应于七点二十五分前全已就座。

The crew consists of 20 sailors. (Ganshina) (该集合名词可数，如a train crew/the train crews，一趟或多趟列车的“乘务组”；而在此指一整体) 全船乘务组由二十名水手组成。

The crew were all asleep. (ib) (the crew在此指成员群体) 乘务员全睡着了。

A team which is full of enthusiasm is more likely to win. (Swan) (指一个整体) 一个积极性高的球队获胜的可

能性较大。

The team *are* full of enthusiasm. (ib) (指群体) 队员们充满热情。

The average family *is* a great deal smaller than it used to be. (ib) (指一体) 现在, 一般家庭规模比以前小多了。

My family *are* early risers. (Ganshina) (指各成员) 我们一家人都习惯早起。

The committee *is* divided on the question. (Wood) 在这问题上, 该委员会发生分歧。〔一分为二〕

The committee *differ* as to what report they shall make. (NDEC) 委员们对于应提出的报告, 意见不同。〔各执已见〕

Each couple *was* asked to complete a form. (CGEL) (指一双) 每对夫妻都要填一张表。

The couple *were* happily married. (ib) (指二人)

10.3 谓语同主语的“实意一致”和“近邻一致”

不定代词*either*、否定代词*neither*, *none*按原意是仅指单数的:

The two guests have arrived and *either* *is* welcome (CGEL) 两位客人到了, 每一位都受欢迎。

The two guests have arrived but *neither* *is* welcome. (ib) 两个客人到了, 但哪个都不受欢迎。

If you need a repairman, there's *none* better than my brother. (LDCE) 如果你需要一个修理工, 哪个也不如(没有一个比)我弟弟好。

*either*和*neither*用于可数名词,*none*主要用于可数名词,都不同于*some*, *any*兼用于可数、不可数名词:

Give me *some* (paper) if there *is* any. (谓语为单

数) 如果有纸, 结我一些。

Give me some papers to mark if there are any left unmarked. (谓语为复数) 如果还有没评分的考卷, 结我一些。

但如二者或三者以上有共同情况时, 对个别肯定或否定就相当对全部, 因而在非正式语中, *either, neither, none* 可由复数谓语表明其实指复数:

Has/Have either of them been seen recently? (Swan) 大家最近见到他俩 (中任何一个) 了吗? [不与of引导的复数名词、代词连用时指单数: *Either (one/man) is sure to prove satisfactory.* (Schibsbye) (不说*either men*) 两个 (男人) 里任何一个都一定会使人满意。]

Either of them are welcome. (CGEL) 他们两个哪一位都受欢迎。

I sent cards to Mavis and Margery, but neither (of them) has/have replied. I doubt if either (of them) is/are coming. (CGE) 我给马维斯和玛哲丽都寄了请柬, 但二人谁也没回音。我想二人谁也不会来的。

None (of the books) has/have been placed on the shelves. (CGEL) (这些书) 一本也没上架。

If either David or Janet comes, he or she will want a drink. / If either David or Janet come, they will want a drink. (LDCE) 大卫或者珍妮来时, 他或她/他们都要喝点儿。

Neither James nor Virginia was/were at home. (Swan) 詹姆斯和弗吉尼亚哪一个都不在家。

但表示互相排斥时, *either...or...* 所接单数名词后只用单数谓语动词。

Either (George or Harry) is usually here. (Close) 平常两个总有一个 (不是乔治就是哈里) 在这儿。

Either you or he is wrong. (RHD) 不是你错了, 就是他错了。(如说*Either he or you are wrong.* 应是*Either he is wrong or you are wrong*的省略说法)

同理可说*Either he or I am in the wrong.* (井上) 或者是他(错了), 或者是我错了。

这种省略形成了“近邻一致”:

Either my wife or I am going. (CGEL) 或者是我的妻子(去), 或者是我去。

Neither you, nor I, nor anyone else knows the answer. (CGEL) 无论你、我或别的任何人都不知道答案。

但“近邻一致”不见得都是有所省略, 也可以说这时先考虑到谓语和其最近的主语的关系, 暂时未及其他:

One and a half years have passed./A year and a half has passed. (ib) 一年半过去了。

There are/is my wife and family to consider. (Wood) (用*is*时是把*my wife and family*看作一体, 或暂先想到*my wife*, 然后想起*there are my family*) 我的妻子, 还有孩子们, 需要考虑。

Many a man comes and goes. (RHD) (*many a...*只惯接单数谓语动词) 很多人来来往往。

以下第一、二句合“于近邻一致”而或合或不合“实意一致”原则; 第三句, 两种“一致”都不合, 属于多接单数谓语动词的惯用法(多以*one*为短语中心):

More than one has/have found it so. (*More have found it so than just he.*) (Curme, *Syntax*, p.59) (*has*属近邻一致, *have*属实意一致) 不只一个人发现事物是这样的。

More than one member has protested against the proposal. (CGEL, p.758) 不仅是一个会员对这一提案提出了抗议。

There is more than one possible explanation. (wood)
对此可以做出的解释不仅仅是一种。

〔比较more...than间有名词时, More members than one have protested against the proposal. (CGEL)〕

10.4 主语句、祈使句及惯用不完整句

省略句中, 略去的词语可以补全而句子原义不变。有些没有谓语或没有主语等成分的句子, 所“缺”词语不明, 有多种可能, 因而不好补全或“补全”时意义、语气有所不同, 那就不是省略句。

1. 主语句——只提出一个或一些事物(主语, 可带定语)而不提其有何运动或联系(无谓语):

Rain, rain, November rain, darkness, wind and dirt.
雨啊, 还是雨。十一月的冷雨, 黑暗, 寒风与泥污。

A place of green things growing rank in the spring
—trees putting forth leaves, grasses springing up, the
early spring flowers coming out, flowering bushes
everywhere. (Ganshina) 春天, 一个绿意葱茏的地方, 萌发着
新叶的树木, 蓬勃蹿起的青草, 含苞欲放的早春之花, 还有开着
花朵的遍地矮树丛。

2. 祈使句——一般只提出一种或几种运动(或者联系)(谓语, 可带状语、宾语等), 而不提发生该运动(或联系)的人(主要是谈话对方, 有时包括对方与自己):

Don't be a stranger. [否定一种联系] 不要见外(别客气)。

Don't be deceived by his looks. (祈使句较少用被动语态) 不要被他的外表蒙骗了。

Let's not get angry. (let的施动者应是you and I) 咱们别生气。

Let bygones be bygones. (let的施动者应是you或you

and I) (你/你我要让) 过去就算过去了、〔比较 *Are you willing to let your life be controlled by destiny?* (FWF) (let的施动者是you) 你愿让你的一生任凭命运摆布吗?〕

请求或命令听话众人中的某个或某些怎么样时, 祈使句可有主语:

Parents with children go to the front, (please). 带小孩的父母(请)到前面来。

但对you的命令句, 如点明you为主语, 则语气非常强硬:

Don't tell me to be quiet. YOU be quiet! (CGEL)
不要让我别出声。别出声是你!

You get out! (Swan) 你给我滚出去!

3. 惯用“不完整句”——很多惯用句所“缺”词语已不可补全:

Thanks (a lot). (不能说 *I owe/give you thanks...*)

Good-bye! (意义不同于原说法 *God be with ye!* “上帝和你同在!”) 再见!

Nothing doing. (不尽同于 *There's nothing doing.* “毫无效果/作用。”) 不行。

Well done! (语气明快不同于 *That's well done!*) 干得好!

另外, 使用替代词如one(s) (替换名词、代词), do (替换谓语动词及其宾语、状语) 或so (替换谓语复合形式的一部分及其宾语、状语乃至全句) 的句子不是省略句:

There was one (数词) long writing-table and two small ones (代词). 有一个长写字台和两个小的。

“I hope you enjoyed yourself.”—“I did. Thanks.”
(Swan, “我希望你玩得很好。” “的确玩得很好。多谢。”)

You've spilled coffee on the table, and so have I.
(后一分句主语与前相对) 你把咖啡洒在桌上了, 我也洒上了。

“You've spilled coffee on your dress.”—“Oh,

dear! So I have!” (后句主语与前所指相同) “你把咖啡洒在衣服上了。” “啊,糟糕! 真洒上了!”

“Has the news reached home yet?” — “I’m afraid so/not.” (CGEL) (so替代the news has reached home, 而不是the news has not reached home之略) “这消息现在传到家里了吧?” “我想,到了/还到不了呢。”

10.5 情景省略句

英语句中的省略分两大类: 因情景使所指对象自明而省略, 或因与前言、后语有相同词语而省略; 可简称“情景省略”和“同前/同后省略”。

情景省略中, 多属主语自明, 或主语连同谓语动词/联系动词自明而一起略去, 但按谓语动词性质应该使用的下列七种主要句型中的补足成分, 即表语、宾语、补足状语等, 一般不可缺少, 因为正是它们表明了特殊的关系、特征等新的信息。但be与助动词have, will等因仅有引导作用, 在主语略去时一般亦略, 除非有not与之结合:

1. 联系动词-表语句

不说Are hungry? (是饿了吗?)——可以说Hungry? (Are you hungry? 之略) 或You hungry? (CGEL)

2. 不及物动词句

不说Am coming. (我要来的。)——可以说Coming (tomorrow). (Swan) (I’m coming tomorrow之略)

3. 不及物动词-补足状语句

不说Lie. (躺下。)——要说Lie down. (或带其他补足状语Lie quietly/in bed.)

4. 简单及物动词句

不说Get? (明白吗?)——可以说Get it? You get it? (Do you get it?)

不说Like/Love? (喜欢吗?)——可以说Like/Love it?

5. 及物动词-宾语-补足状语句

不说Put/ Lay it. Put/Lay down. (把它放下。) ——要说Put/lay it down.

6. 含双重及物动词的句子

不说Told that. Have told you that. (对你说过是这样的。) ——可以说Told you that/so. (CGEL) Haven't told you that. (参见Swan)

7. 含复合及物动词的句子

不说Let be. (随便。) Allow to come in? (让进吗?) ——可以说Let him be. (LDCE) Let him (be) alone. (Harper) (随他便。)

Allow us to come in? Allow us to come in! 让我们们进吗? 让我们进吧!

与上述情景省略须按句型要求不同, 在同前/同后省略及惯用句中就没有要带补足成分的规律了:

Aren't you hungry yet? I know you are. (略同前表语) 你还不饿吗? 我知道你饿了。

"Are you coming too?" — "Yes, I am." (用助动词, 略同前实意动词) "你也来吗?" "是啊, 我也来。"

Let sleeping dogs lie. (谚语)(lie在此无补足状语) 没事不要惹事。

Spend as you get. (及物动词spend, get在此惯用谚语中无宾语) 量入为出。

"Shall we go?" — "If you like." (LDCE)(like在此无宾语; to go) "咱们去吗?" "你愿去就去。"

Love little, love long. (RHD)(love在此谚语中无宾语) 要爱得温和, 爱得长远。

"What shall I put at the end of the sentence?" — "Put a question mark." (LDCE)(put宾语后略去补足状语 at the end of...) "我要在这一句末尾加什么号吗?" "加问

号。”

Lay up for a rainy day. (谚语) (lay在此惯用谚语中无宾语) 平时储备为急时。[比较: *Bees lay up honey for the winter.* 蜜蜂储蜜为过冬。]

Do not all you can; spend not all you have; believe not all you hear; and tell not all you know.

(谚语) (tell在此惯用谚语中无间接宾语) 不要能干的都干; 不要把所有的都花掉; 不要听到的都相信; 不要把知道的都告诉人。

Let go! You're hurting my arm! (LDCE) (惯用语 *let go* 中 *let* 未接复合宾语) 放开(你的手)! 你把我的胳膊弄疼了!

Live and let live. (谚语) (*let* 未接复合宾语) 与人方便, 自己方便。

情景省略最常略去的是句子开头: 略掉主语, 常连同谓语等一起省去(只提宾语、表语、状语等):

Pardon?/Beg pardon?/Beg your pardon? (RHD) (*I beg your pardon?*) 请您再说一遍?

Many happy returns (of your birthday). (CGEL) (*I wish you many happy returns...*) 祝你生日快乐, 健康长寿。

Seen Andy? (Swan) (*Have you seen Andy?*) 看见安迪了吗?

Another round? (*Would you like another round?*) 还想再转一圈吗?

Serves you/him right. (*It serves you/him right.* 强调句末状语) 你/他活该。

Your turn. (*It's your turn.* 只提其表语) 轮到你了。

感叹句、疑问句多用 *What.../How...* 等作为前置补足成分, 而略去主语、谓语或部分谓语, 亦属情景省略:

Disgusting!/How disgusting! (后略it is) 真讨厌!

Good idea! /What a good idea (it is)! 真是好主意!

How encouraging! (略主语“这形势/这番话”之类, 略联系动词“是”) 多么鼓舞人心啊!

What if you join us for lunch? (略主语、谓语“你考虑”, 突出what及状语从句)(如果说) 你和我们一起吃午饭, 你看怎么样?

What if/though they are illiterate? (What does it matter if/though...主句大部略去, 突出what及从句) 即使他们是不识字, 又有什么关系呢?

What/How about sending him a copy?(Ball) (What's your idea/How do you like the idea about...略主语、谓语等, 突出what/how及介词短语定语) 给他寄一份怎么样?

But why not grant the reasonable demands? (But why don't you grant...略主语和助动词, 突出why及被否定实意动词和宾语) 但合理要求不答应, 为什么呢?

How come you're so late? (CGEL) (How does it come about that you're so late? 略形式主语、助动词等) 你究竟怎么来得这么晚?

在情景省略中, 主句有省略或整个略去, 而从句因表明特定关系, 至少不能完全略去:

O that I had the wings of a dove! (主句全略) 啊, 我多么希望有一双鸽子的翅膀!

If I could but explain! (主句全略) 只要我能解释一下就好了! (无奈不能)

Heads I win, (and) tails you lose. (谚语) [此语喻对愚人的哄骗] (这硬币转一会儿倒下时,) 正面朝上算我赢, 背面朝上算你输。

10.6 “主语 + be” 句型中的省略

并列复合句或主从复合句中，与前、后相同的“主语 + be”一般或同时略去、或一起保留，不可略一留一：

He is poor but (he is) happy. (CGEL) (不说…but is happy. 或…but he happy.) 他穷，但他快活。(可以说 rich but not happy 或 He's rich, but isn't nappy.)

Shakespeare was not only a writer, but (also) an actor. (LDCE) (不说…but was also an actor.) 莎士比亚不仅是个作家，而且是个演员。

特别是在主从复合句中，当从句主语和主句主语相同时，从句的“主语 + be (实意动词、联系动词或助动词)”常一同略掉，不能保留其一。该省略从句所接主句的谓语动词可以是be，也可以不是be。(参见8.4)

His manner was unwelcoming if (it was) not downright rude. (条件从句主语所指事物和was同前) 即使不算粗暴已极，他的态度也是不表欢迎。

If (they are) not (to arrive) today, the tractors are sure to arrive tomorrow. (条件从句主语所指事物和are同后) 如果今天不到，明天拖拉机一定能到。

While (she was) at Oxford, she was active in the dramatic society. (时间从句主语和was同后) 在牛津上学时，她积极参加戏剧协会的活动。

下列各种从句中主语同前或同后而可省略，但随主语略去的be却并非同于主句谓语动词，所略二者仍是不可只留其一：

1. 时间从句、处所从句

We got acquainted while (we were) on a visit to the Crimea. (Ganshina) (were为实意动词) 我们是在游览克里米亚时相识的。

Look out for cars when (you are) crossing the

street. (are为进行体助动词) 过马路时要注意汽车。

When (*it is*) completed, the power station will have nine 72000kw generators. (is为被动被态助动词) 这座发电站完工时, 将拥有七万二千千瓦的发电机九台。

He visited the places where he had played when (*he had been*) a child. (had been为联系动词) 他重游了小时候玩耍的地方。

Fill in the blanks with articles where (*it is*) necessary (for you to fill in them with...). (有时所略主语并非同于主句主语, 而是所指同于主句的it) 在必要的地方以冠词填空。

2. 方式从句

She hurriedly left the room as if (*she was/were*) angry. (were属虚拟语气) 她匆匆离开那个房间, 好象是生气了。

He turned round as though (*he was*) searching for someone. (was为助动词) 他转过身来, 好象是在找什么人。

3. 条件从句

Send the goods now, if (*they are*) ready. (LDCE) (偶见所略从句主语同于主句宾语) 如果(货物)准备好了, 现在就去送货。

He will come later, if (*he comes*) at all. (CGEL, P.893) (从句谓语动词可不是be, 而是同于主句谓语动词) 如果他真的来的话, 将会来得晚些。

4. 让步从句

He is extremely well read though (*he is*) very young. 他虽年轻, 却极其博学。

I show everything on my face whether (*I am*) angry or pleased. 无论是喜是怒, 什么我都表现在脸上。

省略“主语 + be”也适用于简单句:

“Are we on time?”—“ (I’m/We’re) Afraid not.”
(不说Am/Are afraid not.) “我们是正好准时到吗?” “恐怕不是”。

但比较简单句: “Maybe you’re afraid of your landlady?” — “I afraid (of her)?” (略am) “可能你怕房东太太?” “我哪会(怕她)呢?”

“(I’m) Too old to learn new tricks.”—“You old? Not a bit of it.” (You are old? 中略are) “我老了, 学不了新把戏了。” “你老了! 一点也不老。”

10.7 以to代表作为补足成分的不定式

当动词不定式作为几种句型所要求的补足成分时, 即使由于同前或同后不必原样重复, 也要把不定式前部符号to保留(只略动词原形)。

1. 宾语to (do/be等)

“Are you on holiday?” — “No, but I’d like to.”
(to be略be) “你今天休假吗?” “不休, 但我是很想休假的。”

The committee did not discuss your proposal, but it hopes to next month. (CGEL) (to do so略do so) 委员会没讨论你的提议, 但希望下月讨论。

Perhaps I’ll go to Brazil this summer; I’d very much like to. (to go略go) 今年夏天我也许去巴西; 我非常想去。

If you want to, you can come. (Cronin) (to come略come) 要是想来, 你可以来。(如不是在并列分句而是在从句中, 该to也可略去: Come when you want/if you like/whenever you wish. 见Swan)

Those who prefer (to) can stay indoors. (CGEL)
(从句中可只略stay, 也可将to stay一起略去) 愿意留在室内的可以留下。

I don't want to accept, but I don't know how not (to). (CGEL) (know how/where...等后可连to一起略不定式) 我不想接受, 但又不好不接受。

2. 宾语补语、主语补语to (do/be等)

"May I go out this evening?" — "No, I'd hate you to. (Close) (to do so或to go out之略) "今晚我可以出去吗?" "不可以, 我不愿让你出去。"

Do stay with me. I'd love you to. (to stay之略) 一定呆在我这儿。我愿意你呆在这儿。

She used my pen although I told her not to. (not to use之略) 虽然我告诉她不要用我的笔, 她还是用了。

"Why don't you pay?" — "I'm not obliged to." "你为什么付钱?" "没有规定让我付钱。"

Somebody ought to help. Shall I ask Peter (to)? (ask可接复合宾语, 也可只接一指人宾语, 其后to可有可无) 应该有人帮助。我请彼得帮助/我请求彼得, 好吗?

"May I go out this evening?" — "Yes, I'll allow you (to)." (Close) (allow多接复合宾语, 有时接简单宾语, 其后to多有可无) "今晚我可以出去吗?" "可以, 我许可你(出去)。"

If you want me to, I'll lend you my pen. (CGEL) (to lend略去lend, 但to不可略, 如略, 句义有变) 如果你想让我把笔借给你, 我愿借给你。

3. 状语、定语to (do/be等)

I think he should get a job, but you can't force him to if he's not ready (to). (Swan) (句末状语to get one略作to, 居状语位置的to多可省略) 我想他应该找个工作, 但要是他不愿意你不能强迫他。

I was expected to come, and I was willing (to). 他们期待着我来, 而我也愿意来。

He'll never leave home; he hasn't got the courage (to). (Swan) 他永远也不会离开家, 因他没有勇气 (离家)。

除担任上述补足成分的动词不定式可以略作to外, 构成复合谓语的否定式因对情态动词或半助动词说来有补足作用, 同前或同后时要保留to以指示谓语的构造:

I shall not go, unless I *have to*. (have to go之略)
除非必须去, 否则我就不去。

You didn't work as hard as you *ought to*. (ought to work hard之略) 你没有做出应有的努力。

I wish I could find time to learn it. But I'm afraid I shall not *be able to*. (be able to do so或be able to learn it之略) 但愿我能找出时间来学, 但恐怕我找不出时间。

10.8 表否定的代词、副词、连词的用法

下列表否定的词语多有和汉语相当词语不尽相同的疑难用法, 主要表现在否定对象、否定范围、语气倾向等方面。

否定代词/副词 (和相应短语) 及否定连词表

否 定 代 词		否 定 副 词	否定连词
名词性否定代词	形容词性否定代词		
none	no /not a, any	no	nor
no one/no-body, nothing		not, never, nowhere	
neither		neither/not...either	
no more/not...any more		no more/not any more, no longer / not ... any longer	
little, few		little	

特别在以下六方面常有误解、误用: 1. 副词no(原前缀和

词根本义not ever) 指对实际运动或联系的否定(而不指对前述否定的否定); 2. 代词no(原none的缩短形式)比起副词not语气强烈得多,常指向反面; 3. 副词neither与连词nor的用法有同有异; 4. no more和not...any more等可有区别; 5. no more...than表同等否定,不同于not more...than; 6. 否定指量代词few和little二者中little还兼为否定副词,表示对谓语的否定。现各举例说明。

1. 副词no指对运动或联系本身的否定;

“He knows Russian.” — “Oh no, he doesn’t.”
“他懂俄语。” “啊,不,他不懂。”

“He doesn’t know Russian.” — “No, he doesn’t.”
“他不懂俄语。” “不懂,他不懂。” (汉语可肯定前述否定“是的(对),他不懂。”)

2. 代词no比副词not语气强得多;

代词no原为none缩短而来,含有not any之意,比副词not多一层语气意义。

This reply is *not* an answer. 这一回答不是应有的答案。

His answer is *no* answer. (RHD) (His answer is *not* at all/far from the solution to the problem.) 他的回答丝毫不能解决问题/远非问题的答案。

The road was bad and driving was *no* joke. (ib)
道路很难走,开车去可不是闹着玩的。

It made *no* small difference. (rather a large difference) 这事绝不是无关紧要(这事关系重大)。

That’s *no* business of yours./That’s *none* of your business./That *isn’t* any of your business. 这事你管不着。(比较That’s *not* your business. 这事与你无关。)

3. 副词neither可加可不加and; 而连词nor前不可再加连词and;

He couldn't speak, (and) *neither* could he walk./
He couldn't speak, *nor* could he walk. 他不能说话,也不能走路。〔或说He couldn't speak, and he couldn't walk either./He couldn't speak or walk (either)。〕

*neither...nor*一起作为复合连词:

As a business-man, journalist and writer, I was, at the age of 45, *neither* fish, *nor* fowl *nor* fresh meat. 我又当商人, 又当记者和作家, 到四十五岁时, 我还是个四不像。

但*neither*本来是代词:

If you run after two hares, you'll catch *neither*.
(谚语)(名词性代词) 一人追两兔, 一只也抓不住。(可以说*neither of the two*)

Truth lies on *neither* side. (形容词性代词) 双方都不对 (真理既不在这边, 也不在那边)。

4. *no more*主要用作代词 (可称复合代词); *not...any more*除用作代词短语外, 还可相当*not...any longer*作状语:

There's *no more*. (名词性代词) There's *no more* bread. (Swan) (形容词性代词) 没有 (面包) 了。

We saw him *no more*. (ALD) (仅在文学语言中用作状语表“不再”; 一般说We *didn't* see him *any more*.) 我们再也未曾见过他。

You'll have to do with what you've got; there isn't *any more* (food) left. (名词性或形容词性代词词组) 你必须以你现有的那些将就一下; 再也没有剩余的 (食品) 了。

We needn't speak of it *any more*. (*not...any more*作状语可指间断的情况; 而*not...any longer*则不能) 这事, 我们不必再谈。

He couldn't stand it *any more/any longer*. (二者皆可指持续的情况; *not...any more*多着眼当时以后, *not any*

longer多着眼说话当时) 对此, 他再也不能忍受下去。

not...any longer相当于no longer (置实意动词或表语前):

She could *no longer* go to school/couldn't go to school any longer. 她再不能上学了。

He's *no longer* fit to be a member of this club. (表语前) 他已不再适于作这个俱乐部的一员了。

He *no longer* lives here/doesn't live here *any longer* (*any more*). (LDCE/Swan) (not...any more亦可指说话当时情况) 他现已不在这儿住。

5. no more ...than...表示对相比二事物的同等否定; not more ... than...表示前一事物的有关度量不大于后者有关度量(小于或等于它):

Your story today is *no more* convincing *than* the one yesterday. (Stratton) 你昨天讲的那一套不能使人相信, 今天讲的这一套同样不能使人相信。

Your story today is *not more* convincing *than* the one yesterday. (ib) 你今天讲的这番话并不比昨天讲的那番话更令人信服。

A whale is *no more* a fish *than* a horse (is). (井上) 马不是鱼类, 鲸鱼同样不是鱼类。

A horse is *not more* a mammal *than* a whale(is). (ib) 鲸鱼是哺乳动物正如马是哺乳动物一样。

比较: She's *no less* beautiful *than* her sister. 她和她姐姐同样美貌。She's *not less* (perhaps more) beautiful *than* her sister. 她的美貌不亚于(或许更胜于)她姐姐。

6. 原表趋近于无的代词few和little可表否定(“无有”, 语气稍委婉); little还可作为否定副词:

Few of them (*Hardly any* of them) are any good. (名词性否定代词) 他们当中没什么中用的。

He has *few* good reasons for staying, has he?
(Swan) (形容词性否定代词)他没什么正当理由停留,是不是?

Little remains to be said. (RHD) (名词性否定代词)
没什么可说的了。

There's *little* point in doing anything about it, is there? (Swan) (形容词性否定代词) 关于这事做什么也没有意义了,是不是?

Little did I dream of ever seeing you here. (RHD)
(否定副词) 我做梦也没想到会在这儿见到你。

He *little* cares/*Little* does he care whether we live or die. (LDCE) (否定副词) 我们是死是活,他全不在意。

10.9 关系微妙的否定中心、否定转移、否定范围和部分否定

否定句的否定中心多在谓语:

I wasn't listening all the time. 我一直没有注意听。

但如将谓语同状语紧密连读,不是重读谓语,而特别重读状语,则否定的中心就转到状语上面:

I wasn't listening all the 'TIME. 我并不是一直都在注意听着。

也可以把否定中心放在主语上:

'I wasn't listening. (It was my wife who was listening all the time.) 我没注意听。(一直注意听的是我妻子。)

有时,否定谓语、或否定主语,否定谓语、或者否定表语或宾语等补足成分,否定句意义相仿:

Either the plans won't do./Neither of the plans will do. (否定主语) 两个计划一个也不行。

The baby appears not to be awake. (否定表语)/*The baby doesn't appear to be awake.* 婴儿好象是没有醒/不

象是醒着。

He expected *not to win*. (否定宾语) /He didn't expect to win. 他已想到他是不会取胜的/他并没有想过他会取胜。

有时，当否定主句谓语或否定从句谓语时，主从复合句全句意义相仿：

I imagine (that) he *doesn't care*, does he? /I *don't* imagine he cares, does he? (CGEL) 我认为他不会在意，他会吗？/我不认为他会在意，他会吗？

对于appear等表“象是”、expect和believe等表“不肯定的设想”的谓语动词，在英语多否定谓语而不否定补足成分、多否定主句谓语而不否定从句，这样可使不肯定的语气转到原指不肯定的（主句）谓语上，而不因句末否定而显得生硬。这种表现法就是“否定的转移”：

I *don't suppose* him (to be) innocent. (多不是否定宾语补足语 I suppose him not (to be) innocent.) 我设想，他并不是清白无辜的。

It *doesn't seem* that we can get our money back. (多不是否定从句It seems that we can't get our money back.) 看来我们的钱弄不回来了。

I *don't think/suppose/believe/expect/imagine* (that) she'll come (Swan) 我想/设想/相信/料想/认为，她不会来的。

但表示肯定希望的hope所接否定从句，不可将其否定转到主句中来：

I hope she *doesn't dislike* the flowers. (ib) (不能说 I don't hope she dislikes the flowers.) 我希望她不会讨厌这些花。

否定的中心除可为谓语、主语、谓语的补足成分外，还可能仅是状语中不直接修饰谓语的一部分 (not 紧靠该部)，则全句

不属否定句。否定中心仅是定语时，全句也不属否定句：

We were there (*not many years*) after the war.
(*not*仅否定*many*，而*not many years*修饰的是*after the war*) 战后不久，我们曾在该地。

They displayed *no little* interest in her progress.
(*no*仅否定*little*) 他们对她的进步表现出很大 (绝不是很小) 的兴趣。

否定中心的变动可影响到否定范围的缩小或扩大，还可以形成“部分否定”。

With *no coaching*/Without *any coaching*, he will pass the exam. (仅否定介词宾语；全句不属否定句) 不用给他任何辅导，他会通过这次考试的。

With *no coaching* will he pass the exam. (Not with any coaching will he pass the exam./He will not pass the exam with any coaching.) (谓语一组成部分置主语前时，表明*not*或*no*否定以谓语为中心的全句) 无论给他多少辅导，他也不会通过这次考试。

I *didn't* leave home, because I was afraid of my father. (仅否定*leave home*) 我没离开家，因为我怕父亲。

但如将主句同原因从句紧密连读，不特别重读*leave home*，而特别重读*because...afraid...father*，则否定的中心就转到原因状语从句上面，否定范围扩大到原因从句连同谓语、宾语：I *didn't* leave home *because I was afraid of my 'FATHER*。我不是因为怕父亲而离开家的。

要通过谓语表示“全部否定”时，一般不使用*all*, *both*, *every...*为主语，一般不说*All the children didn't sleep*。要说*None of the children slept*。所有的孩子都没睡。

下列否定句中的主语*all*, *both*, *every...*一般要特别重读，各句表示的是“部分否定”：

'*ALL* the children *didn't* sleep. (Not all the child

ren slept.) (CGEL) 并不是所有的孩子都睡了。

'*ALL* that glitters is not gold. (谚语) 闪闪发光的不都是金子。

'*ALL* truths are not to be told at *all* times. (谚语) 并非所有的真情在所有场合都宜于说明。

'*EVERY* shoe fit not *every* foot. (谚语) 并不是每只鞋能适合每只脚。

'*EVERY* couple is not a pair. (谚语) 成双未必配对儿。〔天下夫妇多，珠联璧合少。〕

'*ALL/EVERYTHING* is not lost that is in peril. (谚) 危难当头并不等于万事皆休。

'*BOTH* (the) windows are not open. 两扇窗户不是都开着。

但在现代英语中，*All/Both/Every...not...*的说法还是不如 *Not all*等说法自然：

Not all English people like fish and chips. (现多不说 *ALL* English people don't like...) (Swan) 并不是所有英国人都喜欢炸鱼炸土豆片。

Not every Welshman speaks Welsh. (ib) 不是每个威尔士人都说威尔士语。

The windows are not *both* open. (此处 *both* 为同位语) 两扇窗户不是双双开着。(比较: *Neither* window is open. 两扇窗都没开。)

作否定句宾语的 *all*, *both*, *every...* 仍是表示“部分否定”：

He didn't eat *all the* peanuts. (RHD) 他并没有把所有花生都吃光。

He didn't attend *every* class. (ib) 他并没有上所有这些班的课程。

I don't want *both* books. (ib) 我不是两本书都要。

I don't know *both*. (ib) 我并非对二者全都了解。

10.10 情态复合谓语的否定中心的位置

在情态复合谓语的情态动词和实意动词（或联系动词）不定式之间加not对情态复合谓语加以否定时，否定中心多在情态动词。例如cannot...是“不（可）能...”，will not...是“不愿、不肯...”，should not (ought not to) ...是“不应该...”，need not...是“不必...”（情态动词have to...的否定形式前加助动词do再加not，也是“不必...”）。

但是，表示最肯定情态意义“一定”、“必须”、“必然”的must加not却不是否定情态动词，而是否定其后实意动词或联系动词，意思是“一定不要...”、“一定不能...”或“必须/必然不...”。

He *mustn't* find out what's happening. (Swan) 他一定不能（我们一定不让他）知道所发生的事。

We *mustn't* be late, must we? (ALD) 我们一定不要迟到，是不是？（句末反义问句的must语气减弱，已不意味着“一定吗？”）

We must meet again, *mustn't* we (*must we not*)? (LDCE) 我们一定还要见面，不是吗？（句末反义问句中因must语气减弱，可以加以否定：“不是一定吗？”）

Must I not have a voice in the matter, now I am your wife? (井上) 我既然是你的妻子了，在这件事上我还一定不能参加意见吗？

对must所表必要性本身予以否定要借用need not/do not have to:

“Must we pack now?” — “No, we *needn't/don't* have to pack till tomorrow.” (CGEL) “咱们现在就必须打点行装吗？” “不，还不必，明天打点还不晚。”

must除表示势态“必要（一定要）”外，还可以表示对实际

情况的估计”必然(一定是)”:

He *must be* there. “他一定要呆在那里(到那里去).”
或者“他一定是在那里。”

不过,在疑问句、否定句中, *must*一般只表“必要”,不表或很少表“必然”:

“*Must he be there?*” — “*He mustn't be there.*”
“他一定要(必须)呆在那里吗?” “他一定不要呆在那里。”(或
“...到那里去(吗)”)

Must he still be there at this hour of night? (问句中较少指实况估计) 这么晚了他还一定是在那里吗?

He *can't be* there at such an hour. (一般不用 *mustn't* 指否定的实况估计) 这个时候了,他不可能(一定已不是)在那里了。

need not/don't have to 也可指否定的实况估计:

It doesn't have to be/needn't be hot in Florida now. (CGEL) 在佛罗里达现在不一定是很热的。

情态动词 *may* 有两种基本含义: “可以”(得到某人许可)和“可能”(客观允许或估计实况如此)。在其否定的情态复合谓语中,可因重读词的不同而有不同意义:

You *may 'not go* swimming. (I don't permit you) (GCE) (*may not* 连读,重读 *not*, 否定 *may*) 你不可以去游泳(我不许你去)。

You *may* (短暂间隙) *'not go* swimming. (I permit you not to go) (ib) (*not go* 连读,重读 *not* 而否定实意动词 *go*) 你可以不去游泳(我允许你不去)。

They *'may not come* if it's wet. (Leech) (重读 *may* 强调“可能”, *not come* 连读而否定实意动词 *come*) 如果下雨,他们可能不来。

He *'may not be* there. 他可能是不在那里。

正因为 *may not*... 会有这三种歧义,对“可以”、“可能”的

势态本身的否定现多用较明确的cannot (can't) /mustn't:

You *may* lead the horse to the water, but you *can't* make him drink. (谚语) 你可以牵马到水边, 但不能强让它喝水。

You *can't/mustn't* go swimming today. 今天你不能 (否定势态) /一定不要去 (否定实意动词) 游泳。

后接not的will也可以特别重读该情态动词以强调“意愿”或“趋向”(主观要求), 而使not成为余音转而否定其后实意动词(或对won't不只一般重读, 而是加重重读, 而使-n't转而否定实意动词):

He 'will not ("won't) do what he's told. (Leech)
(He insists on not doing what he's told.) 他坚决不按告诉他的那样去做。

He 'will not ("won't) stop acting the fool. (Palmer)
(He persist in not stopping acting the fool.) 他坚持没完没了地干那种蠢事。

如果读shall not...时, 特别重读shall (或对shan't不只一般重读、而是加重重读), 也能强调客观要求 (较旧用法表“必定”) 而使not (或-n't) 转而否定实意动词:

You 'shall not ("shan't) escape my revenge!
(Leech) (I insist on seeing that you don't escape my revenge!) 你一定不能逃脱我的报复!

I "won't/ "shan't (英国口语) give in! (CGE)。我决不屈服!

情态动词shall本义“须要”, 同must“必须、一定”相近。估计实况“必然”只用must而不用shall。will和本属虚拟语气的would/should/ought to 都可用于实况估计:

That'll be the postman. (Hornby) 那准是邮递员来了。

She would be about fifty. (ib) 她大概五十左右。

His book *ought to/should be* reliable. 他的著作应该可靠。

估计实况“可能”用 *may* (或虚拟语气的 *might/could*), “可能不”用 *may(might) not*; “不可能”用 *cannot(can't)*; 询问实况“可能吗”? 用 *Can (Could) ...? —Can (Could) he be there? He may (might) not/can't (cannot)/won't (wouldn't)/shouldn't/oughtn't/needn't/doesn't have to be there.* 他可能在那儿吗? 他可能不/不可能/不会是/不该是/不应当是/不见得/不一定在那儿。

“情态动词 + not...” 否定中心表

否定中心在情态动词	否定中心在实意/联系动词
<p><i>can't/cannot</i></p> <p>1. 不能, 不会 (做)</p> <p>2. 不可能 (做/是) -----</p> <p>3. 不可以 (做) -----</p>	
<p><i>may not</i></p> <p>(客观使其) 不可以 (做) -----</p> <p>(陈旧/正式用语)</p>	<p>... <i>may not do/be</i> 可能不做 / 不是 (“是”、“不是”指实况估计)</p> <p>... <i>may (间隙) 'not do</i> 可以不做</p>
<p><i>won't/will not</i></p> <p>1. 不要求, 不愿意</p> <p>2. 不会 (是) [实况估计]</p>	<p>"<i>won't/'will not do</i></p> <p>坚持不做</p>
<p><i>shan't/shall not</i></p> <p>(客观使其) 不要, 不得 (不用于实况估计)</p>	<p>"<i>shan't/'shall not do</i></p> <p>(客观使其) 一定不要做</p>
<p><i>needn't/don't need(have) to</i></p> <p>1. 不必, 不一定 (做) -----</p> <p>2. 不一定是 [实况估计]</p>	<p>"<i>mustn't/'must not do</i></p> <p>----- (主观或客观使其) 一定不要做</p>

其他如 *dare not* (不敢), *should not* (不应该), *ought not to* (较正式, “不应当”) 等否定中心显然是在前面的情态动词, 未列表内。

10.11 非肯定句中用非肯定词语

正如表示“可以”与否时在肯定句中用may、在疑问句或否定句中多用Can...? /cannot一样，我们表示不确定的“一些”、“一点儿”时，在肯定句中用some；在疑问句、否定句、条件句等句中指非肯定事物时，一般要用any。some和any及二者分别构成的复合词、短语就是对应的肯定词语和非肯定词语：

He may be of *some* service *in some way/in a way*.

他可能(可以)在某(些)方面有些帮助。

Can we of *any* assistance *in any way*? 我们能在某些方面有些帮助吗?

I'm *somewhat* (程度副词) wiser now. (CGEL) 现在我多少聪明些了。

I'm not *any* wiser now. (ib) 现在我并未比当初聪明些。

They'll finish it *somehow* (方式副词)。他们总会把这一工作完成的。

They won't finish it *in any way/won't finish it at all*. (CGEL) 他们怎么也不会完成/根本不会(不想)完成这一工作。

She is *somewhat/more or less* suspicious of his intentions. 他对他的用意有所怀疑。

If you are *in any way/in the least* doubtful about it, don't do it. 如果你对这事有什么/有一点儿怀疑，你就不要办理。

In some sense/In a (certain) sense, it may have been the only possible solution. (RHD) 从某种意义上说，这种方法可能在当时是唯一可行的解决办法。

They have never come of age *in any adequate sense*. (NDEC) 从任何适当意义上说，他们都绝未达到成年。

It's very likely that they were *sometime/once* sailors under his command. 很可能, 他们过去曾是他率领下的水手。

It's unlikely that she has *ever* been to Scotland. (ever相当any time) 她不大可能曾经到过苏格兰。

They have *sometimes* been on *some* of the big liners, *too*. (你们登上过,) 他们也有时登上过一些大客轮。

I haven't *ever* been on *any* of the big liners, *either*. (你没登上过,) 我也从来没登上过哪个大客轮。

由此看来, 互相对应的肯定/非肯定词语, 不仅是*some/any*及二者构成的复合词或短语。但注意, 否定句中非肯定词语是用在否定词后, 否定词前仍用肯定词语: *Some people never send any Christmas cards.* 有人从不给别人寄圣诞卡。 *I, too, cannot swim.* (RHD) 我也不会游泳。 比较 *I cannot swim, either.*

对应肯定/非肯定词语表

	肯 定 词 语	非 肯 定 词 语 (问句中或not.../if...等后)
代词、代 词性短语	some (body/thing) a lot/great number (of) a lot/great deal (of)	any (body/thing) many much (兼为副词)
副词、副 词性短语	a long time a long way already also/too in a way/somehow more or less/somewhat once/sometime/sometimes somewhere/some place still	long far yet either in any way in the least/at all ever anywhere/any place any longer/any more

- { I like them *a great deal*. 我非常喜欢他们。
- { I don't like them (*very*) *much*. 我不大喜欢他们。
- { I can stay *a long time*. 我能逗留很久。
- { I can't stay *long*. 我不能久留。
- { We went *a long way*. (ALD) 我们走了很远。
- { How *far* did you go? We didn't go *far*. (ib) 你们走了多远? 我们没走多远。
- { The boat has left *already*. 船已经开了。
- { Has/Hasn't the boat left *yet*? (CGEL) 船已经开了吗/船还没开吗?
- { He's *still* at school. 他还在上学。
- { He's not at school *any longer/any more*. 他已不上学了。

*few, little, hardly, scarcely*构成的否定句及暗含否定意义的句中也用非肯定词语:

Few changes have *ever* taken so many people by surprise. 没有什么变动曾使这么多人不知所措。

Hardly/Scarcely *any* of us had *any* experience in sailing. 我们当中没什么有航行经验之人。

I fail to see *any* force in your argument. 我看不出你的论点有何力量。

It was too late to do *anything* now. (Mansfield) 这时, 采取什么办法都晚了。

Take it before he says something. /Take it before he says *anything*. 把这东西拿走, 不要等他说什么。

另一方面, 肯定句中常有部分事物是非肯定的而使用非肯定词语, 也还允许非肯定句中有时意指肯定事物而使用肯定词语:

If she didn't talk to *someone, anything* might happen. (Macaulay) (全句虚拟将来, 见6.2,2) (她一定要和某个人谈话, 以防坏人知其单身在外而加害于她) 如果她不和某人

谈话，那就什么事都会发生。

疑问句、甚至否定句中有时也意指肯定事物而用肯定词语。这就是非肯定句中表示“肯定意向”的用法：

Now he began to question if there were not *some* truth in what Denny said. (Gronin) 这时他开始怀疑(否定原看法)，难道丹尼所说的话就没有某些道理吗？

“I understand she showed him *some* photographs.”
— “No, she didn't show him *any/some* photographs.”

(否定句中可重复对方肯定的*some*) “我知道她给他看了些个照片。” “没有，她没给他看什么/些个照片。”

If you want *any/some* help, let me know. (Swan)
(用*some*期待肯定，更亲切) 如果你需要帮忙，只管说一声。

Won't you have *some* more? (ALD) (难道) 你不再吃点儿了吗？

Is there *something* to eat? I can smell food. (LDCE)
有吃的吧？我闻到食品香味了。

He wants *something* to eat? (陈述句语序以升调表疑问，总是期待肯定回答) 他是要点儿什么东西吃吧？

Didn't he recognize you *either*? 他连你也没认出来吗？

Didn't he recognize you *too*? 他不是把你也认出来了吗？

Has the boat left *already*? 船已经开了吧？/难道船已经开了？(比较前面例句Has the boat left *yet*?)

Hasn't the boat left *already*? (CGEL) (船应该已经开了) 难道船还没开？(比较前面例句Hasn't the boat left *yet*?)

*already*用于疑问句表示对自己看法的肯定，或对别人的肯定的惊疑；用于否定句表示对别人提过情况的疑惑。*yet*用于肯定句属陈旧用法，现很少用。

already, yet, still用法比较表

	肯定词 already (by this time, 早在此刻) 已经	非肯定词 yet (up to this time, 时至此刻) { 已经...? 还(没有)...	肯定词兼非肯定词 still (constantly even at this time, 一直 持续) 仍然
肯定句	He's <u>already</u> here. He's here <u>already</u> ! (置句末语气较强)	(限于陈旧、文学用语) He's <u>yet</u> a child. (LDCE) (还) He's here <u>yet</u> . (RHD)	He's <u>still</u> here. He's here <u>still</u> . Still, he's here. (接上文“虽然...”) 他仍然...
疑问句	Is he here <u>already</u> ? (岩波) 非普通疑问句, 表示对有人肯定的情况的惊疑	Is he here <u>yet</u> ? = Has he come <u>yet</u> ? (Palmer) 他已经来了吗?	Is he here <u>still</u> ? Is he <u>still</u> here? 他仍是一直在这儿吗?
否定句	You're <u>not</u> leaving us <u>already</u> , are you? (ALD) 非普通否定, 表示对有人肯定的情况的疑惑	He's <u>not yet</u> here. 他还没来到。 He isn't here <u>yet</u> .	He's <u>still not</u> working. He isn't working <u>still</u> . Still, he's not working. (此句接上文“虽然...”)他仍然是一直不工作。 (参见RHD)

再比较: “Was he *still* in bed?” — “He had *already* got up.”

He was *still* busy; he hadn't finished that novel *yet*.

本书例句出处略语表

ALD; Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English, 1974

CGE; A Communicative Grammar of English, G. Leech et al, 1974

CGEL; A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language, R. Quirk et al, 1985

Close, R. A., A Reference Grammar for Students of English, 1977

Curme, G. O., Syntax, 1931

DAI; A Dictionary of American Idioms, M. Boatner et al, 1975

Eckersley, C. E. et al, A Comprehensive English Grammar, 1961

EGS; English Grammatical Structure, L. Alexander et al, 1975

Erades, P. A., Points of Modern English Syntax, 1975

FWF; Reader's Digest Family Word Finder, 1978

GCE; A Grammar of Contemporary English, R. Quirk et al, 1972

Hornby, A.S., Guide to Patterns and Usage in English, 1975

Jespersen, O., A Modern English Grammar on

Historical Principles, 1909—1949

Kruisinga, E., A Handbook of Present-Day English,
1931—1932

LDCE: Longman Dictionary of Contemporary
English, 1978

Leech, G. N., Meaning and the English Verb, 1971

Liles, B. L., A Basic Grammar of Modern English,
1979

NDEC: Kenkyusha's New Dictionary of English
Collocations, 1958

ODCIE: Oxford Dictionary of Current Idiomatic
English, 1975—1983

OED: The Oxford English Dictionary, 1884—1928

Onions, C. T., Modern English Syntax, 1971

Palmer, F. R., The English Verb, 1974

RHD: The Random House Dictionary of the English
Language, 1966

Schibsbye, K., A Modern English Grammar, 1970

Swan, M., Practical English Usage, 1980

Thomson, A. J. et al, A Practical English Grammar,
1977

WNNCD: Webster's Ninth New Collegiate Diction-
ary, 1983

Wood, F. T., Current English Usage, 1964; English
Prepositional Idioms, 1967

Zandvoort, R. W., A Handbook of English Grammar,
1969

井上: 井上义昌《英米语用法辞典》, 1960, 东京

小西: 小西友七《英语前置词活用辞典》, 1975, 东京; 《英
语基本动词辞典》, 1980, 东京

岩波：《岩波英和大辞典》，1970，东京

姚善友：《英语虚拟语气》，1964，北京

《英语写作》：葛传槩《英语写作》，1985，上海

《现代》：张道真《现代英语用法词典》，1983，上海

《用法》：张道真《英语常用动词用法词典》，1981，上海

《综合》：黄士复、江铁主编《增订综合英汉大辞典》，1948，

上海

（引自文学名作家作品的例句后只注作家姓氏）

[General Information]

书名=英语句法新编

作者=刘国善编著

页数=329

SS号=10834009

出版日期=1992年01月第1版

前言
目录
目录

第一章从句的特点；分清从句、分句或其它

- 1.1 for与because等之相同与不同
- 1.2 so与so that之相通与各异
- 1.3 for等引导的不定式复合结构与从句
- 1.4 with引导的分词复合结构与从句
- 1.5独立结构与从句
- 1.6不定式、分词短语与从句并非总能互换
- 1.7分词、形容词定语不仅后位者相当定语从句
- 1.8形容词及其短语作状语并非皆为省略的从句

第二章名词从句的多种关联词

- 2.1 名词能担任的成分，名词从句都能担任
- 2.2作定语、状语的名词的性质与相应的定语、状语从句
- 2.3 引导从句的what, where等可保留或失去疑问意义
- 2.4疑问代词what等都能引导特殊问题从句
- 2.5疑问副词where等都能引导特殊问题从句
- 2.6连词whether与if的相通与不同
- 2.7连词whether/if引导一般问题从句
- 2.8 what/which/Whatever可相当“先行词+关系代词”
- 2.9 what/which/Whatever引导名词性关系从句
- 2.10 when/where/why/how引导名词性关系从句
- 2.11介词的省略形成WH-方面状语从句
- 2.12 WH-形式引导名词从句、其它从句综述
- 2.13 虚化that引导主语 / 表语 / 宾语 / 介词宾语 / 同位语从句
- 2.14复合宾语 / 主语可相当宾语 / 主语从句
- 2.15介词的省略形成that方面 / 原因状语从句

2. 16 that 名词从句的语气: 用或不用should

2. 17 引导名词从句的that的“省略”

系副 第三章 定语从句中选用或者不用关系代词、关

词的规律

3. 1非限制性定语从句所以不用that引导

3. 2关系代词that, which, as的不同用法

3. 3 as由连词转作关系代词

3. 4 but由介词转作关系代词

3. 5一般要用who/ whom/ whose的情况

3. 6一般只用which的情况

3. 7一般只用或多用that的情况

3. 8先行词为某些代词、形容词限定的名词时

3. 9 time when与time that的不同用途

3. 10关系代词的“省略”

第四章 分裂句

4. 1分裂句所含定语从句的先行词是it

4. 2分裂句与一般含定语从句复合句的不同

4. 3分裂句所强调的相应简单句各种成分

4. 4强调原状语一般不用when/ where/ why引导从句

4. 5 It was in 1918 that 句型的性质

4. 6主语代词、谓语时态与主语语序的变换

4. 7分裂句中关系代词that, who的“省略”

4. 8所谓“拟分裂句” What he's done is

第五章 while, as, that, if等引导对应或因果状语从句

5. 1时间从句while/as 并不是回答“What time?”

5. 2 It's since/from 与It/I was before 等

5. 3 as引导表示“对应”等关系的多种状语从句

5. 4 as/than从句与as/than短语

5. 5比较从句中可以或惯于省略的种种情况

5.6 用连词as与不同连词引导的比例从句

5.7 表示因果关系的各类从句性质相通

5.8 that引导表示“因果”等关系的多种状语从句及其省略

5.9 复合连词“that”引导十余种状语从句及其中that
的省略

5.10 so/such that或so/such that引导的三种从句并不以有

无情态动词相区别

第六章从句、主句与独立句中的虚拟语气

6.1 直陈条件 / 让步从句与虚拟条件 / 让步从句

6.2 虚拟语气的三种基本类型在从句及主句中的四种基本用法

6.3 should be/have been型表示的“意向”、“假想”与假想之引申：“意外、意料中”

6.4 should be/have been型表示的“假设”（从句）与“推测”（主句）

6.5 逆推条件句，松散条件句

6.6 “含蓄结果”与“含蓄条件”（should be/have been型

虚拟独立句三用法）

第七章 多功能词that, it, as, while, when, where的用法

7.1 that与it从实词到虚词

7.2 as从副词到连词、关系代词，从连词到介词

7.3 as引导宾语补语和主语补语

7.4 while, when, where各有十来种句法功能

第八章从句语序、从句时态的简化
以及词语的省略

8.1 从句位置与主、从句中的倒装

8.2 间接引语中动词“错向过去”与否的含义差别，情态动词“错向过去”与否

8.3 从句指将来动词常用较简便现在 / 现在进行 / 现在完成形式

8.4 从句略去与主句词语重复或可以理解的词语

第九章选用从句与选用相应结构的比较

9.1 简单句、并列复合句与主从复合句的语体差别

9.2 选用从句或选用非限定形式短语的语体因素

9.3 选用从句或选用非限定形式短语的语义因素

9.4 “无依着修饰语”多应改为从句或以其他方法改正

9.5 只能使用从句与只能使用动词非限定形式短语、复合结构作状语、作定语的情况

9.6 只能使用从句与只能使用动词非限定形式短语、复合结构作宾语的情况

9.7 语气从句及短句、短语等形式的语气状语

第十章主谓深层的一致；省略与否定

10.1 名词主语“形复实单”或“似单实复”的情况

10.2 集合名词做主语的情况

10.3 谓语同主语的“实意一致”和“近邻一致”

10.4 主语句、祈使句及惯用不完整句

10.5 情景省略句

10.6 “主语+be”句型中的省略

10.7 以to代表作为补足成分的不定式

10.8 表否定的代词、副词、连词的用法

10.9 关系微妙的否定中心、否定转移、否定范围和部分否定

10.10 情态复合谓语 否定中心的位置

10.11 非肯定句中用非肯定词语

本书例句出处略语表